

206802

A MODERN FRENCH GRAMMAR

IN TWO PARTS:

I. ACCIDENCE.—II. SYNTAX.

**WITH VOCABULARIES, CONVERSATIONAL LESSONS, AND
COPIOUS EXERCISES WITH FOOT-NOTES. •**

NEWLY COMPOSED

FROM THE STANDARD AUTHORS OF THE PRESENT DAY.

BY

LÉON CONTANSEAU,

**Professor of the French Language and Literature in the late Royal Indian Military
College, Addiscombe, and Examiner for Military and Civil Appointments;
Author of 'The Practical French and English Dictionary' &c.**

SIXTEENTH EDITION.

LONDON:

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

1888.

LONDON : PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
AND PARLIAMENT STREET

PREFACE.

THE first edition of this Grammar was drawn up with an especial view to the wants of my own pupils at Addiscombe, rather than to the requirements of the French class in public and private schools; and I was far from anticipating the more than favourable reception it soon met with, both from the press and the public. The sale of three large editions having made me more confident, I have been induced, now that Addiscombe College has been broken up, to remodel my book without departure from its original plan, and to adapt it for more general use in English schools where French is taught.

I need scarcely say that the point at which I have constantly aimed in this as well as in the other works of my Course, is the utmost conciseness of expression consistent with perspicuity, and the sedulous avoidance of all redundancy and repetition. No person who has mastered a foreign tongue, or taught one with success, will dispute that every rule must be learnt; and this once admitted, the system of 'imitation and frequent repetition' must be discarded, unless many hours are devoted to doing exercises every week for a much longer period than is sufficient to acquire a competent knowledge of French by assigning a single hour a day to this essential branch of education.

My Grammar, without having been appreciably enlarged or much increased in price, will now be found to contain, in

addition to the Accidence and Syntax of the French tongue, copious Vocabularies and Conversational Lessons, and numerous Exercises for translation from French into English and from English into French, accompanied by brief Notes pointing out from the earliest stage such real difficulties as a judicious Professor would explain verbally in setting the task;—a feature which it is believed has saved Masters who have adopted this Grammar some trouble, as well as increased the utility of the book to self-teachers. But in these Notes I have abstained in every instance from suggesting the application of any rule which a pupil ought to have passed and retained in his memory. The Syntax (written in English) is followed in an APPENDIX by a few simple rules for the Genders of Nouns, and a comparison of some of the most usual French and English Idioma. A set of Miscellaneous Exercises are now first added, carefully graduated in difficulty, and intended for more advanced scholars,—I mean pupils who have fairly mastered all that precedes, and can read an easy French author with some facility.

L. C.

UPPER NORWOOD:

May 1863.

CONTENTS.

Introduction.

	PAGE		PAGE
French alphabet; vowels, consonants	1	Vowels, nasal vowels	4
Accents: <i>acute, grave, circumflex</i>	2	Diphthongs, consonants . . .	5
The apostrophe, the cedilla, the diæresis, the hyphen . .	3	Union of words	9
		Elision of <i>e</i> unaccented, punctuation, capital letters . .	17
		Vocabulary and phrases . . .	11

PART I.

Accidence.

Parts of speech	18	Indefinite adjectives	33
ARTICLE, definite	18	Numeral adjectives	34
The possessive case	19	PRONOUNS; personal	37
Indefinite article	20	Possessive pronouns	40
SUBSTANTIVE—Gender	21	Demonstrative pronouns . .	41
Number	22	Relative pronouns	43
Formation of the plural of substantives	22	Interrogative pronouns . .	44
ADJECTIVE; its concord with the noun	24	Indefinite pronouns	46
Formation of the feminine of adjectives	24	VERBS; subject and object .	47
Position of adjectives . . .	27	Active, passive, neuter, reflexive, impersonal	48
Formation of the degrees of comparison	28	Moods	49
Possessive adjectives	30	Tenses, numbers, persons .	50
Demonstrative adjectives .	32	Conjugation of verbs; regular, irregular, defective	51
		Conjugation of <i>Avoir</i> . . .	51

	PAGE		PAGE
Conjugation of <i>Être</i> . . .	54	conjugation — <i>Connaître</i> , <i>Conduire</i> , <i>Craindre</i> . . .	82
Use of <i>Avoir</i> and <i>Être</i> as auxiliaries	56	Verbs used interrogatively and with a negation . . .	85
Conjugation of <i>Avoir</i> and <i>Être</i> negatively, interro- gatively, and interroga- tively with a negation . .	57	Terminations of French verbs	87
Observations on the verbs used interrogatively, &c. .	57	Formation of the tenses . .	88
Regular Verbs; first con- jugation — <i>Aimer</i>	62	Passive and neuter verbs . .	90
Remarks on the orthogra- phy of verbs	65	Reflective verbs	91
Model of the second con- jugation — <i>Finir</i>	67	Conjugation of a reflective verb negatively, interro- gatively, &c.	93
Remarks on the second conjugation	69	Impersonal verbs; <i>Y avoir</i> and <i>Falloir</i>	97
Division of the second con- jugation — <i>Sentir</i> , <i>Offrir</i> , <i>Tenir</i>	71	<i>Faire</i> used impersonally . .	100
Model of the third conjuga- tion — <i>Recevoir</i>	75	Idiomatic tenses of verbs . .	102
Model of the fourth conjuga- tion — <i>Rendre</i>	79	Irregular verbs	104
Division of the fourth		PARTICIPLES	118
		ADVERBS; their formation . .	119
		PREPOSITIONS	122
		Repetition of the preposi- tions	123
		CONJUNCTIONS	124
		INTERJECTIONS	126

PART II.

Syntax.

Use and repetition of the ARTICLE	129	Number of proper names . .	140
Use of the article with names of countries, king- doms, &c.	130	Plural of compound sub- stantives	141
<i>Le, la, les</i> , used with nouns of measure, weight, num- ber, &c.	132	ADJECTIVE; its agreement . .	143
Suppression of the article . .	133-7	Position of adjectives . . .	145
SUBSTANTIVE; difference of construction with the English	138	Government of adjectives . .	147
Compound substantives . . .	138	Adjectives of dimension, &c.	150
Nouns collective	139	Comparatives and super- latives	151
		Possessive adjectives, <i>mon</i> , <i>ton</i> , <i>son</i> , &c.	153
		<i>Le, la, les</i> , used instead of <i>mon, ton, son</i> , &c. . . .	154

	PAGE
Demonstrative adjectives	156
Indefinite adjectives	156-9
Numeral adjectives	160
Personal PRONOUNS; of their position	161
Table showing the order of the personal pronouns	163
Disjunctive personal pronouns	164
Repetition of the personal pronoun	166
Use of the pronoun <i>le, la, les</i> , when relating to a noun or to an adjective	167
Use of the pronoun <i>soi</i>	168
Use of <i>en</i> and <i>y</i>	169
<i>Le, la, les, en, y</i> , used in answering questions	170
Idiomatic expressions used in answers	172
Possessive pronouns; difference of construction with the English	174
Demonstrative pronouns; <i>ce</i> instead of <i>il, elle, &c.</i>	175
<i>C'est</i> compared with <i>il est</i>	176
<i>C'est, ce sont</i>	177
<i>Celui, celui-ci, celui-là, &c.</i>	178
Relative and interrogative pronouns	179
Difference between <i>dont, de qui, duquel</i>	180
Indefinite pronouns; <i>on, quiconque, chacun, autrui, &c.</i>	183
VERBS; their agreement	187
Government or direct object of verbs, its position	189
Government of passive verbs	190
Difference between <i>c'est à vous</i> and <i>c'est à vous DE</i>	191
Use of <i>Avoir</i> and <i>Être</i> with other verbs	192
Proper use of the tenses of verbs	193
Distinction between the <i>Imperfect</i> and the <i>Past definite</i>	194

	PAGE
Subjunctive mood, its use	199-203
PARTICIPLES; present	205
Past; its agreement	206
ADVERBS; proper use of negative expressions	212
Distinction between <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i>	212
Omission of <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i>	213
Remarks on some adverbs	215
PREPOSITIONS; repetition of the prepositions	217
The English preposition <i>to</i> , used before an infinitive	217
Remarks on the use of some prepositions:— <i>avant, devant—dans, en, chez, &c.</i>	218
English preposition <i>on</i> , used with dates	221
CONJUNCTIONS; use of <i>que</i>	222
English and French conjunctions compared	223
Observations on some interjections	225

APPENDIX.

Of the gender of nouns	226
Observations on some substantives of both genders	228
Distinction in French between words which are expressed in the same manner in English; as <i>an, année—jour, journée—amener, apporter—marier, épouser, se marier, &c.</i>	229-38
Modèle d'analyse grammaticale	235
Conversational lessons	236
Recapitulated exercises to be retranslated into French	252

FREE EXERCISES.		PAGE
Familiar conversations . .		276
Biographical sketches : —		
<i>Corneille—Racine—Mo-</i>		
<i>lière—La Fontaine—Boi-</i>		
<i>leau—Bossuet et Bourda-</i>		
<i>loue—Fénelon—Mussillon,</i>		
<i>Voltaire—J.-J. Rousseau</i>		
<i>— Montesquieu — Buffon</i>		
<i>— Châteaubriand . . .</i>	279	
Miscellaneous exercises :—A		
lesson	284	
Napoleon and the British		
sailor	284	
The old man and his ass .		285
Anecdote of Frederic II. .		286
Rural life in England. .		286
Louis XI., King of France,		
and Philippe de Com-		
mines	288	
The burning of Moscow .		289
The Normans		292
Execution of Mary Stuart		293
The family of Wakefield		
before the loss of their		
fortune	295	
The family of Wakefield		
after the loss of their		
fortune	297	

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

1 The French Alphabet consists of twenty-five letters,
viz.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q
R S T U V X Y Z

These letters, by some grammarians, are named in French
as follows :—

*a, bé, cé, dé, é, effe, gé, ache, i, ji, ka, elle, emme, enne, o, pé, qu,
erre, esse, té, u, vé, ikse, i-grec, zède.*

By others they are pronounced

(*e* after each consonant being sounded as *e* in *flattery*)

*a, be, ce, de, e, fe, gue, he, i, je, ke, le, me, ne, o, pe, ke, re,
se, te, u, ve, kse, i-grec, ze.**

There are two sorts of letters — *vowels* and *consonants*.

2 The *vowels* are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*. They are so
called because they form a perfect sound when uttered
alone.

3 The other letters are called *consonants*, because they
cannot be sounded without the assistance of a vowel.

The French language has no *w* : this letter is only found
in words derived from the English or German languages

* The student must bear in mind that the true sounds cannot be conveyed by rules :
they can only be acquired by the ear, and with the help of a good master.

A **SYLLABLE** is a sound produced by one letter or more, uttered by a single articulation of the voice, and forming a word or a part of a word; as *loi* law, *a-mi* friend. Hence we call *monosyllable* a word of one syllable; *dissyllable* a word of two; *trisyllable* a word of three; and *polysyllable* a word of several syllables.

The six vowels express only five sounds, *i* and *y* being pronounced alike; but as the French language has several other sounds, the deficiency of letters to convey them is partly supplied by marks called *accents*, and by various combinations of letters.

ACCENTS.

4 *Accents* generally alter the pronunciation of the vowels over which they are placed: some, however, serve to distinguish words spelt alike, but of different signification.

5 There are three accents: the **ACUTE** (´), *l'accent aigu*; the **GRAVE** (`), *l'accent grave*; and the **CIRCUMFLEX** (^), *l'accent circonflexe*.

6 The *acute* is placed over the vowel *e* only, and gives it an acute sound much resembling that of *a* in English; as *été*, *vérité*, *témérité*.

7 The *grave* placed over *e* generally gives that vowel an open sound; as *père*, *succès*, *près*.

8 The *grave* accent is also placed over

à to, at	} to distinguish	a has
là there		la the
où where		ou or
dès from		des of, from the

9 The *circumflex* is placed over the vowels *â*, *ê*, *î*, *ô*, *û*, and gives them a broad and long sound; as *grâce*, *tête*, *gîte*, *dôme*, *flûte*.

The *circumflex* accent denotes the suppression of some letter formerly used; as *âge*, *épître*, *tête*, which used to be written *aage*, *épistre*, *teste*, &c.

The *circumflex* accent is also placed upon

mûr ripe	} to distinguish	mur a wall
sûr sure		sur upon
crû grown		cru believed
dû due		du of or from the
pû grazed		pu participle of pouvoir

APOSTROPHE.

10 The apostrophe, *l'apostrophe* ('), denotes the suppression or elision of the final vowel of a word placed before another word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute; as *l'ami* the friend, for *le ami*; *l'âme* the soul, for *la âme*; *l'homme* the man, for *le homme*; &c.

The apostrophe is never used but to supply the place of *a*, *e*, *i*: it is done to avoid the harsh sound occasioned by the meeting of two vowels.

a is suppressed in *la* when the next word begins with a vowel or *h* mute, as *l'âme*, *l'histoire*, *je l'estime*.

e is suppressed (1) in *le*, *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ce*, *ne*, *que*, when followed by a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as *l'ami*, *l'homme*, *j'aime*, *je m'amuse*, *je t'invite*, *il s'occupe*, *c'est vous*: but the elision of *e* in *je* and *ce* does not take place when *je* and *ce* come after the verb; as *ai-je été docile?* *est-ce à vous?*

(2) in *lorsque*, *parceque*, *puisque*, *quoique*, followed by *il*, *elle*, *on*, *un*, *une*; as *lorsqu'il parle*, *puisque'elle le veut*, *quoiqu'on dise*.

(3) in *quelque*, when it precedes *un* or *autre*; as *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'autre*.

i is suppressed in the conjunction *si* if, before *il*, *ils*; as *s'il vient*, *s'ils disent*.

NOTE.—*a* and *e* do not suffer elision in *le*, *la*, *ce*, *de*, *que*, before *oui*, *huit*, *huitaine*, *huitième*, *onze*, *onzième*; nor in *le*, *la*, after a verb in the imperative mood, as *le oui ci le non*; *le huit ou le onze du mois*; *amenez-la ici*.

CEDILLA.

11 The cedilla, *la cédille* (ç), is placed under the *c* when it precedes *a*, *o*, *u*, to give it the soft sound of *s*; as in *fasade* facade; *leçon* lesson; *reçu* received, which are pronounced *fasade*, *leson*, *resu*.

DIÆRESIS.

12 The diæresis, *le tréma* ("), consists of two dots placed over the vowels *e*, *i*, *u*, to denote that they are not of the same syllable as the vowel preceding, and must be pronounced separately; as in *Noël* Christmas, *haïr* to hate, *Saül*, &c.

HYPHEN.

13 The hyphen, *le trait d'union* or *tiret* (-), is used (1) after a verb followed by one of the pronouns *je*, *moi*, *tu*, •

toi, nous, vous, il, ils, elle, elles, le, la, les, lui, leurs, y, en, ce, ou; as *suis-je*? am I?, *dis-moi* tell me, *voyez-vous*? do you see?, &c. (2) Between words so joined that they make but one; as *chef-d'œuvre, arc-en-ciel*; between *très* and the following word, *très-riche, très-souvent*; between *même* and the pronoun which precedes, *moi-même, eux-mêmes*; between the particles *ci* and *là* and the word which precedes or follows them, *celui-ci, cet homme-là, ci-dessus*, &c. (3) Between the numerals from *dix-sept* to *quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, except when *et* is placed between the numbers, as in *vingt et un*, &c.

VOWELS.

14 VOWELS are either *long* or *short*.

EXAMPLES.

A	is long in	<i>pâte</i>	dough	It is short in	<i>patte</i>	paw
E	„	<i>bêche</i>	spade	„	<i>brèche</i>	breach
I	„	<i>gîte</i>	a home	„	<i>petite</i>	little
O	„	<i>apôtre</i>	apostle	„	<i>mode</i>	fashion
U	„	<i>flûte</i>	flute	„	<i>hutte</i>	hut

y between two vowels is sounded like two *i*'s; as in *moyen, joyeux*, pronounced *moi-ien, joi-ieux*: also in *pays, paysan, paysage*, which are pronounced *pai-is, pai-i-san, pai-i-sage*, &c.

y in all other cases has the sound of a single *i*; as *yeux, style, mystère, jury*.

Beside the six vowels mentioned, there are sounds, produced by the combination of letters, that may be termed compound vowels; such as

ai	as in	<i>mai</i>	May	au	as in	<i>autel</i>	altar
eai	„	<i>geai</i>	jay	eau	„	<i>beau</i>	fine
aie	„	<i>haie</i>	hedge	eu	„	<i>jeune</i>	young
ei	„	<i>seigneur</i>	lord	ou	„	<i>clou</i>	nail

NASAL VOWELS.

15 There is a class of sounds called *nasal*: they occur generally when *n* or *ng* is preceded by one or more vowels. They are the following:—

an	as in	<i>ange</i>	angel	in	as in	<i>vin</i>	wine
am	„	<i>ambition</i>	ambition	im	„	<i>impôt</i>	tax
en	„	<i>enfant</i>	child	ain	„	<i>pain</i>	bread
em	„	<i>emploi</i>	office	aim	„	<i>faim</i>	hunger

on as in *bon* good
om " *om'bre* shade
eun " *pigeon* pigeon

un as in *un* one
um " *parfum* perfume
eun " *jeun* (à) fasting

NOTE.—When *in* is followed by *n*, and *im* by *m*, or whenever *in* and *im* are immediately followed by a vowel or *h* mute, the pronunciation is no longer nasal; as in *innocent*, *immortel*, *inutile*, *imilex*, *inhumain*.

DIPHTHONGS.

16 A *diphthong* is the coalition of two vowel sounds in the same syllable, which, though pronounced by the same impulse of the voice, conveys to the ear a double sound; as

eoi	in	<i>bourgeois</i>	citizen
ia	"	<i>piano</i>	piano
ian	"	<i>viande</i>	meat
ié	"	<i>amitié</i>	friendship
ière	"	<i>rivière</i>	river
ien	"	<i>bien</i>	well
ieu	"	<i>lieu</i>	place
io	"	<i>fiote</i>	vial
ion	"	<i>nation</i>	nation
oê	"	<i>poêle</i>	stove
oi	"	<i>loi</i>	law
oie	"	<i>joie</i>	joy
oin	"	<i>soin</i>	car
ou	"	<i>oui</i>	yes
ue	"	<i>ruelle</i>	alley
ui	"	<i>nuit</i>	night

NOTE.—The termination *ent* of the third person plural of all French verbs has the sound of *e* unaccented, as *ils aiment* they love, *ils lisent* they read.

Several adjectives and nouns in French are written exactly like the third person plural of some verbs, but the last syllable is differently pronounced: as,

ent has the nasal sound in
différent *différent*
excellent *excellent*
négligent *négligent*
président *président*
li pressent *he foresees*

ent is mute in
ils différent *they differ*
ils excellent *they excel*
ils négligent *they neglect*
ils président *they preside*
ils pressent *they press*

CONSONANTS.

17 Final consonants, with the exception, of *c*, *f*, *l*, *r*, are almost always silent; as *grand*, *petit*, *bas*, *doux*, &c.

b final is generally silent. It is heard in proper names, as *Jacob*, *Joab*, *Job*.

c is sounded like *k* before *a*, *o*, *u*, as *cabinet*, *copie*, *curieux*; like *s* before *e*, *i*, *y*, as *Cicéron*, *Cyclope*; like *g* in *second* and its derivatives.

c final is silent in *blanc*, *franc*, *flanc*, *banc*, *clerc*, *estomac*, •

tabac, almanach, porc, broc, cric, croc, escroc, tronç, jonc, échecs.

ch is generally sounded like the English *sh*; as *cheval* horse, *chien* dog, *chapeau* hat, *archevêque* archbishop.

• *ch* has the sound of *k* before a consonant, and in most words derived from the Greek or Hebrew; as *chrétien*, *Chersonèse*, *Chaldéen*, *archange*, *chaos*, *écho*, &c.

d is silent at the end of words, except in proper names; as *David*, and in *sud* (south).

Final *d* takes the sound of *t* when the next word begins with a vowel or *h* mute; as *grand homme*, which is pronounced *gran-tomme*.

f final is generally heard, but silent in *cerf*, *clef*, *chef-d'œuvre*, *œuf frais*, *bœuf gras*, and in the plural *œufs*, *bœufs*, *nerfs*. It is sounded like *v* in *neuf* nine, before a vowel or *h* mute.

g is sounded hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, as *gâteau*, *gosier*, *guttural*.

g is soft and sounded like *j* before *e*, *i*, *y*, as *genou*, *agir*, *gymnase*.

gn has a liquid sound, as in *Champagne*, *vigne*, *compagnie*; except some words, as *ignée*, *inexpugnable*, *stagnation*, &c., in which *gn* is sounded hard.

gui is sounded *gu-i* in *aiguille*, and its derivatives *aiguillon*, *aiguiser*.

h is either *mute*, as in *l'homme*; or *aspirated*, as in *le héros*. There is no difference in the pronunciation of this letter, whether *mute* or *aspirated*. The latter merely prevents the elision of the *e*, or the union of the consonant which precedes it, as *le héros*, *les héros*, and not *l'héros*, *les héros*. No general rule can be laid down for distinguishing the *h* aspirated from the *h* mute.

h is aspirated in the following words and their derivatives:—

Ha! *hableur* (and its derivatives), *hache* (and its derivatives), *hagard*, *haie*, *haillon*, *haine*, *hair*, *halbran*, *halbrencé*, *hâle*, *halener*, *haletant*, *halle*, *hallebarde*, *halte*, *hamac*, *hameau*, *hanche*, *hangar*, *hanneton*, *hanse*, *hanter*, *happer*, *haquénée*, *haquet*, *harangue* (and its derivatives), *haras*, *harasser*, *harceler*, *hardes*, *hardi* (and its derivatives), *hareem*, *hareng*, *hargneux*, *haricot*, *haridelle*, *harnais*, *haro*, *harpe*, *harper*, *harpie*, *harpon*, *hasard* (and its derivatives), *hase*, *hâte*, *hâter* (and its derivatives), *haubans*, *haubert*, *hausse-col*, *hausser*, *haut*, *haute* (and its derivatives), *hautbois*, *Havre*, *havresac*, *bennir*, *héraut*, *hère*, *hérisser*,

hérisson, hernie, héron, héros,* hersage, herse, herser, hêtre, heurter, hiboux, hideux, hiérarchie, hisser, hobereau, hocher (*and its derivatives*), holà ! Hollande, Hollandais, h mard, Hongrie, honnir, honte (*and its derivatives*), hoquet, hoqueton, horde, hors, hotte, Hottentot, houblon (*and its derivatives*), houille, houlette, houleurs, houppe, houppebande, houspiller, houssaie, housse (*and its derivatives*), houssine, houssoir, houx, hoyau, huche, hucher, huées (*and its derivatives*), Huguenot, huit (*and its derivatives*), humer, hune, hunier, Huns, huppe (*and its derivatives*), hure, hurlement, hurler, hussard, hutte, hutter.

j is always sounded like *s* in *pleasure* ; as in *je* I, *jamais* never.

k is sounded as in English, and is found only in proper names, and in a few words derived from foreign languages.

l final is generally heard, as in *fil*, *civil*, *seul*, *moral*, *mortel*, *aïeul*.

l is silent at the end of *baril*, *chenil*, *coutil*, *fusil*, *gril*, *outil*, *persil*, *sourcil*, *gentil* (pretty), *fils* (son).

l is liquid in *fille*, *famille*, *soleil*, *paille*, *travail*, *réveil*, *gentilhomme*, &c., pronounced nearly as *gl* in the word *seraglio*.

l is not liquid in *mille*, *ville*, *tranquille*, &c. ; nor in words beginning with *ill*, as *illustre*, *illégal*, *illégitime*, &c.

There are two distinct ways of uttering this *l*. The first is to pronounce it as if followed by *i*, as in the words *billet*, *feuillage*, *billard*, which are pronounced *biliét*, *feuiilage*, *biliard*. The second is to change *ll* into *y*, and pronounce *bijet*, *feuiyage*, *biyard*.

These two pronunciations may be used in familiar conversation ; but the first is preferred for public speaking or reading.

m final has generally the sound of *n*, as in *faim*, *nom*, *parfum*, &c. ; except in many proper names, as in *Abraham*, *Jérusalem*, *Amsterdam*.

m is sounded as *n* in final vowels, when followed by *b* or *p* ; as *combien*, *empire*.

n is sounded as in English, but is often nasal.

p final is generally silent, as in *champ*, *camp*, *drap*, *coup*, *galop*, *sirop*, *trop*, *loup* ; but is heard in *cap*, *Gap*, *cep*, *Alep*.

p in the body of words is generally sounded ; but it is silent in *baptême*, *baptiser*, *exempt*, *exempter*, *compte*, *compter*, *dompter*, *indomptable*, *prompt*, *corps*, *temps*, *sept* and its derivatives.

ph is sounded like *f* ; as in *philosophie*, *phosphore*.

* Though aspirated in *héros*, *h* is mute in *héroïne*, *héroïque*, *héroïquement*, *héroïsme*.

q has generally the sound of *k*, as in *quatre*, *question*, *quitter*, *quinze*, *acquérir*.

qu has the sound of *cou* in *aquatique*, *aquarelle*, *équateur*, *équation*, *in-quarto*, *quadrupède*, *quadruple*, *loquacité*, *liquidation*, &c.

qu has the sound of *ku* before *e* or *i*, as in *équestre*, *questeur*, *équitation*, *équiangle*, *équilatéral*, *quintuple*, &c.

r should invariably be heard at the beginning and in the body of words, as in *rare*, *rouge*, *garçon*.

r final is generally heard, as in *char*, *ser*, *hiver*, *amer*, *hier*, *enfer*, *agir*, *voir*, *trésor*, *futur*, &c.

The final *r* is silent (1) at the end of verbs ending in *er*, as *aimer*, *parler*, unless when followed by a vowel, as *aller au combat*, *aimer à chanter*: (2) in words of more than one syllable ending in *ier*, *iers*, *ger*, and *cher*; as *officier*, *volontiers*, *berger*, *boucher*.

s at the beginning of words has the same sound as in the English word *soldier*: *sage*, *séjour*, *sic*, *soldat*, *sucré*.

s has the sound of *z* between two vowels, and in some words after the syllable *tran*, as *maison*, *rose*, *oser*, *transition*, *transaction*; except in a few compound words, as in *préséance*, *vraisemblance*, *parasol*, &c.

s final is silent in most words, as *pas*, *bas*, *compas*, *amas*, *confus*, &c.; in Christian names, *Nicholas*, *Thomas*, and *Paris* (city).

But *s* final is heard in *atlas*, *as*, *hélas*, *blocus*, *mars*, *jadis*, *gratis*, *vis*, *lis*; also in foreign proper names, *Léonidas*, *Gil-Blas*, *Minos*, *Pâris*, *Argos*, *Vénus*, &c.

t has two sounds: the first as in the English word *tactic*—e.g. *totalité*, *titre*, *tambour*; the second as in the French syllable *ci*, *patient*, *partial*, *ambition*.

t not preceded by *s* or *x* is sounded like *c* (1) in all words ending in *tion*; as *perfection*, *action*: (2) in words ending in *tial*, *tiel*, *tient*, *tieux*; as *martial*, *essentiel*, *patient*, *ambitieux*: (3) in most words ending in *tie*; as *primatie*, *démocratie*, *prophétie*, *impéritie*, *minutie*, &c.; also in the verbs *initier*, *balbutier*, and in names of nations or persons: as *Béotien*, *Égyptien*, *Vénitien*, *Domitien*, *Dioclétien*. When *s* or *x* precedes the *t*, it preserves its natural sound; as *bastion*, *mixture*.

th is always sounded like *t*; as *thé*, *théâtre*, *Panthéon*, *Élisabeth*.

t final is generally silent, but sounded in *brut, dot, fat, t, rapt, but, contact, correct, exact, direct, alert, subit, distinct, déficit*.

t is invariably silent in the conjunction *et*; and also in *Jésus-Christ*, though it is heard in *Christ* used alone.

w (double *v*) in French is sounded like *v* in German words, and like *ou* in English words, as *Westphalie, Wurtemberg*, pronounced *Vestphalie*, &c.; and *Westminster, Windsor*, pronounced *Ouestminster*, &c.

v has the five following different sounds:—

<i>ks</i>	as in	<i>maxime, excuse, extrême</i>
<i>gz</i>	„	<i>exemple, examen, exiger</i>
<i>ss</i>	„	<i>Bruxelles, Aix, soixante</i>
<i>h</i>	„	<i>excellent, exciter, exception</i>
<i>z</i>	„	<i>deuxième, sixième, dixième</i>

z is generally pronounced as in English, except in a few words; as *assez, chez, nez*. It is heard at the end of words when followed by a vowel or *h* mute; as *venez ici; allez chez eux*.

UNION OF WORDS.

18 In speaking and in reading, the final consonant of a word is generally sounded with the initial vowel (or *h* mute) of the next, when the two words are so connected with each other, that the second word is necessary to complete the sense. Before a vowel or *h* mute *s* and *x* have the sound of *z*; *d* has the sound of *t*; *g* has the sound of *k*, and *f* that of *v*; as

		Pronounce
les enfants	the children	lè-zenfants
vous avez	you have	vou-zavez
dix ans	ten years	di-zans
grand homme	great man	gran-tomme
rang élevé	elevated rank	ran-kélevé
neuf heures	nine hours	neu-veures
son âge	his age	son-nâge
prenez en	take some	prenez-zen
pensez-y	think of it	pensez-zy

NOTE.—The *t* in the conjunction *et*, and, is never joined with the following vowel, for the sake of distinguishing this conjunction from the word *est*:—

Il est, aussi âgé et aussi grand que vous.

ELISION OF *E* UNACCENTED.

19 In conversation and in familiar reading, the *e* unaccented is frequently omitted ; as

si je vous le donne	<i>if I give it you</i>	Pronounce sij vouł donne
je vous remercie	<i>I thank you</i>	jvous rmercie
venez avec moi	<i>come with me</i>	vnez avec moi
un petit chien	<i>a little dog</i>	un pti chien

PUNCTUATION.

20 *Punctuation* is used in writing to distinguish one sentence from another, and to mark the different parts of a sentence.

The French names of these grammatical signs are

(,) <i>Virgule</i>	Comma
(;) <i>Point et virgule</i> . . .	Semicolon
(:) <i>Deux points</i>	Colon
(.) <i>Point</i>	Full stop, or period
(?) <i>Point d'interrogation</i> .	Note of interrogation
(!) <i>Point d'exclamation</i>	Note of exclamation
(...) <i>Points de suspension</i> .	Notes of suspension
) <i>Parenthèse</i>	Parenthesis
(" ") <i>Guillemets</i>	Inverted commas

CAPITAL LETTERS.

21 Capital letters (*les majuscules*) are used at the beginning of every sentence in prose ; of every verse in poetry ; of all Christian and proper names of persons, as *Virgile*, *Pierre Corneille* ; of places, as *l'Europe*, *la France*, *Paris*, *le Louvre* ; of people, as *les Européens*, *les Anglais*, *les Parisiens* ; of seas, rivers, mountains, &c., as *la Méditerranée*, *le Rhin*, *les Alpes*, &c.

VOCABULARY AND PHRASES

TO BE USED AS EXERCISES IN PRONUNCIATION.

I. Du monde. *Of the world.*

La terre <i>the earth</i>	Une montagne <i>a mountain</i>
L'air <i>air</i>	Un volcan <i>a volcano</i>
Le feu <i>fire</i>	Une rivière <i>a river</i>
L'eau <i>water</i>	Un lac <i>a lake</i>
La mer <i>the sea</i>	Une île <i>an island</i>
Le ciel <i>the heavens</i>	La campagne <i>the country</i>
Le soleil <i>the sun</i>	Un village <i>a village</i>
La lune <i>the moon</i>	Une ville <i>a town</i>
Les étoiles <i>the stars</i>	Un hameau <i>a hamlet</i>
Une comète <i>a comet</i>	Un arbre <i>a tree</i>

II. Les saisons, &c. *The seasons, &c.*

Le printemps <i>spring</i>	Le verglas <i>sleet</i>
L'été <i>summer</i>	Le dégel <i>the thaw</i>
L'automne <i>autumn</i>	Le brouillard <i>the fog</i>
L'hiver <i>winter</i>	Un nuage <i>a cloud</i>
Le froid <i>the cold</i>	Le tonnerre <i>the thunder</i>
La chaleur <i>the heat</i>	La foudre <i>the thunderbolt</i>
Le vent <i>the wind</i>	L'arc-en-ciel <i>the rainbow</i>
La pluie <i>the rain</i>	Le jour <i>the day</i>
La grêle <i>the hail</i>	La nuit <i>the night</i>
La gelée <i>the frost</i>	La rosée <i>the dew</i>
La glace <i>the ice</i>	Beau temps <i>fine weather</i>
La neige <i>the snow</i>	Mauvais temps <i>bad weather</i>

III. Des jours, des mois, &c. *Of the days, months, &c.*

Dimanche <i>Sunday</i>	Juin <i>June</i>
Lundi <i>Monday</i>	Juillet <i>July</i>
Mardi <i>Tuesday</i>	Août <i>August</i>
Mercredi <i>Wednesday</i>	Septembre <i>September</i>
Jeudi <i>Thursday</i>	Octobre <i>October</i>
Vendredi <i>Friday</i>	Novembre <i>November</i>
Samedi <i>Saturday</i>	Décembre <i>December</i>
Janvier <i>January</i>	Noël <i>Christmas</i>
Février <i>February</i>	Le jour de l'an <i>New Year's Day</i>
Mars <i>March</i>	Le jour des Rois <i>Twelfth Night</i>
Avril <i>April</i>	Pâques <i>Easter</i>
Mai <i>May</i>	L'Ascension <i>Ascension</i>

La Pentecôte *Whitsunday*La Saint-Jean *Midsummer*La Saint-Michel *Michaelmas*La Toussaint *Allsaints*IV. Des parties du corps, *Parts of the body.*La taille *the figure*La tête *the head*Le teint *the complexion*Les cheveux *the hair*Le front *the forehead*Le cerveau } *the brain*

La cervelle }

Un œil *an eye*Les yeux *the eyes*La paupière *the eyelid*Le sourcil *the eyebrow*Les oreilles *the ears*Le nez *the nose*La joue *the cheek*La bouche *the mouth*Les lèvres *the lips*Le palais *the palate*La langue *the tongue*Les dents *the teeth*Le menton *the chin*Le cou *the neck*La gorge *the throat*La poitrine *the chest*Le cœur *the heart*L'estomac *the stomach*Les épaules *the shoulders*Le bras *the arm*Le coude *the elbow*Le poignet *the wrist*La main *the hand*Le doigt *the finger*Le pouce *the thumb*Les ongles *the nails*La jambe *the leg*Le genou *the knee*Le mollet *the calf*Le pied *the foot*La cheville du pied *the ankle*Le cou-de-pied *the instep*Le talon *the heel*Le dos *the back*Le côté *the side*Les côtes *the ribs*La peau *the skin*Les os *the bones*Le sang *the blood*V. De la toilette, *Of dressing.*

(For Gentlemen.)

Un chapeau *a hat*Une casquette *a cap*Un habit *a coat*Un gilet *a waistcoat*Une veste *a jacket*Un paletot *a great-coat*Un pantalon *trousers*Une redingote *a frock-coat*Un manteau *a cloak*Une chemise *a shirt*Une cravate *a neckcloth*Un col *a collar*Des gants *gloves*Des bretelles *braces*Un sous-pied *a strap*Des bas *stockings*Des chaussettes *socks*Un mouchoir *a handkerchief*Du linge *linen*Des bottes *boots*Des souliers *shoes*Des pantoufles *slippers*Des guêtres *gaiters*Un bouton *a button*

Des boutons de studs

Une épingle *a pin*Une montre *a watch*Un tire-botte *a boot-jack*Une canne *a cane*Une brosse *a brush*Un peigne *a comb*Un parapluie *an umbrella*

(For Ladies.)

Une robe <i>a dress</i>	Une fourrure <i>a fur</i>
Un chapeau <i>a bonnet, a hat</i>	Un manchon <i>a muff</i>
Un voile <i>a veil</i>	Un boa <i>a boa</i>
Un ruban <i>a ribbon</i>	Des bottines <i>boots</i>
Des plumes <i>feathers</i>	Une ceinture <i>a sash, a belt</i>
De la dentelle <i>lace</i>	Des volants <i>flounces</i>
Un bonnet <i>a cap</i>	Un collier <i>a necklucce</i>
Un châle <i>a shawl</i>	Des boucles d'oreilles, <i>ear-rings</i>
Un manteau <i>a cloak</i>	Des bracelets <i>bracelets</i>
Une écharpe <i>a scarf</i>	Une bague <i>a ring</i>
Un fichu <i>a neckerchief</i>	Une alliance <i>a wedding-ring</i>
Des manchettes <i>cuffs</i>	Une broche <i>a brooch</i>
Des manches <i>sleeves</i>	Une coiffure <i>a head-dress</i>
Une jupe <i>a skirt</i>	Un éventail <i>a fan</i>
Un corsage <i>a body</i>	Une ombrelle <i>a parasol</i>

VI. Le déjeuner, le diner. *Breakfast, dinner.*

La salle à manger <i>the dining-room</i>	Le vinaigre <i>the vinegar</i>
La table <i>the table</i>	L'huile <i>the oil</i>
Les chaises <i>the chairs</i>	Du pain <i>bread</i>
La nappe <i>the table-cloth</i>	Du beurre <i>butter</i>
Une serviette <i>a napkin</i>	Du lait <i>milk</i>
Un couteau <i>a knife</i>	De la crème <i>cream</i>
Une fourchette <i>a fork</i>	Du thé <i>tea</i>
Une cuiller <i>a spoon</i>	Du café <i>coffee</i>
Une cuiller à soupe <i>a soup-ladle</i>	Du cacao <i>cocoa</i>
Une cuiller à ragoût <i>a gravy-spoon</i>	Des rôties <i>toast</i>
Une petite cuiller <i>a tea-spoon</i>	Des tartines de beurre <i>bread and butter</i>
Une assiette <i>a plate</i>	Des petits-pains <i>rolls</i>
Une tasse <i>a cup</i>	Un œuf <i>an egg</i>
Une sous-coupe <i>a saucer</i>	Du jambon <i>ham</i>
Un coquetier <i>an egg-cup</i>	De la viande froide <i>cold meat</i>
Une théière <i>a teapot</i>	Du sucre <i>sugar</i>
Une cafetière <i>a coffee-pot</i>	De la cassonade <i>moist sugar</i>
La salière <i>the salt-cellar</i>	
L'huilier <i>the cruet-stand</i>	Du bœuf <i>beef</i>
Le sucrier <i>the sugar basin</i>	Du veau <i>veal</i>
Une soupière <i>a soup-tureen</i>	Du mouton <i>mutton</i>
Un saladier <i>a salad-dish</i>	Un gigot <i>a leg of mutton</i>
Un verre <i>a glass</i>	Un aloyau <i>a sirloin</i>
Une carafe <i>a decanter</i>	Des côtelettes <i>chops</i>
Une bouilloire <i>a kettle</i>	Une longe de veau <i>a loin of veal</i>
Un porte-rôtie <i>a toast-rack</i>	Des biftecks <i>beefsteaks</i>
Une saucière <i>a sauceboat</i>	Un ragoût <i>a stew</i>
Le sel <i>the salt</i>	Le rôti <i>the roast</i>
Le poivre <i>the pepper</i>	

Des jalousies *Venetian blinds*
 Les volets *the shutters*
 Le marteau *the knocker*
 La cloche, la sonnette *the bell*
 Le vestibule *the hall*
 Le salon *the drawing-room*
 La salle à manger *the dining-room*
 Le boudoir *the boudoir*
 Une bibliothèque *a library, a bookcase*
 Une chambre *a room*
 Une chambre à coucher *a bedroom*
 Un cabinet de toilette *a dressing-room*
 Une salle de bain *a bath-room*
 Un bureau *an office*
 Un cabinet *a study*
 Une mansarde *an attic*
 Le carré } *the landing-place*
 Le palier }
 Le plancher *the floor*
 Le plafond *the ceiling*

Le toit *the roof*
 Le grenier *the garret*
 La cave *the cellar*
 La cuisine *the kitchen*
 Le fourneau *the stove*
 L'arrière-cuisine *the back kitchen*
 Un tourne-broche *a turnspit, a jack*
 L'office *the pantry*
 Un garde-manger *a safe*
 L'écurie *the stable*
 La remise *the coach-house*
 Une étable *a cattle-shed*
 Un puits *a well*
 Une pompe *a pump*
 Un jardin *a garden*
 Une serre *a green-house*
 Un cabinet *a summer-house*
 Un verger *an orchard*
 Un colombier *a pigeon-house*
 Une basse-cour *a poultry-yard*
 Un poulailler *a poultry-house*
 Un chenil *a kennel*

VIII. Des meubles. Furniture.

Un canapé *a sofa*
 Un sofa *a couch*
 Une chaise *a chair*
 Un fauteuil *an arm-chair*
 Une bergère *an easy chair*
 Une console *a console*
 Un secrétaire *a bureau*
 Une table de jeu *a card-table*
 Un pupitre *a writing-desk*
 Une glace *a looking-glass*
 Une pendule *a clock, a time-piece*
 Une horloge *a clock*
 Des candélabres *sconces*
 Un chandelier *a candlestick*
 Les mouchettes *the snuffers*
 Un lustre *a chandelier, a lustre*
 Des vases *vases*
 Des tableaux *paintings, pictures*
 Des gravures *engravings*
 Une lampe *a lamp*
 Un tabouret *a stool*
 Un coussin *a cushion*
 Un tapis *a carpet*
 Un tapis de table *a table-cover*

Les rideaux *the curtains*
 Le garde-~~feu~~ *the fender*
 La pelle *the shovel*
 Les pincettes *the tongs*
 Le fourgon *the poker*
 Le soufflet *the bellows*
 Un écran *a fire-screen*
 Un paravent *a screen*
 Du bois *wood*
 Du charbon *coals*
 Une boîte à charbon *a coal-scuttle*
 Un lit *a bed*
 Un bois de lit *a bedstead*
 Un matelas *a mattress*
 Des draps *sheets*
 Une couverture *a blanket*
 Un oreiller *a pillow*
 Un traversin *a bolster*
 Une commode *a chest of drawers*
 Une garde-robe *a wardrobe*
 Une armoire *a cupboard*
 Un lavabo *a washstand*
 Une psyché *a cheval glass*

IX. Des degrés de parenté. Of relatives.

La famille <i>the family</i>	La nièce <i>the niece</i>
Le grand-père <i>the grandfather</i>	Le mari <i>the husband</i>
La grand-mère <i>the grandmother</i>	La femme <i>the wife</i>
Le père <i>the father</i>	Les enfants <i>the children</i>
La mère <i>the mother</i>	Le petit-fils <i>the grandson</i>
Le fils <i>the son</i>	La petite fille <i>the granddaughter</i>
La fille <i>the daughter</i>	Le beau-frère <i>the brother-in-law</i>
Le frère <i>the brother</i>	La belle-sœur <i>the sister-in-law</i>
La sœur <i>the sister</i>	Le beau-fils <i>the son-in-law</i>
L'oncle <i>the uncle</i>	La belle-fille <i>the daughter-in-law</i>
La tante <i>the aunt</i>	Le beau-père <i>the father-in-law</i>
Le cousin <i>the cousin</i>	La belle-mère <i>the mother-in-law</i>
La cousine <i>the cousin</i>	Les parents <i>the relatives</i>
Le cousin germain <i>the first cousin</i>	Le parrain <i>the godfather</i>
Le neveu <i>the nephew</i>	La marraine <i>the godmother</i>

X. D'une école. Of a school.

Une pension } <i>a boarding-</i>	Un cahier <i>a copy-book</i>
Un pensionnat } <i>school</i>	Du papier-brouillard <i>blotting-</i>
Un externat <i>a day-school</i>	
Un professeur <i>a professor</i>	Un pupitre <i>a desk</i>
Un maître <i>a master</i>	Un élève <i>a pupil</i>
Une maîtresse <i>a mistress</i>	Une leçon <i>a task</i>
Un sous-maître <i>an assistant</i>	Un devoir <i>a task</i>
Une sous-maîtresse <i>a governess</i>	Un thème <i>an exercise</i>
Un livre <i>a book</i>	Une faute <i>a mistake</i>
Une grammaire <i>a grammar</i>	Un penum <i>a task</i>
Un dictionnaire <i>a dictionary</i>	La lecture <i>the reading</i>
Du papi	La traduction <i>the translation</i>
Une plume <i>a pen</i>	L'analyse <i>parsing</i>
De l'encre <i>ink</i>	La cour <i>the playground</i>
Un encier <i>an inkstand</i>	La classe <i>the class, the class-room</i>
Un canif <i>a penknife</i>	La promenade <i>the walk</i>
Un crayon <i>a pencil</i>	Les vacances <i>the holidays</i>
Une règle <i>a ruler</i>	La sortie <i>the breaking up</i>

XI. Questions et phrases diverses.

Comment vous portez-vous ?	How do you do ?
Quel beau temps !	What fine weather !
Quel jour viendrez-vous ?	What day will you come ?
A quelle heure dinez-vous ?	At what o'clock do you dine ?
La voiture est-elle prête ?	Is the carriage ready ?
Donnez-moi mon chapeau	Give me my hat
Où est votre manteau ?	Where is your cloak ?
Il est dans le vestibule	It is in the hall
J'ai oublié mes bracelets	I have forgotten my bracelets

Le dîner est-il prêt ?
 Que prendrez-vous ?
 • Que vous offrirai-je ?
 Buvez-vous du vin ?
 Je préfère la bière
 Où prendrons-nous le café ?
 Prenons-le dans le jardin
 Voulez-vous des gâteaux ?
 Ces dames sont au salon ; voulez-
 vous descendre
 Avez-vous vu mon paletot ?
 Le voilà
 Où sont mes gants ?
 Ils sont sur votre lit
 Voilà votre éventail
 A quelle heure vous couchez-vous ?
 A dix heures et demie
 Bonsoir, messieurs
 N'oubliez pas votre canne
 Fait-il beau temps ?
 Il fait un beau clair de lune
 Il tombe de la grêle
 Entendez-vous le tonnerre ?
 Voulez-vous un parapluie ?
 Non ; le ciel est sans nuages
 Mes compliments chez vous
 Quand viendrez-vous nous voir ?
 La semaine prochaine
 Irez-vous à Paris l'été prochain ?

Je ne sais pas
 Par quel convoi partez-vous ?
 Par le convoi de huit heures
 Avez-vous pris votre billet ?
 Oui ; je l'ai dans ma bourse
 Votre bagage est-il enregistré ?
 Le garçon l'a fait enregistrer
 Partons ; j'entends la cloche
 Dépêchez-vous !

Is the dinner ready ?
What will you take ?
What shall I offer you ?
Do you drink wine ?
I prefer beer
Where shall we take coffee ?
Let us take it in the garden
Will you have some cakes ?
The ladies are in the drawing-
room ; come down
Have you seen my great-coat ?
There it is
Where are my gloves ?
They are on your bed
Here is your fan
At what o'clock do you go to bed ?
At half-past ten o'clock
Good night, gentlemen
Do not forget your stick
Is it fine weather ?
The moon shines brightly
It hails
Do you hear the thunder ?
Will you have an umbrella ?
No ; the sky is cloudless
My compliments at home
When will you come to see us ?
Next week
Shall you go to Paris next sum-
mer ?
I do not know
By which train do you go ?
By the eight o'clock train
Have you taken your ticket ?
Yes ; I have it in my purse
Is your luggage booked ?
The waiter had it booked
Let us go ; I hear the bell
Make haste !

Part I.

ACCIDENCE.

22 There are in French ten classes of words called *parts of speech*, namely, the *article*, the *substantive*, the *adjective*, the *pronoun*, the *verb*, the *participle*, the *adverb*, the *preposition*, the *conjunction*, and the *interjection*.

The first six are *variable*, and the four others *invariable*

ARTICLE.

23 The *article* is a word placed before substantives to specify the extent of their signification.

The English definite article *the* is expressed in French as follows :—

le	before a noun masc. in the singular	} <i>the</i>
la	before a noun fem. in the singular	
les	before all nouns in the plural	

EXAMPLES.

<i>le</i> mérite	<i>the merit</i>		<i>les</i> hommes	<i>the men</i>
<i>la</i> vertu	<i>the virtue</i>		<i>les</i> femmes	<i>the women</i>
<i>les</i> talents	<i>the talents</i>		<i>les</i> enfants	<i>the children</i>

The article may be modified in two different ways—by *elision* or by *contraction*.

24 The article *le* and *la* suffers elision (*l'* instead of *le* or *la*, § 10, p. 3) when the following word begins with a vowel or an *h* mute, for the sake of euphony ; as

<i>l'</i> ami	<i>the friend</i>	} instead of {	<i>le</i> ami
<i>l'</i> âme	<i>the soul</i>		<i>la</i> âme
<i>l'</i> homme	<i>the man</i>		<i>le</i> homme
<i>l'</i> humanité	<i>humanity</i>		<i>la</i> humanité

25 When *le* or *les* is joined to the preposition *de* or *à*, they form the contracted or compound articles and are rendered as follows: —

du	before a noun <i>m.</i> beginning with a cons. or <i>h</i> asp.	} <i>of, from the</i>
de la	before a noun <i>f.</i> beginning with a cons. or <i>h</i> asp.	
de l'	before a noun beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute	
des	before any noun in the plural	
au	before a noun <i>m.</i> beginning with a cons. or <i>h</i> asp.	} <i>to, at the</i>
à la	before a noun <i>f.</i> beginning with a cons. or <i>h</i> asp.	
à l'	before a noun beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute	
aux	before any noun in the plural	

<i>du</i>	is a contraction of <i>de le</i>	} never used
<i>des</i>	" <i>de les</i>	
<i>au</i>	" <i>à le</i>	
<i>aux</i>	" <i>à les</i>	

EXAMPLES.

du père, of the father
de la mère, of the mother
de l'enfant, of the child

de l'histoire, of the history
des plantes, of the plants
des oiseaux, of the birds

au fils, to the son
à la fille, to the daughter
à l'oncle, to the uncle

à l'amitié, to the friendship
aux frères, to the brothers
aux sœurs, to the sisters

26 The English possessive case, expressed by 's, as *the king's palace*, having no equivalent in French, is rendered thus: *the palace of the king*, le palais du roi. Such construction as *the king's palace* is altogether foreign to the genius of the French language.

27 In French, when we mention the name of the *substance* of which a thing is made, the words are also rendered in an inverted manner, with *de* between the two nouns; as

une montre d'or	•	a gold watch
une robe de soie	•	a silk dress
une plume d'acier		a steel pen

28 Nouns used in a partitive sense, that is, expressing a portion of anything or a *few*, are preceded, according to gender and number, by the compound article *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, expressed in English (if expressed at all) by

some in affirmative, and by *any* in interrogative sentences ;
 as

donnez-moi <i>du</i> pain	<i>give me some bread</i>
nous avons <i>de la</i> viande	<i>we have meat</i>
avez-vous <i>des</i> livres ?	<i>have you any books ?</i>

29 When a substantive taken in a partitive sense is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used instead of *du*, *de la*, *des* ; as

il a <i>de</i> bon pain	<i>he has (some) good bread</i>
il a <i>de</i> bonne viande	<i>he has (some) good meat</i>
i. a <i>de</i> bons fruits	<i>he has (some) good fruits</i>

Un, une. A, an.

30 The English indefinite article, *a* or *an*, is rendered in French by *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine ; as .

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
<i>un</i> homme, a man	<i>une</i> femme, a woman
<i>d'un</i> homme, of a man	<i>d'une</i> femme, of a woman
<i>à un</i> homme, to a man	<i>à une</i> femme, to a woman

Read and translate.

Le père, la mère et les enfants sont malades. L'oncle, la tante et les nièces sont ici. L'hirondelle est la messagère du printemps. Le fils et les filles de mon frère. Le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver sont les quatre saisons de l'année. Les portes de l'église sont fermées. Le clocher du village est blanc. Les rues de la ville sont très-larges. La vie de l'homme est courte. Il chante du matin au soir. J'ai parlé au père, à la mère et aux fils. Il a donné son cheval au neveu, et sa maison aux nièces. Voici du thé, du café, du pain, du beurre, de la viande et des œufs. Le chapeau de mon cousin est dans la chambre. Le jardin de la reine est grand. Ma sœur a de jolies robes. Il a de beaux chevaux dans son écurie. J'ai un chien, des vaches et des moutons. Avez-vous une plume et un crayon ? La couronne d'un roi et d'une reine. J'ai parlé à un ami.

N.B.—The learner should parse a few words in each of the French exercises throughout the book.

Exercise on the Article.

The book¹. The table². The pens³. The master⁴ of the house⁵. The lesson⁶ of the pupil⁷. The oaks⁸ of the forest⁹. The tree¹⁰ of the

¹ livre *m.* ² table *f.* ³ plumes *pl.* ⁴ maître *m.* ⁵ maison *f.* ⁶ leçon *f.* ⁷ élève *m.*
⁸ chênes *pl.* ⁹ forêt *f.* ¹⁰ arbre *m.*

garden¹¹. The history¹² of the revolution. From the north¹³ to the south¹⁴. Give¹⁵ the penknife¹⁶ to the boy¹⁷, and the pencil¹⁸ to the girl¹⁹. The general spoke²⁰ to the king²¹, to the queen²², and to the princes. The rays²³ of the sun²⁴. The windows²⁵ of the room²⁶. The lustre²⁷ of the stars²⁸. The beauties²⁹ of (the) nature. The courage of the soldiers³⁰. The head³¹ of a horse³². The door³³ of a carriage³⁴. Give me³⁵ bread³⁶, butter³⁷, eggs³⁸, and water³⁹. I have⁴⁰ some ink⁴¹, and some pens⁴². (Here are⁴³) pears⁴⁴, peaches⁴⁵, and cherries⁴⁶. He has⁴⁷ good bread⁴⁸, good meat⁴⁹, and good apples⁵⁰. I have fine fruits⁵¹ in my garden.

¹¹ jardin *m.* ¹² histoire *f.* ¹³ nord *m.* ¹⁴ sud *m.* ¹⁵ Donnez ¹⁶ canif *m.* ¹⁷ garçon *m.* ¹⁸ crayon *m.* ¹⁹ fille *f.* ²⁰ parla ²¹ roi *m.* ²² reine *f.* ²³ rayons *pl.* ²⁴ soleil *m.* ²⁵ fenêtres *pl.* ²⁶ chambre *f.* ²⁷ éclat *m.* ²⁸ étoiles *pl.* ²⁹ beautés *pl.* ³⁰ soldats *pl.* ³¹ tête *f.* ³² cheval *m.* ³³ portière *f.* ³⁴ voiture *f.* ³⁵ moi ³⁶ pain *m.* ³⁷ beurre *m.* ³⁸ œufs *pl.* ³⁹ eau *f.* ⁴⁰ J'ai ⁴¹ encre *f.* ⁴² plumes *pl.* ⁴³ Voici ⁴⁴ poires ⁴⁵ pêches ⁴⁶ cerises ⁴⁷ Il a ⁴⁸ bon pain ⁴⁹ bonne viande ⁵⁰ bonnes pommes ⁵¹ beaux fruits.

SUBSTANTIVE.

31 A *substantive* or *noun* is a word which expresses the name of a person, or an object material, spiritual, or ideal; such as *homme* man, *cheval* horse, *arbre* tree, *vertu* virtue, *espérance* hope.

There are two sorts of nouns—*common* and *proper*.

The noun *common* belongs to all persons or things of the same kind: *homme* man, *livre* book, *soldat* soldier, &c.

The noun *proper* belongs only to one person or thing; as *Napoléon*, *Paris*, *les Alpes*, &c.

A noun common in the singular, which represents several persons or things, is called a noun *collective*; as *armée* army, *nation* nation, *flotte* fleet.

GENDER.

32 Gender marks the distinction of sex. The French language has but two genders: the *masculine*, as *un homme* a man, *un lion* a lion; and the *feminine*, as *une femme* a woman, *une lionne* a lioness. There is no neuter gender in French, and consequently the names of inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine; as

<i>Masculine</i>		<i>Feminine</i>	
le soleil	<i>the sun</i>	la lune	<i>the moon</i>
le livre	<i>the book</i>	la ville	<i>the town</i>

NOTE.—Being convinced that *practice* and *dictionaries* are the best, as it were, the only means to determine the gender of nouns of inanimate objects, I only give a few general rules for that purpose in the Appendix, which see.

NUMBER.

33 There are two numbers—the *singular*, which denotes one object, as *l'enfant* the child, *la plume* the pen; the *plural*, which denotes more than one, as *les enfants* the children, *les plumes* the pens.

Formation of the Plural of Substantives.

34 GENERAL RULE.—The plural of substantives, and also of adjectives, is formed by adding an *s* to the singular; as

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
le jardin	the garden		les jardins	the gardens
la fleur	the flower		les fleurs	the flowers

35 Substantives ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, in the singular, do not vary in the plural; as

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
le héros	the hero		les héros	the heroes
la voix	the voice		les voix	the voices
le nez	the nose		les nez	the noses

36 Substantives ending in *au* and *eu* take *x* in the plural; as

			<i>Plural</i>	
le château	the castle		les châteaux	the castles
le bateau	the boat		les bateaux	the boats
le jeu	the game		les jeux	the games

EXCEPT *bleu*, blue, which takes *s* in the plural.

37 Substantives ending in *ou* likewise take *x* in the plural; as

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
un bijou	a jewel		des bijoux	jewels
un joujou	a toy		des joujoux	toys

EXCEPT *clou* nail, *verrou* bolt, and a few more, which take an *s* in the plural.

38 Substantives ending in *al* or *ail* in the singular, become plural by changing *al* or *ail* into *aux*; as

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
un cheval	a horse		des chevaux	horses
un canal	a canal		des canaux	canals
un travail	a work		des travaux	works

EXCEPT the following, which take an *s* in the plural: *bal*, carnival, *chacal*, detail, *éventail*, governail, *nopal*, *portail*, *régat*, *strail*, and *travail*, when signifying horse-shoeing. *Ail*, garlic, makes in the plural *aïls* and *aulx*. *Bétail*, cattle, has no plural; but *bestiaux* is often used for the plural of that word.

39 The three words, *ciel*, *œil*, *aïeul* have a double plural; thus:—

ciel { makes in the plural *ciels* for skies of pictures
bed-testers, ceiling of a stone quarry, and climate: *l'Italie est sous un des plus beaux CIELS de l'Europe.*
makes *cieux* in the sense of *heaven*: *le royaume des CIEUX.*

œil { makes *yeux* when signifying *the sight*; and makes
œils in other cases: *des ŒILS-de-bœuf* (oval windows).

aïeul { makes *aïeux* when designating the ancestors: *la gloire de ses AÏEUX.*
makes *aïeuls* when designating precisely the paternal and maternal grandfather: *il possède encore ses deux AÏEULS.*

40 NOTE 1.—All words of more than one syllable, ending in *ant* or *ent*, should always retain *t* final in the plural, though it is omitted by some authors; thus write *des enfants*, and not *enfuns*. The French Academy and the best modern grammarians retain that letter.

41 NOTE 2.—Some substantives have no plural, as *la faim*, *la soif*, *l'or*, *l'argent*, *la charité*, and all the names of virtues and vices. Some others have no singular, as *pleurs*, *ancêtres*, *nuages*, *ténèbres*, *funérailles*, &c.

Read and write the following in the plural.

La maison, le toit, le livre, la loi, la chaleur, le bois, le fils, le progrès, la noix, le gaz, la croix, le feu, le chapeau, le gâteau, le verrou, le bijou, le général, l'hôpital, le soupirail, l'éventail, le bal, le ciel, un œil bleu, le genou, un tableau, l'aïeul, le remords.

Exercise on the Plural of Substantives.

The children¹ of the hamlet². The palace³ of the king⁴. The palaces of the kings. The voice⁵ of the child. The voices of heaven⁶. The castles⁷ of the queen⁸. The birds⁹ of the fields¹⁰. A blue¹¹ eye¹². She has¹³ blue eyes. The bolts¹⁴ of the door¹⁵. Have you¹⁶ some nails¹⁷? He fell¹⁸ on his knees¹⁹. Your sister²⁰ has fine jewels²¹. The horses²² are²³ ready²⁴. The labours²⁵ of the country²⁶. The hospital²⁷ of the town²⁸. All²⁹ the hospitals are full³⁰. I will give you³¹

¹ enfant *pl.* ² hameau *m.* (h asp.) ³ palais *m.* ⁴ roi *m.* ⁵ voix *f.* ⁶ ciel *m.* ⁷ château *pl.* ⁸ reine *f.* ⁹ oiseau *pl.* ¹⁰ champ *pl.* ¹¹ bleu *m.* ¹² œil *m.* ¹³ Elle *a* ¹⁴ verrou *pl.* ¹⁵ porte *f.* ¹⁶ Avez-vous ¹⁷ clou *pl.* ¹⁸ Il tomba ¹⁹ genou *pl.* ²⁰ Votre sœur ²¹ bijou *pl.* ²² cheval *pl.* ²³ sont ²⁴ prêt *pl.* ²⁵ travail *pl.* ²⁶ campagne *f.* ²⁷ hôpital *m.* (h m.) ²⁸ ville *f.* ²⁹ tous ³⁰ plein *pl.* ³¹ Je vous donnerai

some details³² on this affair³³. The kingdom³⁴ of heaven³⁵. The heavens declare³⁶ the glory³⁷ of God³⁸. His³⁹ two grandfathers⁴⁰ (are still alive⁴¹). I have seen⁴² the pictures⁴³ at the Exhibition⁴⁴.

³² détail *pl.* ³³ sur cette affaire ³⁴ royaume *m.* ³⁵ ciel *m.* ³⁶ annoncent ³⁷ gloire *f.* ³⁸ Dieu ³⁹ Ses ⁴⁰ aïeul *pl.* ⁴¹ sont encore en vie ⁴² J'ai vu ⁴³ tableau *pl.* ⁴⁴ Exposition.

ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives are divided into five classes, viz. the *qualificative*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *indefinite*, and *numeral*.

QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

The *qualificative* adjective is that which expresses some quality or modification of a substantive or noun; as *sage*, *beau*, *poli*, *noir*, *rond*, &c.

42 The adjective, in French, agrees in *gender* and *number* with the substantive to which it relates; as

un homme prudent	<i>a prudent man</i>
une femme prudente	<i>a prudent woman</i>
des hommes prudents	<i>prudent men</i>
des femmes prudentes	<i>prudent women</i>

Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives

43 GENERAL RULE.—The feminine of adjectives is generally formed by adding an *e* mute to the masculine; as

un homme <i>savant</i>	<i>a learned man</i>
une femme <i>savante</i>	<i>a learned woman</i>
il est <i>poli</i>	<i>he is polite</i>
elle est <i>polie</i>	<i>she is polite</i>
il est <i>estimé</i>	<i>he is esteemed</i>
elle est <i>estimée</i>	<i>she is esteemed</i>
un habit <i>noir</i>	<i>a black coat</i>
une robe <i>noire</i>	<i>a black dress</i>

44 SECOND RULE.—Adjectives ending in *e* mute in the masculine singular do not change for the feminine; as

il est <i>aimable</i>	<i>he is amiable</i>
elle est <i>aimable</i>	<i>she is amiable</i>

45 THIRD RULE.—Adjectives ending in *x* become feminine by changing *x* into *se*; as

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
heureux	heureuse	<i>happy</i>
jaloux	jalouse	<i>jealous</i>

46 FOURTH RULE.—Adjectives ending in *f* become feminine by changing *f* into *ve*; as

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>vil</i>	<i>vilve</i>	<i>quick</i>
<i>neuf</i>	<i>neuve</i>	<i>new</i>

47 FIFTH RULE.—Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ien*, *on*, *et*, *as*, form their feminine by doubling the final consonant and adding an *e* mute to it; as

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>cruel</i>	<i>cruelle</i>	<i>cruel</i>
<i>pareil</i>	<i>pareille</i>	<i>like</i>
<i>ancien</i>	<i>ancienne</i>	<i>ancient</i>
<i>bon</i>	<i>bonne</i>	<i>good</i>
<i>muet</i>	<i>muette</i>	<i>dumb</i>
<i>gras</i>	<i>grasse</i>	<i>fat</i>

But *complet*, *concret*, *discret*, *secret*, *inquiet*, *replet*, make in the feminine *complète*, *concrète*, *discrète*, &c.

48 The following adjectives also become feminine by doubling the final consonant and adding *e* mute; as

<i>épais</i>	<i>épaisse</i>	<i>thick</i>	<i>mat</i>	<i>matte</i>	<i>unpolished</i>
<i>exprès</i>	<i>expresse</i>	<i>express</i>	<i>nul</i>	<i>nulle</i>	<i>no, null</i>
<i>gentil</i>	<i>gentille</i>	<i>pretty, nice</i>	<i>paysan</i>	<i>paysanne</i>	<i>countrylike</i>
<i>gros</i>	<i>grosse</i>	<i>big</i>	<i>sot</i>	<i>sotte</i>	<i>silly</i>

49 SIXTH RULE.—Adjectives ending in *eur* (when derived from a participle present by changing *ant* into *eur*) change *eur* into *euse*; as

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>trompeur</i>	<i>trompeuse</i>	<i>deceitful</i>
<i>danseur</i>	<i>danseuse</i>	<i>dancer</i>
<i>flatteur</i>	<i>flatteuse</i>	<i>flattering</i>

EXCEPTIONS.—*Exécuteur*, *inspecteur*, *inventeur*, *persécuteur*, make *exécutrice*, *inspectrice*, *inventrice*, *persécutrice*. *Gouverneur*, *tutor*, makes *gouvernante*, *governess*.

50 Words in *teur* (not derived from a participle) become feminine by changing *eur* into *rice*; as

Masc.	Fem.	
<i>acteur</i>	<i>actrice</i>	<i>actor</i>
<i>accusateur</i>	<i>accusatrice</i>	<i>accuser</i>
<i>créateur</i>	<i>créatrice</i>	<i>creator</i>
<i>protecteur</i>	<i>protectrice</i>	<i>protector</i>

Words ending in *érieur*, such as *supérieur*, *inférieur*, and also *majeur*, *mineur*, *mellieur*, follow the general rule—that is, take *e* mute for the feminine.

51 There are a few adjectives in *eur*, often used as nouns, which make their feminine in *eresse*; such as

Masc.	Fem.	
baillieur	bailleresse	lessor
défendeur	défenderesse	défendant
enchanteur	enchanteresse	enchanteur charmer
pêcheur	pêcheresse	sinner
vengeur	vengeresse	avenger

52 The following adjectives have two feminines:—

Masc.		Fem.
chanteur	singer	chanteuse, cantatrice
chasseur	hunter	chasseuse, chasseresse
débiteur	{ retailer	{ débitrice
	{ debtor	{ débitrice
demandeur	{ he who asks	{ demandeuse
	{ plaintiff	{
vendeur	seller	{ vendeuse
		{ (law)

53 The following adjectives form their feminine irregularly:—

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
beau }	belle	<i>fine</i>	jumeau	jumelle	<i>twin</i>
bel }			long	longue	<i>long</i>
bénin	bénigne	<i>benign</i>	malin	maligne	<i>malicious</i>
blanc	blanche	<i>white</i>	mou }	molle	<i>soft</i>
caduc	caduque	<i>decrepit</i>	mol }		
coi	coite	<i>still</i>	nouveau }	nouvelle	<i>new</i>
dissous	dissoute	<i>dissolved</i>	nouvel }		
doux	douce	<i>sweet</i>	public	publique	<i>public</i>
faux	fausse	<i>false</i>	roux	rousse	<i>red</i>
favori	favorite	<i>favourite</i>	sec	sèche	<i>dry</i>
fou }	folle	<i>foolish</i>	tiers	tiere	<i>third</i>
fol }			traître	traïtesse	<i>traitor</i>
frais	fraîche	<i>fresh</i>	ture	turque	<i>Turkish</i>
franc	franche	<i>frank</i>	vieux }	vieille	<i>old</i>
grec	grecque	<i>Greek</i>	vieil }		

54 *Beau, fou, mou, nouveau, vieux*, make *bel, fol, mol, nouvel, vieil* (and *vieux* occasionally), before a noun masculine singular beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as *bel homme, fol espoir, nouvel habit, vieil ami*.

55 NOTE 1.—The following words do not change in the feminine: *châtain* nut-brown, *dispos* active, nimble, *fat* coxcomb *témoin* witness, *imposteur* impostor, *auteur*, *le, professeur, écrivain, peintre*, &c.

NOTE 2.—The plural of adjectives is formed like that of substantives, and the rules given at page 22 can be applied to adjectives, with only three exceptions—in *fou, mou,*

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

56 GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives in French are generally placed *after* the substantives to which they relate; as

un homme riche	a rich man
un livre utile	a useful book
un habit neuf	a new coat

57 Many adjectives, expressing some moral qualities, may be placed either *before* or *after* the substantive; as un ami *fidèle*, or un *fidèle* ami. (See *Syntax*, page 145.)

58 This is one of the greatest difficulties of the language, and the best way to avoid mistakes is to put the adjective *after* the substantive, unless it be one of the following, which usually precede, but only with the meanings here stated:—

beau	fine	meilleur	better
bon	good	moindre	less
cher (affection)	dear	noir	atrocious
digne	worthy	nouveau	other, new
franc	downright	parfait	consummate
galant	civil	pauvre	poor, paltry
grand	great	petit	little
gros	big	propre	own, very
honnête	honest	pur	sheer, plain
jeune	young	saint	holy
joli	pretty	simple	common, mere
long	long	sot	foolish
maigre	scanty, poor	triste	mean, poor
malhonnête	dishonest	véritable	real
mauvais	bad	vieux	old
méchant	{ wicked	vilain	ugly
	{ wretched	vrai	downright

Read and translate.

Le jardin du château est *petit*. La porte de la ville est *petite*. Le passage est très-*étroit*. Les rues de la ville sont *étroites*. Voici de *jolies* roses et de *jolis* dahlias. Votre sœur est très-*sage*. Ce *petit* garçon est aussi *sage* que sa sœur. Le duc est *généreux*, mais la duchesse n'est pas *généreuse*. Nous étions sous un ciel *orageux*, et sur une mer *orageuse*. Le père de mon ami est très-*actif*, et sa femme est encore plus *active*. Mon fils a un habit *neuf*, et ma fille une robe *neuve*. Ils sont bien *contents*. Ce vin est *bon*, mais cette bière n'est pas *bonne*; le vin est *frais*, et la bière n'est pas *fraîche*. C'est mon *premier* voyage, et ma *première* visite. Mes *petits* amis,

soyez dociles et attentifs. Donnez-moi un mouchoir blanc, une cravate blanche, et des gants blancs. Ce chemin est bien long. Quelle longue histoire!

Exercise on the Adjective.

An elegant lady¹. A pretty house². Idleness is fatal to health³. A cultivated⁴ country⁵ is always⁶ admired⁷. An agreeable news⁸ is always well received¹⁰. Your lesson¹¹ is easy¹². Her brother¹³ is happy¹⁴. His mother¹⁵ is happy. These¹⁶ two ladies¹⁷ are graceful¹⁸. The Romans¹⁹ were²⁰ courageous²¹. The stars²² are very numerous²³. Your sister²⁴ is very attentive²⁵. That²⁶ child²⁷ is quick²⁸. That woman²⁹ is revengeful³⁰. I have new boots³¹. The mutual³² inclination of those³³ two children. The soul³⁴ is immortal³⁵. The tiger³⁶ is cruel, but³⁷ the hyena³⁸ is still³⁹ more cruel. The Christian⁴⁰ religion is admirable. Read⁴¹ the ancient⁴² history. That young girl⁴³ is dumb⁴⁴. My son, be⁴⁵ good to others⁴⁶. A good girl is loved⁴⁷ by everybody⁴⁸.

Appearances⁴⁹ are often deceitful⁵⁰. The protecting⁵¹ hand⁵² of Providence. That actress⁵³ has an enchanting⁵⁴ voice⁵⁵. Fear⁵⁶ the avenging⁵⁷ thunderbolt⁵⁸. He has a fine square room⁵⁹. Your brother is a fine man⁶⁰. We saw⁶¹ a fine bird⁶² yesterday. She has a white⁶³ gown⁶⁴. He always wears⁶⁵ a white hat. This liquor⁶⁶ is very sweet⁶⁷. It is⁶⁸ my favourite⁶⁹ song⁷⁰. He made⁷¹ a long speech⁷². After a long absence⁷³. You have a new servant⁷⁴. He has a new apprentice⁷⁵. The earth⁷⁶ is very dry⁷⁷. The grass⁷⁸ of the meadow⁷⁹ is already thick⁸⁰. She is very silly⁸¹. Give him⁸² my old⁸³ coat⁸⁴. An old friend⁸⁵ is a great treasure⁸⁶. This woman⁸⁷ is very old.

¹ élégant dame f. ² jolie maison f. ³ paresse f. ⁴ santé f. ⁵ cultivé ⁶ campagne f. ⁷ toujours ⁸ admiré ⁹ nouvelle f. ¹⁰ reçu ¹¹ leçon f. ¹² facile ¹³ frère m. ¹⁴ heureux ¹⁵ mère f. ¹⁶ Ces ¹⁷ dames f. pl. ¹⁸ gracieux ¹⁹ Romains ²⁰ étaient ²¹ courageux ²² étoiles f. pl. ²³ nombreux ²⁴ Votre sœur f. ²⁵ attentif ²⁶ Cet ²⁷ enfant m. ²⁸ vif ²⁹ femme f. ³⁰ vindicatif ³¹ botte f. ³² mutuel ³³ ces ³⁴ âme f. ³⁵ immortel ³⁶ tigre m. ³⁷ mais ³⁸ hyène f. ³⁹ encore ⁴⁰ chrétien ⁴¹ Lisez ⁴² ancien ⁴³ fille f. ⁴⁴ muet ⁴⁵ sois ⁴⁶ envers autrui ⁴⁷ aimé ⁴⁸ tout le monde ⁴⁹ apparences f. pl. ⁵⁰ trompeur ⁵¹ protecteur ⁵² main f. ⁵³ actrice f. ⁵⁴ enchanteur ⁵⁵ voix f. ⁵⁶ Craignez ⁵⁷ vengeur ⁵⁸ foudre f. ⁵⁹ chambre f. ⁶⁰ homme m. ⁶¹ Nous ⁶² oiseaux m. ⁶³ blanc ⁶⁴ robe f. ⁶⁵ porte ⁶⁶ liqueur f. ⁶⁷ doux ⁶⁸ C'est ⁶⁹ favori ⁷⁰ romance f. ⁷¹ fit ⁷² discours m. ⁷³ absence f. ⁷⁴ domestique m. ⁷⁵ apprenti m. ⁷⁶ terre f. ⁷⁷ sec ⁷⁸ herbe f. ⁷⁹ prairie f. ⁸⁰ épais ⁸¹ sot ⁸² Donnez-lui ⁸³ vieux ⁸⁴ habit m. ⁸⁵ ami m. ⁸⁶ trésor m. ⁸⁷ femme f.

FORMATION OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

59 There are three degrees of comparison,—the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

60 The *Positive* is the adjective itself; as *il est savant* he is learned.

61 The *Comparative* is the adjective preceded by one of the words *plus* more, *moins* less, or *aussi* as; so that there

are three sorts of *Comparatives*, called of *superiority*, *inferiority*, and *equality*.

62 The Comparative of *superiority* is formed by placing *plus*, more, before the *adjective*, and *que*, than, after it; as

il est *plus* savant *que* moi he is more learned than I

63 The Comparative of *inferiority* is formed by placing *moins*, less, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it; also by putting a negation before the verb, *si*, so, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it; as

je suis *moins* heureux *que* vous I am less happy than you
il n'est pas *si* riche *que* vous he is not so rich as you

64 The Comparative of *equality* is formed by placing *aussi*, as, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it; as

il est *aussi* studieux *que* vous he is as studious as you

65 There are two sorts of *Superlatives* — the *relative* and the *absolute*.

66 The *relative* is formed by prefixing to the adjective *plus* or *moins*, preceded by *le*, *la*, *les*, or *one* of the possessive adjectives, *mon*, *ton*, *son*, &c.; as

le plus grand de vos frères the tallest of your brothers
la moins instruite de ses sœurs the least learned of his sisters
mon plus cher ami my dearest friend

67 The *absolute* is formed by prefixing the adverb *très*, *fort*, *bien*, *extrêmement*, &c., to the adjective; as

Néron était *très*-cruel Nero was very cruel
vous êtes *bien* bon you are very kind

68 THE FOLLOWING ARE IRREGULAR:—

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>		<i>Superlative</i>
bon good	meilleur better		le meilleur the best
mauvais bad	{ pire or plus mauvais }	worse	{ le pire or le plus mauvais }
petit little	{ moindre or plus petit }	less	{ le moindre or le plus petit }
			the worst the least

69 The three adjectives just mentioned must not be confounded with the three corresponding adverbs:—

bien <i>well</i>	mieux <i>better</i>	le mieux <i>the best</i>
mal <i>badly</i>	{ pis or plus mal }	worse { le pis or le plus mal }
peu <i>little</i>	moins <i>less</i>	le moins <i>the least</i>
		<i>the worst</i>

Read and translate.

Le Palais de Cristal est *plus grand que* le Palais de l'Industrie à Paris. La tour du château est *plus haute que* le clocher du village. Mon banquier est *moins riche que* le vôtre. L'acier français n'est pas *si estimé que* l'acier anglais. Napoléon était *aussi* ambitieux qu'Alexandre. Homère est *le plus grand* poète grec, et Virgile *le plus grand* poète latin. Je suis *le plus jeune* de la famille. L'automne est *moins varié que* le printemps. La reine Victoria est *très-estimée et infiniment* populaire. Le Parlement anglais est un des *plus beaux* monuments de Londres. Je suis *bien* content d'avoir vu le musée. Edimbourg est une *fort* belle ville, mais Glasgow est la ville *la plus considérable* de l'Écosse. Votre vin est *bon*, mais le mien est encore *meilleur*. Les Zouaves sont *les meilleurs* soldats de l'armée française. Votre chambre est *mauvaise*, mais la mienne est encore *pire* (ou *plus mauvaise*). Ma cousine dessine *bien*, mais vous dessinez encore *mieux*.

Exercise on the Degrees of Comparison.

Your brother is (taller than¹) you. His garden is larger² than mine³. You are⁴ less attentive⁵ than your sister. (She is not⁶) so old⁷ as you. Be⁸ as good as your father. The tulip⁹ is as beautiful¹⁰ as the rose. My horse¹¹ is as good as yours¹². London¹³ is the most populous¹⁴ city¹⁵ in¹⁶ Europe. This pear¹⁷ is better than that apple¹⁸. The best officers¹⁹ of the army²⁰. That writing²¹ is worse than yours²². You sing²³ better than he²⁴. Of his²⁵ three sons²⁶ the youngest draws²⁷ best. Of your three horses the grey²⁸ is the best. The climate of Italy²⁹ is not so warm as that³⁰ of Turkey³¹. The fog³² was very thick³³ here, but it was still thicker in³⁴ London. He writes³⁵ better than he speaks³⁶.

¹ grand que ² grand ³ le mien ⁴ êtes ⁵ attentif ⁶ Elle n'est pas ⁷ vieux ⁸ Sois
⁹ tulipe ¹⁰ beau ¹¹ cheval m. ¹² le vôtre ¹³ Londres ¹⁴ peuplé ¹⁵ ville f. ¹⁶ de
¹⁷ poire f. ¹⁸ pomme f. ¹⁹ officiers ²⁰ armée f. ²¹ écriture f. ²² la vôtre ²³ chantez
²⁴ lui ²⁵ ses ²⁶ fils ²⁷ dessine ²⁸ gris ²⁹ Italie ³⁰ celui ³¹ l'urquie ³² brouillard m.
³³ épais ³⁴ à ³⁵ écrit ³⁶ ne parle

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

70 The *possessive* adjectives determine the signification

of substantives, by adding to them an idea of possession. They are the following :—

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Masculine	Feminine	Masc. and Fem.	
mon	ma	mes	<i>my</i>
ton	ta	tes	<i>thy</i>
son	sa	ses	<i>his, her, its, one's</i>
notre	notre	nos	<i>our</i>
votre	votre	vos	<i>your</i>
leur	leur	leurs	<i>their</i>

71 The possessive adjectives, in French, agree in gender and number with the *object possessed*, and never (as in English) with the *possessor* :—

son mari *her husband*
sa femme *his wife*

son frère *her brother*
sa sœur *his sister*

72 *Mon, ton, son* are used instead of *ma, ta, sa* before a noun feminine beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, to avoid the hiatus caused by the meeting of two vowels ; as

mon âme *my soul*
ton épée *thy sword*

ton humeur *thy temper*
son amitié *his friendship*

73 Possessive adjectives must be repeated before every noun to which they relate ; as

mon frère, ma sœur et mes amis | *my brother, sister, and friends*
sont à la campagne | *are in the country*

Read and translate.

J'ai laissé *mon* chapeau, *ma* canne et *mes* gants dans *ta* chambre. *Ma* sœur a reçu une lettre de *son* mari. Je regrette *mon* ancienne maison (f.). Connaissez-vous *ses* parents ? *Votre* fils, *votre* fille et *vos* deux domestiques sont arrivés. Ils ont vendu *leur* voiture et *leurs* chevaux. *Nos* armées ont combattu vaillamment. Charles a donné *sa* montre à *son* frère, et un bracelet à *sa* sœur. J'estime *votre* père, *son* amitié (f.) m'est précieuse. Bonjour, *ma* tante, comment vous portez-vous ? Avez-vous vu *mon* amie (f.) ? Non, mais j'ai parlé à *son* fils. *Mon* papier, *ma* plume et *mes* livres sont dans le tiroir.

Exercise on the Possessive Adjectives.

My father¹ is gone². Thy mother³ is here. His house⁴ is finished⁵. Her piano⁶ is beautiful. Her children⁷ are obedient⁸. Our friend-

¹ père m. ² parti ³ mère f. ⁴ maison f. ⁵ fini ⁶ piano m. ⁷ enfant pl.
⁸ obéissant m.

ship⁹ is constant¹⁰. Our horses¹¹ are in the stable¹². Your book¹³ is on¹⁴ the table. Your pens¹⁵ (are not¹⁶) good. I have seen¹⁷ your uncle¹⁸, aunt¹⁹, and cousins²⁰. Their friends²¹ (will come²²) to-morrow. Their conduct²³ is very good. His application is very great²⁴. Her imprudence²⁵ caused²⁶ her loss²⁷. His history²⁸ of England²⁹ is excellent. My harp³⁰ is in his room³¹. Where is my coat? She has seen³² her uncle and aunt. (Do you know³³) her age? Every country³⁴ has its customs, laws, and prejudices³⁵.

⁹ amitié *f.* ¹⁰ constant ¹¹ cheval *pl.* ¹² écurie *f.* ¹³ livre *m.* ¹⁴ sur ¹⁵ plume *pl.*
¹⁶ ne sont pas ¹⁷ vu ¹⁸ oncle ¹⁹ tante ²⁰ cousines ²¹ ami *pl.* ²² viendront ²³ conduite *f.* ²⁴ grand ²⁵ causa ²⁶ perte *f.* ²⁷ histoire *f.* ²⁸ Angleterre ²⁹ harpe *f.*
³⁰ chambre *f.* ³¹ vu ³² Savcz-vous ³³ pays ³⁴ préjugés *pl.*

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

74 *Demonstrative* adjectives serve to denote and point out objects. Like other adjectives, they agree in gender and number, and must be repeated when there are several nouns in the sentence. They are:—

<i>Masc. Singular</i>	<i>Fem. Singular</i>	<i>Plural both genders</i>
ce before a cons. or <i>h</i> asp.	cette { <i>this</i>	ces { <i>these</i>
cet before a vowel or <i>h</i> m.	cette { <i>that</i>	ces { <i>those</i>

EXAMPLES.

<i>Masculine</i>		<i>Feminine</i>	
ce soldat	that <i>soldier</i>	cette fille	that <i>girl</i>
ce héros	that <i>hero</i>	cette école	that <i>school</i>
cet enfant	that <i>child</i>	cette herbe	that <i>grass</i>
cet homme	that <i>man</i>	ces dames	those <i>ladies</i>
ces garçons	those <i>boys</i>	ces armes	those <i>arms</i>
ces arbres	those <i>trees</i>	ces herbes	those <i>herbs</i>

75 *ci* and *là* (*here* and *there*) are sometimes added to the noun, to point it out more distinctly; as

ce livre- <i>ci</i>	this <i>book</i>	ce livre- <i>là</i>	that <i>book</i>
ces hommes- <i>ci</i>	these <i>men</i>	ces hommes- <i>là</i>	those <i>men</i>

Read and translate.

Ce boulanger est très-punctuel. *Ce* hameau est bien situé. *Cet* avocat est très-éloquent. *Cette* orange est amère. *Cette* gravure n'est pas chère. J'ai acheté *ces* deux volumes *ce* matin. Je n'aime pas *ces* abricots, *ces* pêches sont meilleures. *Ce* cheval-*ci* est plus fort que celui-*là*. *Cette* maison-*là* est très-humide. *Cet* homme-*là* n'est pas très-complaisant. *Cette* prairie-*ci* rapportera plus que *ce* champ-*là*. *Ces* pommes-*ci* sont bonnes, mais *ces* poires-*là* sont encore meilleures. *Ce* jour-*là* nous étions à la chasse.

Exercise on the Demonstrative Adjectives.

That general is young¹. This tree² is very old. That man³ says⁴ the truth⁵. This sword⁶ is beautiful. That table is (quite new⁷). These books (belong to⁸) your father. These gloves⁹ (do not fit¹⁰). Those children are studious¹¹. Take¹² that apple¹³. Open¹⁴ that desk¹⁵, and put¹⁶ those papers (in it¹⁷). Have you seen¹⁸ those gentlemen¹⁹? These matches²⁰ are damp²¹. That field²², this meadow²³, and those trees are (to be sold²⁴). (Will you have²⁵) this (75) bonnet²⁶ or that one? (75). This pen is better²⁷ than that (75). These boys and girls (75) are very attentive²⁸.

¹ jeune ² arbre *m.* ³ homme *m.* (*h* mute) ⁴ dit ⁵ vérité *f.* ⁶ épée *f.* ⁷ toute neuve ⁸ appartiennent à ⁹ gant *pl.* ¹⁰ ne vont pas ¹¹ studieux ¹² Prenez ¹³ pomme *f.* ¹⁴ Ouvrez ¹⁵ pupitre *m.* ¹⁶ mettez ¹⁷ dedans ¹⁸ vu ¹⁹ messieurs ²⁰ allumette *pl.* ²¹ humide ²² champ *m.* ²³ prairie *f.* ²⁴ à vendre ²⁵ Voulez-vous ²⁶ chapeau *m.* ²⁷ meilleur *f.* ²⁸ attentif *m. pl.*

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

76 The *indefinite* adjectives refer to nouns spoken of in a general and indeterminate manner. They are—

aucun, pas un	<i>no, not any, not one</i>
autre	<i>other</i>
certain	<i>certain, some</i>
chaque	<i>each, every</i>
même	<i>same, very, very same, self</i>
nul	<i>no</i>
plusieurs	<i>several, many</i>
quel	<i>what, which</i>
quelconque	<i>whatever</i>
quelque	<i>some, a few, whatever</i>
tel	<i>such, like</i>
tout	<i>all, every, each, any</i>

Read and translate.

Aucun chemin de fleurs ne conduit à la gloire. Je (138) n'ai aucune inquiétude sur cette affaire. J'ai aperçu au salon un *certain* homme que je n'aime pas. A *certaines* époques de l'année le fleuve inonde la campagne. *Chaque* climat a ses oiseaux bienfaiteurs. Les souverains ont partout les *mêmes* devoirs à remplir. C'est la *même* femme que j'ai vue ce matin. Votre père est la bonté *même*. Il est venu *lui-même* me remercier. Je l'ai vu le jour *même* de son départ. *Nul* homme n'est heureux, *nulle* chose ne peut le rendre *tel*. Nos troupes ont livré *plusieurs* combats. Je ne sais *quel* auteur a dit cela. *Quelle* heure est-il? *Quelle* résolution extraordinaire! *Quels* hommes! Une ligne *quelconque* étant donnée. Connaissez-vous *quelque* personne ici? J'ai *quelques* sous dans ma poche. *Quelques* efforts que vous fassiez, vous ne

37	trente-sept	76	soixante-seize
38	trente-huit	77	soixante-dix-sept
39	trente-neuf	78	soixante-dix-huit
40	quarante	79	soixante-dix-neuf
41	quarante et un	80	quatre-vingts
42	quarante-deux	81	quatre-vingt-un
43	quarante-trois	82	quatre-vingt-deux
44	quarante-quatre	83	quatre-vingt-trois
45	quarante-cinq	84	quatre-vingt-quatre
46	quarante-six	85	quatre-vingt-cinq
47	quarante-sept	86	quatre-vingt-six
48	quarante-huit	87	quatre-vingt-sept
49	quarante-neuf	88	quatre-vingt-huit
50	cinquante	89	quatre-vingt-neuf
51	cinquante et un	90	quatre-vingt-dix
52	cinquante-deux	91	quatre-vingt-onze
53	cinquante-trois	92	quatre-vingt-douze
54	cinquante-quatre	93	quatre-vingt-treize
55	cinquante-cinq	94	quatre-vingt-quatorze
56	cinquante-six	95	quatre-vingt-quinze
57	cinquante-sept	96	quatre-vingt-seize
58	cinquante-huit	97	quatre-vingt-dix-sept
59	cinquante-neuf	98	quatre-vingt-dix-huit
60	soixante	99	quatre-vingt-dix-neuf
61	soixante et un	100	cent
62	soixante-deux	101	cent un, &c.
63	soixante-trois	200	deux cents
64	soixante-quatre	201	deux cent un, &c.
65	soixante-cinq	300	trois cents
66	soixante-six	400	quatre cents
67	soixante-sept	500	cinq cents
68	soixante-huit	600	six cents
69	soixante-neuf	700	sept cents
70	soixante-dix *	800	huit cents
71	soixante-onze	900	neuf cents
72	soixante-douze	1000	mille
73	soixante-treize	100,000	cent mille
74	soixante-quatorze	1,000,000	un million
75	soixante-quinze	2,000,000	deux millions

79 *Vingt* and *cent* are the only numeral adjectives of the cardinal kind that may take an *s* when multiplied by a number; as *quatre-vingts*; *deux cents*, &c. (See the Syntax, No. 329.)

80 *Mille* in expressing the date of the year is spelt *mil*; as *l'an mil huit cent douze*, the year 1812 (332).

81 The conj. *and*, used in English after the word *hundred*, is not expressed in French; as one hundred *and* twenty—*cent vingt*. Nor is

* Formerly, *septante* (70), *octante* (80), and *nonante* (90) were used instead of *soixante-dix*, *quatre-vingts*, and *quatre-vingt-dix*.

the word *one* generally expressed before *hundred* and *thousand*, as it is in English; as *one hundred and ten—cent dix*; *one thousand eight hundred and sixty years—mille huit cent soixante ans*.

82 ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1 ^{re} premier	1 st	18 ^e dix-huitième	18 th
2 ^d second	} 2 nd	19 ^e dix-neuvième	19 th
2 ^e deuxième		20 ^e vingtième	20 th
3 ^e troisième	3 rd	21 ^e vingt et unième	21 st
4 ^e quatrième	4 th	22 ^e vingt-deuxième	22 nd
5 ^e cinquième	5 th	30 ^e trentième	30 th
6 ^e sixième	6 th	40 ^e quarantième	40 th
7 ^e septième	7 th	50 ^e cinquantième	50 th
8 ^e huitième	8 th	60 ^e soixantième	60 th
9 ^e neuvième	9 th	70 ^e soixante-dixième	70 th
10 ^e dixième	10 th	80 ^e quatre-vingtième	80 th
11 ^e onzième	11 th	90 ^e quatre-vingt-dix-	90 th
12 ^e douzième	12 th	—	—
13 ^e treizième	13 th	100 ^e centième	100 th
14 ^e quatorzième	14 th	101 ^e cent-unième	101 st
15 ^e quinzième	15 th	102 ^e cent-deuxième	102 nd
16 ^e seizième	16 th	200 ^e deux-centième	200 th
17 ^e dix-septième	17 th	1000 ^e millième	1000 th

The *ordinal numbers* become adverbs by adding *ement* or *ment*; as *premierement*; *secondement* or *deuxièmement*; *troisièmement*, &c. (See No. :)

There are three other sorts of numbers, called *Fractional*, *Collective*, and *Proportional*.

83 Fractional.

demi	} <i>the half</i>	les deux tiers	<i>two thirds</i>
demie		les trois quarts	<i>three fourths</i>
moitié		un cinquième	<i>one fifth</i>
le tiers		un sixième	<i>one sixth</i>
le quart	<i>the third</i>	un septième, &c.	<i>one seventh</i>
	<i>the fourth</i>		

84 Collective.

une couple	<i>a couple</i>	une quarantaine	<i>about</i> 40
une douzaine	<i>a dozen</i>	une cinquantaine	" 50
une demi-douzaine	<i>half a dozen</i>	une soixantaine	" 60
une quinzaine	<i>about</i> 15	une centaine	" 100
une vingtaine	" 20	un millier	" 1000
une trentaine	" 30	des milliers	<i>thousands</i>

85 Proportional.

le double	<i>the double</i>
le triple	<i>the treble</i>
le quadruple	<i>the fourfold</i>
le quintuple	<i>the fivefold</i>
le centuple, &c.	<i>the hundredfold</i>

Read and translate.

(The numbers must be read and spell in French.)

Cet homme, qui gagne 3 schellings par jour, a 12 enfants, 7 garçons et 5 filles; l'aîné a 18 ans et le plus jeune a 6 mois. Le 21 juin le soleil se lève à 3 heures 44 minutes du matin, et se couche à 8 heures 18 minutes du soir. Il est déjà 6 heures moins un quart, et je dois partir à 9 heures et demie. Au 1^{er} avril 1859, l'armée française se composait de 568,000 hommes. La France est divisée en 89 départements, 373 arrondissements, 2,842 cantons, et 39,381 communes. L'armée a perdu 80 officiers et 900 hommes. J'ai besoin d'une demi-douzaine de crayons et d'une vingtaine de plumes.

Exercise on the Numeral Adjectives.

My cousin has five horses, eight dogs, and two carriages¹. Napoleon died² (on the³) Saturday, the fifth of May, one thousand eight hundred and twenty-one, at seven o'clock⁴ (in the⁵) morning. That bridge has seven arches⁶, and is⁷ six hundred feet long⁸, and eighty feet wide⁹. I want¹⁰ about fifty pounds to¹¹ buy a horse. I have paid¹² thirty-two francs and eighty centimes for forty pounds and a half of sugar.

¹ voiture pl. ² mourut ³ le ⁴ heure pl. ⁵ du ⁶ arche pl. ⁷ a ⁸ de longueur ⁹ de largeur ¹⁰ Il me faut ¹¹ pour ¹² payé.

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are words used instead of nouns to avoid repetition.

There are five sorts of pronouns—the *personal*, *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *relative*, and *indefinite*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

86 *Personal pronouns* are used instead of the names of persons and things. They are divided into *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*.

87 The *conjunctive* personal pronouns are those that are placed immediately before or immediately after the verb; as *JE lis*; *parles-TU*? *IL vient*; *chantez-VOUS*?

Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.

SUBJECT (112) OR Nominative case		OBJECT (113)	
		Direct (115)	Indirect (116)
je	I	me	me to me
tu*	thou	te*	to thee
il	he, it	le	him, it
elle	she, it	la	her, it
nous	we	nous	us
vous	you	vous	you
ils, elles	they	les	them
			leur to them

86 (*accusative or dative*) is used in reflective verbs for *me's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves, &c.*

87, *of or from it, them, that, &c.* (See the Syntax, p. 169.)

88, *to or at it, them, that; there, &c.* (See the Syntax, p. 169.)

88 The *conjunctive* pronoun, used as *subject*, is placed immediately *before* the verb in affirmative or negative sentences, and immediately *after* it in asking questions; as

je parle français
il ne parle pas anglais
avez-vous de l'argent?

I speak French
he does not speak English
have you any money?

89 The *conjunctive* pronoun, used as *object*, is placed before the governing verb, except in the imperative used affirmatively (**90**); as

votre père me connaît
je le vois tous les jours
mon frère vous attend
il nous écrira

your father knows me
I see him every day
my brother expects you
he will write to us

90 Conjunctive pronouns, used as objects, are placed *after* the verb, when the verb is in the imperative, used *affirmatively*; and then the pronouns *moi* and *toi*, which are disjunctive (**93**), are used instead of *me* and *te*; as

remerciez-la
envoyez-lui ma lettre
donnez-moi du vin

thank her
send him my letter
give me wine

91 * The expressions *tu, toi, te*, as well as *ton* (**70**), *le tien*, &c. (**95**), are frequently used in familiar language, as when parents address their children, and also children their parents, and generally when relatives and intimate friends converse or correspond with each other, or when speaking to inferior persons; as *Papa, veux-tu me donner une montre?—Je te la donnerai si tu es sage.—Dis-moi s'il y a un petit garçon, as-tu vu mon chien?*

92 But when the imperative is negative, the pronoun object *precedes* the verb; as

<i>ne la remerciez pas</i>	<i>do not thank her</i>
<i>ne lui envoyez pas ma lettre</i>	<i>do not send him my letter</i>
<i>ne me donnez pas de vin</i>	<i>do not give me wine</i>

93 The *disjunctive* personal pronouns are those that are separated from the verb by a preposition or a conjunction, or that stand alone; as *venez avec LUI; qui est là? MOI.*

Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

Subject and Object	{	<i>moi</i>	<i>I</i>	or	<i>me</i>
		<i>toi*</i>	<i>thou</i>	"	<i>thee</i>
		<i>lui</i>	<i>he, it</i>	"	<i>him, it</i>
		<i>elle</i>	<i>she, it</i>	"	<i>her, it</i>
		<i>nous</i>	<i>we</i>	"	<i>us</i>
		<i>vous</i>	<i>you</i>	"	<i>you</i>
		<i>eux, elles</i>	<i>they</i>		<i>them</i>

Disjunctive Pronouns used with *MÊME*.

<i>moi-même</i>	<i>myself</i>	<i>nous-mêmes</i>	<i>ourselves</i>
<i>toi-même</i>	<i>thyself</i>	<i>vous-même</i>	<i>yourself</i>
<i>lui-même</i>	<i>himself</i>	<i>vous-mêmes</i>	<i>yourselves</i>
<i>elle-même</i>	<i>herself</i>	<i>eux-mêmes</i>	<i>themselves</i>
<i>soi-même</i>	<i>one's self</i>	<i>elles-mêmes</i>	<i>themselves</i>

94 Disjunctive pronouns are generally used for the sake of emphasis or contrast; as

<i>qui a fait cela? lui</i>	<i>who did that? he</i>
<i>moi, je ne le crois pas</i>	<i>I do not believe it</i>
<i>il est parti avec eux</i>	<i>he is gone with them</i>
<i>elle est plus riche que toi</i>	<i>she is richer than thou</i>
<i>lui et moi nous marcherons</i>	<i>he and I will walk</i>

N.B.—For further rules on the Conjunctive and Disjunctive Pronouns, see the Syntax (334).

Read and translate.

Je connais cet homme. Tu étudies ta leçon. Il travaille avec application. Elle n'est pas jolie. Nous irons au spectacle. Avez-vous vu l'éclipse de soleil? Ils sont tous partis. Sont-elles arrivées? Je les ai vues hier. Nous vous montrerons le chemin. Vous lui direz que je lui écrirai demain. Il me donne beaucoup d'ouvrage. Rendez-moi l'argent que je vous ai prêté. Ne me trompez pas, car je le saurais. Je ne vous trompe pas. Si vous le voyez demain, parlez-lui de moi. Je lui en parlerai. Parlez-vous de

la guerre? Oui, nous en parlons. Il vous propose cet arrangement, y consentez-vous? Je n'y consentirai jamais. Nous irons avec lui. Mon frère est plus fort que moi, mais je suis plus savant que lui. Moi je suis Français, mais lui est Italien. Je lui ai écrit moi-même. Allez-y vous-même.⁴

Exercise on the Personal Pronouns.

CONJUNCTIVE (87).—I read¹ every day². Thou speakest³ too fast⁴. He sings⁵ a song⁶. She plays⁷ the⁸ piano. We walk⁹ slowly. You see¹⁰ the sea. They work¹¹ ten hours. Are they pleased¹²? They (f.) will come¹³ this evening¹⁴. Where is he? Give¹⁵ him his hat. She will write¹⁶ to you. He spoke¹⁷ to them. Lend¹⁸ us that book. I like¹⁹ it. He saw²⁰ you. We eat²¹ them. I consent²² to it. We speak of it.

DISJUNCTIVE (93).—(It is not²³) I; it is he. You are more learned²⁴ than they. He is taller than I. Who knocks²⁵ at the door? (It is²⁶) he. (Will you²⁷) sing with me? Is this book for me or for her? I alone²⁸ could²⁹ do it. Go³⁰ with them. He wrote³¹ the letter himself. Speak to³² him and not³³ to her. We make³⁴ them ourselves. I have heard³⁵ him myself. His wife is German, but he is a Frenchman³⁶.

¹ lis ² tous les jours ³ parles ⁴ vite ⁵ chante ⁶ romance f. ⁷ joue ⁸ du ⁹ marchons ¹⁰ voyez ¹¹ travaillent ¹² content pl. ¹³ viendront ¹⁴ soir m. ¹⁵ Donnez ¹⁶ écrira ¹⁷ parla ¹⁸ Prêtez ¹⁹ aime ²⁰ vit ²¹ mangeons ²² consens ²³ Ce n'est pas ²⁴ savant ²⁵ frappe ²⁶ C'est ²⁷ Voulez-vous ²⁸ seul ²⁹ ai pu ³⁰ Allez ³¹ écrivit ³² Parlez à ³³ et non pas ³⁴ faisons ³⁵ entendu ³⁶ Français

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

95 Possessive pronouns are used instead of nouns already mentioned, and agree in gender and number with those nouns.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS ARE:—

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	<i>mine</i>
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	<i>thine</i>
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	<i>his, hers, its</i>
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres	les nôtres	<i>ours</i>
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres	les vôtres	<i>yours</i>
le leur	la leur	les leurs	les leurs	<i>theirs</i>

The article *le, la, les*, which precedes these pronouns, when accompanied by *de* or *à*, becomes *du, de la, des*, and *au, à la, aux* (25); as

du mien	de la mienne	} <i>of mine, {</i>
des miens	des miennes	
au mien	à la mienne	} <i>to mine, &c.</i>
aux miens	aux miennes	

Read and translate.

Ce n'est pas votre avis, mais c'est *le mien*. Il a mangé sa portion et *la mienne*. Ce n'est pas mon chapeau, c'est *le tien*. Vos affaires sont *les miennes*. J'ai aperçu sa sœur et *la tienne*. Voici votre lit et voilà *le sien*. Ma maison et *la sienne* sont neuves. Montrez-lui vos bijoux, elle vous montrera *les siens*. Votre armée est plus forte que *la nôtre*. Votre pays est plus peuplé que *le nôtre*. Vous avez vos raisons, et nous *les nôtres*. Nos bœufs sont blancs, *les vôtres* sont noirs. Notre musique est bien meilleure que *la leur*. Votre théâtre est-il plus grand que *le leur*? Mes amis sont aussi *les leurs*. Je préfère son cheval *au tien*. Parlez-vous de son père ou *du mien*? Je préfère ma maison à *la sienne*.

Exercise on the Possessive Pronouns.

Your book¹ and mine. His pen² and mine. My gun³ and thine. Their horses⁴ and ours. Our house⁵ and theirs. My hat⁶ and his. Her mother is older⁷ than⁸ yours. Your sister is younger⁹ than hers. His carriage¹⁰ is lighter¹¹ than thine. My father, thine, and hers, are good friends. He spoke¹² to your cousin¹³ and to mine. The conduct¹⁴ of your brother, of his, and of mine, is praiseworthy¹⁵. My friends and his are gone¹⁶. Your daughters¹⁷ and mine are here. His dogs¹⁸ are stronger¹⁹ than yours. My relations²⁰ and theirs are friends. Have you written²¹ to your father and to mine? I have spoken²² to his mother and to yours. We have spoken of your house and of his.²³

¹ livre *m.* ² plume *f.* ³ fusil *m.* ⁴ cheval *pl.* ⁵ maison *f.* ⁶ chapeau *m.* ⁷ vieux ⁸ que ⁹ jeune ¹⁰ voiture *f.* ¹¹ léger ¹² parla ¹³ cousine *f.* ¹⁴ conduite *f.* ¹⁵ louable ¹⁶ parti *pl.* ¹⁷ fille *pl.* ¹⁸ chien *m. pl.* ¹⁹ fort *pl.* ²⁰ parents ²¹ écrit ²² parlé.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

96 *Demonstrative* pronouns serve to denote and point out the persons or things which they represent. They are the following:—

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
ce		•		<i>it, that</i>
ceci				<i>this</i>
cela (or ça , which is familiar)				<i>that</i>
celui	celle	ceux	celles	<i>that, those</i>
celui-ci	celle-ci	ceux-ci	celles-ci	<i>this, these</i>
celui-là	celle-là	ceux-là	celles-là	<i>that, those</i>

97 *Ce*, *it* or *that*, before or after the verb *être*, to be, is used

for the *person* or the *thing* we wish to designate or point out; it is often followed by *qui, que, or dont*; as

<i>ce n'est pas moi</i>	<i>it is not I</i>
<i>qui est-ce?</i>	<i>who is it?</i>
<i>ce n'est pas vrai</i>	<i>it is not true</i>
<i>ce que je vois</i>	<i>what I see</i>
<i>ce qui me plaît</i>	<i>what pleases me</i>
<i>ce dont vous parlez</i>	<i>that of which you speak</i>

98 CECI *this*, **CELA** (or **ÇA**) *that*, refer to an object under stood; as

<i>ceci est bon</i>	<i>this is good</i>	<i>donnez-moi ceci</i>	<i>give me this</i>
<i>cela est mauvais</i>	<i>that is bad</i>	<i>prenez cela</i>	<i>take that</i>

99 CELUI, CELLE, *that*, and **CEUX, CELLES**, *those*, are always followed by *de*, or by one of the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, à qui, &c.*; as

<i>mon fils et celui de mon ami</i>	<i>my son and that of my friend</i>
<i>ma plume et celle de mon frère</i>	<i>my pen and that of my brother</i>
<i>mes gants et ceux de ma sœur</i>	<i>my gloves and those of my sister</i>
<i>celui qui est devant vous</i>	<i>that which is before you</i>
<i>ceux que j'ai achetés</i>	<i>those which I bought</i>

100 CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES, before *qui, que, dont*, frequently signify *he or him, she or her, they or them*; as

<i>celui qui parle</i>	<i>he who speaks</i>
<i>celle que je vois</i>	<i>she whom I see</i>
<i>ceux qui chantent</i>	<i>they who sing</i>

101 OBSERVE.—The particles *ci* and *là* (**75**) are often placed after *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, to indicate more particularly persons and things, or to denote the nearest or farthest in point of place or time; as

<i>prenez celui-ci ou celui-là</i>	<i>take this or that</i>
<i>ceux-ci sont bons</i>	<i>these are good</i>
<i>ceux-là sont mauvais</i>	<i>those are bad</i>
<i>je préfère celle-là à celle-ci</i>	<i>I prefer that one to this</i>

102 NOTE.—*This is* or *these are* may be rendered in French by *voici*, and *that is* or *those are* by *voilà*; as

<i>this is a fine horse</i>	<i>voici un beau cheval</i>
<i>that is a pretty carriage</i>	<i>voilà une belle voiture</i>
<i>this is what I heard</i>	<i>voici ce que j'ai appris</i>

Read and translate.

Est-ce vous qui avez fait *cela* ? Non, *ce* n'est pas moi, c'est lui. Je sais *ce* qui le tourmente. Je vous dirai *ce* que j'aurai vu, et vous me direz *ce* que vous en pensez. *Ceci* est bien fait, mais *cela* est détestable. *Ce* chien n'est pas *celui* que j'ai acheté. Donnez-moi *celle* qui est dans la chambre. Votre fusil est très-bon, mais *celui* de Charles est meilleur. *Celui* dont je parle est très-cher. La meilleure leçon est *celle* des exemples. De tous ces tableaux *celui-là* est le plus remarquable. Voici deux jolies robes, *laquelle* voulez-vous ; *celle-ci* ou *celle-là* ? *Ceux-ci* aiment le travail, *ceux-là* les plaisirs. Voici une belle pendule ; où l'avez-vous achetée ? J'ai acheté *celle-ci* à Paris, et *celle-là* à Londres. *Voilà* ce que mon chien a trouvé. *Voici* ce que je pense. Ces chevaux-ci sont moins forts que *ceux-là*. De ces deux montres, *voici celle* qui est pour votre fils. *Celui* à qui j'ai parlé, est un général distingué.

Exercise on the Demonstrative Pronouns.

It is my advice¹. It was² a great misfortune³ for them⁴. It (will be⁵) a pleasure (to me⁶). This is better⁷ than that. Why⁸ have you done⁹ that ? That (must be¹⁰) very beautiful. The climate¹¹ of Italy¹² is much¹³ warmer¹⁴ than that of England¹⁵. My watch¹⁶ and that of my sister. These horses (belong to me¹⁷) ; these come¹⁸ from Spain¹⁹, those from Germany²⁰. Of those two castles²¹, this belongs to my father, and that to my uncle. What you say²² is reasonable. Which of these two swords²³ (will you have²⁴) ; this or that ? That which is on²⁵ the table. He who is idle is not liked by²⁶ his masters. They who work²⁷ well are rewarded²⁸. This is what I like²⁹. That is what I have found³⁰ on the road. Of these three horses, this is the one which I prefer³¹.

¹ avis *m.* ² fut ³ malheur *m.* ⁴ pour eux ⁵ sera ⁶ pour moi ⁷ mieux ⁸ Pourquoi ⁹ fait ¹⁰ doit être ¹¹ climat *m.* ¹² d'Italie ¹³ beaucoup ¹⁴ chaud ¹⁵ d'Angleterre ¹⁶ montre *f.* ¹⁷ m'appartiennent ¹⁸ viennent ¹⁹ d'Espagne ²⁰ d'Allemagne ²¹ château *m.* ²² vous dites ²³ épées *f.* ²⁴ voulez-vous ²⁵ sur ²⁶ de ²⁷ travaillent ²⁸ récompensés ²⁹ aime ³⁰ trouvé ³¹ préfère.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

103 The *relative* pronoun relates to a substantive or pronoun which precedes, and which is called its *antecedent*. They are the following :—

qui (nom.)
de qui (speaking of persons only)
dont (of persons and things)
à qui (of persons only)
que (acc.)
quoi
où
lequel, laquelle, &c.

who, which, that
whose, of or from whom
of or from whom or which
to whom
whom, which, that
what
where, in which
who, whom, which

104 *Qui*, *que*, and *dont* are used for both genders and numbers of all sorts of objects ; as

l'homme <i>qui</i> parle	<i>the man who speaks</i>
la lettre <i>qui</i> est arrivée	<i>the letter which has arrived</i>
l'enfant <i>que</i> je vois	<i>the child whom I see</i>
les lois <i>que</i> nous observons	<i>the laws which we observe</i>
l'officier <i>dont</i> vous parlez	<i>the officer of whom you speak</i>
la maison <i>dont</i> je parle	<i>the house of which I speak</i>
les enfants <i>qui</i> obéissent	<i>the children who obey</i>

105 *Lequel* applies to persons and things. It changes according to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates, and is thus declined :—

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles
duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles
auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles

106 *Qui* after a preposition, as *de qui*, *à qui*, *pour qui*, applies to persons only ; *duquel*, *auquel*, &c., must alone be used when applied to things ; as

l'homme <i>à qui</i> (or <i>auquel</i>) j'ai parlé	<i>the man to whom I have spoken</i>
la lettre <i>à laquelle</i> (not <i>à qui</i>) j'ai répondu	<i>the letter to which I have replied</i>
la dame <i>avec qui</i> (or <i>avec laquelle</i>) vous êtes venu	<i>the lady with whom you came</i>
la plume <i>avec laquelle</i> (not <i>avec qui</i>) j'écris	<i>the pen with which I write</i>

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

107 The *interrogative* pronouns are the following :—

qui ? (nom.) or qui est-ce qui ?	<i>who ?</i>	de qui ? à qui ? &c.
qui (acc.) or qui est-ce que ?	<i>whom ?</i>	
que or qu'est-ce que ?	<i>what ?</i>	
de quoi ? à quoi ?	<i>of what ? to what ?</i>	
lequel ? m. s., laquelle ? f. s.	} <i>which ?</i>	
lesquels ? m. pl., lesquelles ? f. pl.		
duquel ? of which ? &c., auquel ? to which ? &c.		
quel ? m., quelle ? f., &c.,	<i>which ? or what ?</i>	

De qui, *à qui*, as interrogative pronouns, refer to persons only, *que*, *quoi*, *de quoi*, *à quoi*, &c., refer to things. and *lequel*, *duquel*, *auquel*, *quel*, &c., refer to both persons and things.

EXAMPLES.

<i>qui</i> (or <i>qui est-ce qui</i>) l'a fait ?	who did it ?
<i>qui</i> voyez-vous ? (or <i>qui est-ce que</i> vous voyez ?)	whom do you see ?
<i>de qui</i> parle-t-il ?	of whom does he speak ?
<i>que</i> dites-vous ? (or <i>qu'est-ce que</i> vous dites ?)	what do you say ?
<i>de quoi</i> parlez-vous ?	what do you speak of ?
<i>lequel</i> préférez-vous ?	which do you prefer ?
<i>quel</i> auteur lisez-vous ?	what author do you read ?

108 *A qui*, in a question formed with *être*, in the sense of *to belong*, means *whose* ; as

<i>à qui</i> est ce livre ?	whose book is this ?
<i>à qui</i> sont ces gants ?	whose gloves are these ?

109 Relative pronouns must always be expressed in French, though omitted in English ; as

<i>the horse I bought</i>	<i>le cheval que j'ai acheté</i>
<i>the book you are reading</i>	<i>le livre que vous lisez</i>

Read and translate.

C'est le soleil *qui* nous éclaire, et *qui* mûrit les fruits de la terre. C'est le facteur *qui* m'a apporté cette nouvelle. Connaissez-vous les personnes *qui* étaient dans la loge de la reine ? Non, *qui* sont-elles ? Ce château *que* vous voyez sur la montagne est très-ancien. La place *dont* vous me parliez est déjà prise. *A qui* avez-vous donné ce beau bouquet ? *A quoi* pensez-vous de partir si tard ? Je ne sais *à laquelle* de ces deux couleurs donner la préférence. *Qui est-ce qui* a inventé l'imprimerie ? *De qui* attendez-vous une lettre ? *Qui* attendez-vous ce soir ? *Que* faites-vous là ? *Avec quoi* avez-vous ouvert la porte de ma chambre ? *Qu'est-ce qui* vous empêche de venir demain ? *Pour qui* traduisez-vous cet ouvrage ? *A qui* appartient-il ?

Exercise on the Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

RELATIVE PRO. (103).—The gentleman¹ who (is speaking²) is my friend. The ladies³ whom we expect⁴ are very amiable⁵. The lion which roars⁶ in the mountain. The wolf which howls⁷ in the forest. The roses which are in your garden are beautiful. The horse of which I speak⁸ is lame⁹. The man whose arm¹⁰ has been cut off¹¹.

¹ monsieur ² parle ³ dame pl. ⁴ attendons ⁵ aimable pl. ⁶ rugit ⁷ hurle ⁸ parle
⁹ boiteux ¹⁰ bras m. ¹¹ coupé

The person to whom I give lessons is absent. The persons with whom I have spent¹² the evening¹³. The house to which I give the preference. The errors into which he (has fallen¹⁴). The town in which he lives¹⁵ is very small¹⁶. The dictionary with which I translate¹⁷ my exercise¹⁸ is very good.

INTERROGATIVE PRO. (107).—Which of these two books (will you have¹⁹)? What (will they say²⁰)? Who (will come²¹) with me? In what have I offended²² you? Whom (do you call²³)? What (do they speak²⁴) of? Who makes that noise? What have you done? What is it? Which books will you buy²⁵? What do you think²⁶ of him? To whom will you send²⁷ this parcel? Who has written this letter? From²⁸ whom have you received that present? The ring²⁹ (109) you (gave me³⁰) is broken³¹. The books I bought³² yesterday are interesting³³.

¹² passé ¹³ soirée ¹⁴ est tombé ¹⁵ demeure ¹⁶ petit ¹⁷ je traduis ¹⁸ thème *m.*
¹⁹ voulez-vous ? ²⁰ diront-ils ²¹ viendra ²² offensé ²³ appelez-vous ²⁴ parlent-ils
²⁵ achetez-vous ? ²⁶ pensez-vous ²⁷ enverrez-vous ? ²⁸ De ²⁹ bague *f.* ³⁰ m'avez
 donné *f.* ³¹ cassé *f.* ³² j'ai acheté *pl.* ³³ intéressant.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

110 The *indefinite* pronouns are words which denote persons and things in a vague and general manner; as

aucun	<i>any, (with ne) none</i>
autrui	<i>others, other people</i>
chacun	<i>every one, each</i>
l'un et l'autre	<i>both</i>
l'un l'autre	<i>one another, each other</i>
l'un ou l'autre	<i>either</i>
ni l'un ni l'autre	<i>neither</i>
nul	<i>no one, nobody</i>
on	<i>one, people, they, we</i>
personne	<i>nobody, (interrog.) anybody</i>
plusieurs	<i>several, many</i>
quelqu'un	<i>somebody, some one</i>
quiconque	<i>whoever, any one who</i>
tout	<i>everything, all</i>

Read and translate.

Ces chandeliers coûtent 20 francs *chacun*. *Chacun* prend son plaisir où il le trouve. Avez-vous vu mes chiens? Non, je n'en ai vu *aucun*. *On* dit que Sébastopol est pris. *On* croit que nous aurons la guerre. Il n'y a *personne* dans la chambre. *Personne* a-t-il jamais été content de son sort? *Quiconque* n'observera pas cette loi sera puni. *Quelqu'un* a-t-il jamais douté sérieusement de l'existence de Dieu? Ne faites pas à *autrui* ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit. *Plusieurs* pensent que la lune est habitée. *Tout* a péri au milieu des flammes. *Nul* n'est exempt

d'erreur. Ces deux hommes se craignent l'un l'autre. Ils sont morts l'un et l'autre. Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est venu. Ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont réussi.

Exercise on the Indefinite Pronouns.

They say¹ that² he is ill³. People think⁴ he is dead⁵. Whoever is honest is always esteemed⁶. Some one⁷ (told me⁸) that he was gone⁹. Every one (must do¹⁰) his duty¹¹. Each of them¹² shall have¹³ a prize. Do good to¹⁴ others. Never speak ill¹⁵ of others. Nobody is more amiable than she is. No one is satisfied with¹⁶ his fortune. I know¹⁷ nobody so learned¹⁸ (as he is¹⁹). Those two great generals esteemed²⁰ each other. Both will come²¹ to-morrow. Neither (has done it²²). Somebody knocks at the door. Either will have a prize. All was lost²³ in one day. (Tell me²⁴) something of this man. He knows everything.

¹ dit ² que ³ malade ⁴ pense ⁵ mort ⁶ estimé ⁷ m'a dit ⁸ parti ⁹ doit faire
¹⁰ devoir m. ¹¹ d'eux ¹² aura ¹³ Faites du bien à ¹⁴ Ne médisez jamais ¹⁵ content
de ¹⁶ connais ¹⁷ si savant ¹⁸ que lui ¹⁹ s'estimaient ²⁰ viendront ²¹ ne l'a fait
²² perdu ²³ Dites-moi.

VERBS.

111 A *verb* is a word which expresses *existence*, *possession*, or *action*; as

je suis
I am

j'ai
I have

je lis
I read

112 The **Subject** or *Nominative* of a verb is the word causing the action of that verb, or experiencing the effect caused by the action of that verb; as *JE parle* I speak; *IL est aimé* he is loved.

113 The **Object** or *Government* (in French *régime* or *complément*) is the word that completes the idea suggested by some other words; as *j'aime MA MÈRE*, I love my mother; *je vous vois*, I see you.

114 There are two sorts of objects or governments, — the *direct* and *indirect*.

115 The **Direct object** (or *accusative case*) is that word which completes the signification of the verb, without the assistance of any other word; as *j'écris UNE LETTRE*, I write a letter; *elle vous attend*, she expects you.

116 The **Indirect object** (in English the *oblique case*) is

any word that completes the signification of the verb by the help of a preposition (expressed or understood); as

<i>écrivez à VOTRE SŒUR</i>	write to your sister
<i>je LUI parlerai</i>	I shall speak to him
<i>pensez-vous à MOI ?</i>	do you think of me ?

117 The verb *être*, as it expresses existence only, is called a verb *substantive*; all other verbs, as they contain an attribute or quality, are called *attributif* or *adjective*; as *je lis*, formed of *je suis lisant*.

There are five sorts of verbs *adjective* :—

The Active	<i>Les Verbes Actifs</i>
The Passive	<i>Les Verbes Passifs</i>
The Neuter	<i>Les Verbes Neutres</i>
The Reflective	<i>Les Verbes Réfléchis</i>
The Impersonal	<i>Les Verbes Impersonnels</i>

118 The *Active* or *Transitive verb* expresses an action done by the subject or nominative, and has a direct object or government; as

<i>j'étudie l'histoire</i>	<i>I study history</i>
<i>il aime la gloire</i>	<i>he loves glory</i>

119 The *Passive verb* expresses an action received or suffered by the subject, and performed by another; as

<i>mon père est aimé d'eux</i>	<i>my father is loved by them</i>
<i>son fils est instruit par lui</i>	<i>his son is taught by him</i>

120 The *Neuter* or *Intransitive verb* expresses either a state, as *il dort* *he sleeps*; or an action confined to the subject, as *je marche* *I walk*; or an action passing to an object by the help of a preposition; as

<i>je vais en Italie</i>	<i>I am going to Italy</i>
<i>il travaille avec courage</i>	<i>he works with courage</i>

NOTE.—A verb is *active* when *quelqu'un* or *quelque chose*, added to it, makes sense; as *j'estime quelqu'un*, *je chante quelque chose*. It is *neuter* when it does not admit of those words after it: thus we cannot say *plaire quelqu'un*, *languir quelque chose*.

121 The *Reflective* or *Pronominal verb* is that which is conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, thus:—

<i>je me</i>	<i>nous nous</i>
<i>tu te</i>	<i>vous vous</i>
<i>il or elle se</i>	<i>ils or elles se</i>

It is sometimes rendered in English by a *neuter* or a *passive* verb :—

je m'habille	<i>I dress myself</i>
vous vous lavez	<i>you wash yourself</i>
il se repent	<i>he repents</i>
ce drap se vend cher	<i>that cloth is sold dear</i>

122 The *Impersonal verb* is that which is used in the third person singular only ; as

il faut	<i>it is necessary</i>
il arrive	<i>it happens</i>
il pleut	<i>it rains</i>
il neige	<i>it snows</i>

Verbs are necessarily subject to *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers* and *persons*.

MOODS.

123 Moods are the different ways of using a verb. There are five moods, viz. : the *Infinitive*, the *Indicative*, the *Conditional*, the *Imperative*, and the *Subjunctive*.

(1) The *Infinitive* expresses action or state in an indefinite manner, without any relation to number or person ; as

parler	<i>to speak</i>
donner	<i>to give</i>
avoir fini	<i>to have finished</i>

(2) The *Indicative* affirms in a direct and positive manner ; as

j'écris	<i>I write</i>
nous lisons	<i>we will read</i>

(3) The *Conditional* affirms with a condition ; as

je chanterais si je pouvais	<i>I would sing if I could</i>
viendrait-il s'il était invité ?	<i>would he come if he were invited ?</i>

(4) The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, desires, or requests ; as

répondez-moi	<i>answer me</i>
aimez Dieu	<i>love God</i>
restons ici	<i>let us stay here</i>

(5) The *Subjunctive* expresses affirmation in a subordinate

manner, and dependent on another verb, to which it is united by a conjunction; as

je doute qu'il vienne	<i>I doubt whether he will come</i>
il faut que j'écrive	<i>I must write</i>
croyez-vous qu'il lise?	<i>do you think that he reads?</i>

TENSES.

124 The Tenses refer to the time. There are three principal tenses, viz.

The present	<i>Le présent</i>
The past or preterit	<i>Le passé ou préterit</i>
The future	<i>Le futur</i>

125 The tenses are divided into *Simple* and *Compound*. The *Simple tenses* are expressed by one word; as

je parle	<i>I speak</i>
il lisait	<i>he was reading</i>
nous écrirons	<i>we will write</i>

126 The *Compound tenses* are formed with the verbs *avoir* to have, and *être* to be (then called *auxiliary*), and the past participle of any other; as

j'ai parlé	<i>I have spoken</i>
il avait lu	<i>he had read</i>
nous aurons écrit	<i>we shall have written</i>

NOTE.—Besides the above tenses, there are others called *idiomatic tenses*, which are formed with the verbs *aller*, *venir*, and *devoir* (205).

NUMBERS.

127 There are two numbers in verbs—the *singular*, which speaks of one, as *l'enfant dort* the child sleeps, and the *plural*, which speaks of more than one, as *les enfants dorment* the children sleep.

PERSONS.

128 There are three persons in each number: the *first* is the person who speaks; the *second* is the person spoken to; the *third* is the person spoken of; as

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1 st	je lis	nous lisons
2 nd	tu lis	vous lisez
3 rd	il lit	ils lisent

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

To write or to repeat a verb with all its changes of *moods, tenses, numbers, and persons*, is to *conjugate* it.

129 There are in French four conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the present of the Infinitive:—

The 1st ends in	er,	as	aimer	to love
" 2nd "	ir,	"	finir	to finish
" 3rd "	oir,	"	recevoir	to receive
" 4th "	re,	"	rendre	to render

130 French verbs are formed of two distinct parts: the *root*, which is unchangeable, and the *termination*, which is changeable; as, chant-*er*, je chant-*e*, chant-*ons*, chant-*ez*.

Verbs are either *regular*, *irregular*, or *defective*.

131 A verb is *regular* when it is conjugated in all its tenses and persons like one of the four conjugations.

132 It is *irregular* when it deviates from the rules by which regular verbs are conjugated.

133 It is *defective* when it wants some mood, tense, or person.

The two auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être*, helping to conjugate all other verbs in their compound tenses, should be learnt first.

**134 Auxiliary verb AVOIR, to have.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.—Avoir, *to have* PAST.—Avoir eu, *to have had*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—Ayant, *having* PAST.—Eu (eue, f.), *had*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

PAST INDEFINITE

J'ai, *I have*

J'ai eu, *I have had*

Tu as, *thou hast*

Tu as eu, *thou hast had*

Il a, *he has*

Il a eu, *he has had*

Nous avons, *we have*

Nous avons eu, *we have had*

Vous avez, *you have*

Vous avez eu, *you have had*

Ils ont, *they have*

Ils ont eu, *they have had*

Simple Tenses.**IMPERFECT.**

J'avais, *I had*
 Tu avais, *thou hadst*
 Il avait, *he had*
 Nous avions, *we had*
 Vous aviez, *you had*
 Ils avaient, *they had*

PAST DEFINITE.

J'eus, *I had*
 Tu eus, *thou hadst*
 Il eut, *he had*
 Nous eûmes, *we had*
 Vous eûtes, *you had*
 Ils eurent, *they had*

FUTURE.

J'aurai, *I shall have*
 Tu auras, *thou wilt have*
 Il aura, *he will have*
 Nous aurons, *we shall have*
 Vous aurez, *you will have*
 Ils auront, *they will have*

Compound Tenses.**PLUPERFECT.**

J'avais eu, *I had had*
 Tu avais eu, *thou hadst had*
 Il avait eu, *he had had*
 Nous avions eu, *we had had*
 Vous aviez eu, *you had had*
 Ils avaient eu, *they had had*

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus eu, *I had had*
 Tu eus eu, *thou hadst had*
 Il eut eu, *he had had*
 Nous eûmes eu, *we had had*
 Vous eûtes eu, *you had had*
 Ils eurent eu, *they had had*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai eu, *I shall have had*
 Tu auras eu, *thou wilt have had*
 Il aura eu, *he will have had*
 Nous aurons eu, *we shall have had*
 Vous aurez eu, *you will have had*
 Ils auront eu, *they will have had*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.**PRESENT.**

J'aurais, *I should have*
 Tu aurais, *thou wouldst have*
 Il aurait, *he would have*
 Nous aurions, *we should have*
 Vous auriez, *you would have*
 Ils auraient, *they would have*

PAST.

J'aurais eu, *I should*
 Tu aurais eu, *thou wouldst*
 Il aurait eu, *he would*
 Nous aurions eu, *we should*
 Vous auriez eu, *you would*
 Ils auraient eu, *they would*

}
have had

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aie, *have (thou)*
 Qu'il aie, *let him have*

Ayons, *let us have*
 Ayez, *have (ye)*
 Qu'ils aient, *let them have*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Que j'aie, *that I may have*
 Que tu aies, *that thou mayst have*
 Qu'il aie, *that he may have*
 Que nous ayons, *that we may have*
 Que vous ayez, *that you may have*
 Qu'ils aient, *that they may have*

Que j'aie eu, *that I may*
 Que tu aies eu, *that thou mayst*
 Qu'il aie eu, *that he may*
 Que nous ayons eu, *that we may*
 Que vous ayez eu, *that you may*
 Qu'ils aient eu, *that they may*

}
have had

IMPERFECT.

Que j'cusse, *that I*
 Que tu eusses, *that thou*
 Qu'il eût, *that he*
 Que nous eussions, *that we*
 Que vous eussiez, *that you*
 Qu'ils eussent, *that they*

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse eu, *that I might*
 Que tu eusses eu, *that thou mightst*
 Qu'il eût eu, *that he might*
 Que nous eussions eu, *that we might*
 Que vous eussiez eu, *that you might*
 Qu'ils eussent eu, *that they might*

} *have had*

NOTE.—*Avoir* to have, besides being an auxiliary verb, is also frequently used in the active voice; as *j'ai un ami*, I have a friend.

Read and translate.

J'ai un grand jardin. Tu *as* une tache sur ton habit. Elle *a* des aiguilles et du fil. Nous *avons* des nouvelles de mon frère. Vous *avez* un beau chien. Vos sœurs *ont* de jolies robes. *J'arnis* deux livres et six schellings dans ma bourse. Il *avait* beaucoup d'amis. Nous *avons* 20 mille hommes, et ils en *avaient* 30 mille. Demain vous *aurez* sa réponse, et *j'aurai* le temps d'écrire ma lettre. Ma mère vous *aurait* invité si elle n'*avait* pas été indisposée. Nous *eûmes* beaucoup de pluie pendant notre voyage. Si *j'étais* plus riche, *j'aurais* une jolie maison bien meublée. Le général *eut* deux chevaux tués sous lui. Nous *aurons* un beau concert jeudi prochain, et *j'aurai* deux places à vous offrir. Mon fils *a eu* deux prix cette année; mais il en *aurait eu* davantage s'il avait bien travaillé.

Exercise on the Verb AVOIR.

Indicative Present. I have a gold¹ watch. Thou hast a new hat². He has French³ boots (28). She has a golden chain⁴. My friend has paper and ink. We have two horses⁵. You have a fine dog⁶. They have some pens⁷.

Imperfect. I had a good master⁸. Thou hadst twelve shirts⁹. She had a good piano. We had three rooms. You had a blue carriage¹⁰. They had good (29) friends¹¹. Our neighbours had a very good cook. They had a beautiful house.

Past definite. I had a large garden. Thou hadst six handkerchiefs¹². He had a new gun¹³. My cousin (f.) had red ribbons. We had five servants¹⁴. You had three cows¹⁵. They had ten young lambs¹⁶. His father and mother had good (29) servants.

Future. I shall have a large bookcase¹⁷. Thou wilt have a prize¹⁸. My sister will have a new gown¹⁹. We shall have four musicians²⁰. You will have nine francs. The children will have a good dinner.

Past indefinite. I have had a good share²¹. Thou hast had two fine pictures²². He has had copies²³. We have had copy books²⁴. You have had wafers²⁵. They have had an interview²⁶.

¹ d'or ² chapeau m ³ français ⁴ chaîne f. ⁵ cheval pl. ⁶ chien m. ⁷ plume pl.
⁸ maître m. ⁹ chemise pl. ¹⁰ voiture f. ¹¹ ami m. pl. ¹² mouchoir pl. ¹³ fusil m.
¹⁴ domestique pl. ¹⁵ vache pl. ¹⁶ agneau pl. ¹⁷ bibliothèque f. ¹⁸ prix m. ¹⁹ robe f.
²⁰ musicien pl. ²¹ part f. ²² tableau pl. ²³ modèle pl. ²⁴ cahier pl. ²⁵ pain à cacheter
²⁶ entrevue f.

Pluperfect. I had had pencils²⁷. Thou hadst had a penknife²⁸. She had had some ripe²⁹ apples. My father had had a conversation with him. We had had (a great many³⁰) pears. You had had the fever³¹. They had had a dozen (of) glasses³².

Past anterior. I had had great misfortunes³³. Thou hadst had courage. He had had stockings³⁴. We had had great success³⁵. You had had a long visit³⁶. Henry and Charles had had four prizes.

Future anterior. I shall have had pretty flowers. Thou wilt have had a letter. Your sister will have had a fine nosegay³⁷. We shall have had some shoes³⁸. You will have had presents. They will have had some fruits.

Conditional present. I would have an answer³⁹. Thou wouldst have the prize. Our gardener would have flowers. She would have much trouble⁴⁰. We should have more⁴¹ profit. You would have a golden pin⁴². They would have a carpet⁴³.

Conditional past. I should have had my gloves⁴⁴. Thou wouldst have had a white waistcoat⁴⁵. She would have had much pleasure⁴⁶. We would have had some music⁴⁷. You would have had a concert. They would have had company⁴⁸. The soldiers would have had shoes. These children would have had a good dinner.

Imperative. Have (thou) patience. Let us have (pity on⁴⁹) him. Have (ye) more courage. Let us have a pretty carriage.⁵⁰

²⁷ crayon *pl.* ²⁸ canif *m.* ²⁹ mûr ³⁰ beaucoup de ³¹ fièvre *f.* ³² verre *pl.* ³³ malheur *pl.* ³⁴ bas ³⁵ succès *m.* ³⁶ visite *f.* ³⁷ bouquet *m.* ³⁸ soulier *pl.* ³⁹ réponse *f.* ⁴⁰ peine ⁴¹ plus de ⁴² épingle *f.* ⁴³ tapis *m.* ⁴⁴ gants ⁴⁵ gilet *m.* ⁴⁶ plaisir ⁴⁷ musique *f.* ⁴⁸ compagnie *f.* ⁴⁹ pitié de ⁵⁰ voiture *f.*

N.B.—For exercises on the Subjunctive mood, see Regular Verbs.

135 Auxiliary verb ÊTRE, to be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.—Être, *to be*

PAST.—Avoir été, *to have been*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—Étant, *being*

PAST.—Été (unchangeable), *been*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Je suis, *I am*

Tu es, *thou art*

Il est, *he is*

Nous sommes, *we are*

Vous êtes, *you are*

Ils sont, *they are*

Compound Tenses.

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'ai été, *I have been*

Tu as été, *thou hast been*

Il a été, *he has been*

Nous avons été, *we have been*

Vous avez été, *you have been*

Ils ont été, *they have been*

Simple Tenses.

IMPERFECT.

J'étais, *I was*
 Tu étais, *thou wast*
 Il était, *he was*
 Nous étions, *we were*
 Vous étiez, *you were*
 Ils étaient, *they were*

PAST DEFINITE.

Je fus, *I was*
 Tu fus, *thou wast*
 Il fut, *he was*
 Nous fûmes, *we were*
 Vous fûtes, *you were*
 Ils furent, *they were*

FUTURE.

Je serai, *I shall be*
 Tu seras, *thou wilt be*
 Il sera, *he will be*
 Nous serons, *we shall be*
 Vous serez, *you will be*
 Ils seront, *they will be*

Compound Tenses.

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais été, *I had been*
 Tu avais été, *thou hadst been*
 Il avait été, *he had been*
 Nous avions été, *we had been*
 Vous aviez été, *you had been*
 Ils avaient été, *they had been*

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus été, *I had been*
 Tu eus été, *thou hadst been*
 Il eut été, *he had been*
 Nous eûmes été, *we had been*
 Vous eûtes été, *you had been*
 Ils eurent été, *they had been*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai été, *I shall have been*
 Tu auras été, *thou wilt have been*
 Il aura été, *he will have been*
 Nous aurons été, *we shall have been*
 Vous aurez été, *you will have been*
 Ils auront été, *they will have been*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je serais, *I should be*
 Tu serais, *thou wouldst be*
 Il serait, *he would be*
 Nous serions, *we should be*
 Vous seriez, *you would be*
 Ils seraient, *they would be*

PAST.

J'aurais été, *I should*
 Tu aurais été, *thou wouldst*
 Il aurait été, *he would*
 Nous aurions été, *we should*
 Vous auriez été, *you would*
 Ils auraient été, *they would*

} *have been*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sois, *be (thou)*
 Qu'il soit, *let him be*

Soyons, *let us be*
 Soyez, *be (ye)*
 Qu'ils soient, *let them be*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Que je sois, *that I may be*
 Que tu sois, *that thou mayst be*
 Qu'il soit, *that he may be*
 Que nous soyons, *that we may be*
 Que vous soyez, *that you may be*
 Qu'ils soient, *that they may be*

Que j'aie été, *that I may*
 Que tu aies été, *that thou mayst*
 Qu'il ait été, *that he may*
 Que nous ayons été, *that we may*
 Que vous ayez été, *that you may*
 Qu'ils aient été, *that they may*

} *may, may*

Simple Tense.**IMPERFECT.**

Que je fusse, *that I*
 Que tu fusses, *that thou*
 Qu'il fût, *that he*
 Que nous fussions, *that we*
 Que vous fussiez, *that you*
 Qu'ils fussent, *that they*

might be

Compound Tense.**PLUPERFECT.**

Que j'eusse été, *that I might*
 Que tu eusses été, *that thou mightst*
 Qu'il eût été, *that he might*
 Que nous eussions été, *that we might*
 Que vous eussiez été, *that you might*
 Qu'ils eussent été, *that they might*

have been

Use of AVOIR and ÊTRE as Auxiliaries.**136** The verb *Avoir* serves to conjugate

1. Its own compound tenses.
2. Those of the verb *être*.
3. Those of all active and impersonal verbs.
4. Those of neuter verbs, except a few conjugated with *être*.

137 The verb *Être* serves to conjugate

1. All passive verbs.
2. The compound tenses of all reflexive verbs.
3. Those of some neuter verbs.

ad translate.

Je *suis* très-heureux de vous voir. Tu *es* bien aimable de me donner ce beau bouquet. Il *est* toujours malade. Elle *est* très-bonne musicienne. Nous *sommes* trois, et vous *êtes* quatre. Ils *sont* pauvres, mais honnêtes. J'*étais* à Paris quand votre lettre m'*est* arrivée. Marie Stuart *était* d'une grande beauté. Nous *étions* sur le sommet de la montagne. Tu *seras* puni si tu n'*es* pas obéissant. Ma tante *sera* ici à six heures du soir. Ces messieurs *seront* à Londres avant nous. Je *serais* bien surpris s'il ne venait pas. Ces demoiselles *seraient* bien contentes d'aller à Paris. Vous *seriez* plus heureux si vous *étiez* à la campagne. J'*ai été* malade sur mer. Nous *aurions été* plus malades sur l'autre bateau. Vous *seriez* plus riches si vous *étiez* plus économes. Vos parents *eussent été* bien contents si vous *aviez eu* un prix.

Exercise on the Verb ÊTRE

Indicative present. I am very sick¹. Thou art obedient². He is late³. She is obliging⁴. We are very happy⁵. You are lazy⁶. They are courageous⁷. They (*les*) are timid⁸.

Imperfect. I was gone⁹. Thou wast arrived. He was tall¹⁰. We were sick on¹¹ the sea. You were (at home¹²). They were very rich. His friends were in the country.¹³

Past definite. I was his greatest¹⁴ friend. Thou wast robbed¹⁵.

¹ malade ² obéissant ³ en retard ⁴ obligeant ⁵ heureux ⁶ paresseux ⁷ courageux
⁸ timide ⁹ parti ¹⁰ grand ¹¹ sur ¹² chez vous ¹³ campagne ¹⁴ plus grand ¹⁵ volé

She was jealous¹⁶. We were surprised¹⁶. You were blameable. They were punished¹⁷. Our parents were satisfied (*satisfait*).

Future. I shall be inflexible. Thou wilt be astonished¹⁸. He will be very glad¹⁹ to see you. We shall be there. You will be tired²⁰. They will be brave (31) soldiers²¹.

Past indefinite. I have been studious²². Thou hast been in²³ danger. She has been (to church²⁴). We have been attacked²⁵. You have been attentive²⁶. They have been generous²⁷.

Pluperfect. I had been invited²⁸. He had been reprimanded by²⁹ his master. We had been frightened³⁰. You had been punished. They had been charitable.

Past anterior. I had been more diligent. She had been ready³¹. You had been very polite³². They had been examined³³.

Future anterior. I shall have been invited. Thou wilt have been condemned³⁴. He will have been surprised. We shall have been too severe. They will have been tired.

Conditional present. I should be very sorry³⁵ if he had the prize. My mother would be too busy³⁶. We should be very happy to see your brother. You would be very kind³⁷. They would be refused³⁸. Your sisters would be happy if they were here.

Conditional past. I should have been very ungrateful³⁹. Thou wouldst have been more prudent. She would have been warned⁴⁰. We should have been pleased⁴¹ to hear⁴² the concert. They would have been murdered⁴³ if they had been in the town.

Imperative. Be (thou) faithful⁴⁴. Let us be kind (to everybody⁴⁵). Gentlemen⁴⁶, be polite. Let them be ready in two hours.

¹⁵ jaloux ¹⁶ surpris ¹⁷ puni ¹⁸ étonné ¹⁹ bien aise de ²⁰ fatigué ²¹ soldat ²² studieux
²³ en ²⁴ à l'église ²⁵ attaqué ²⁶ attentif ²⁷ généreux ²⁸ invité ²⁹ reprimandé par
³⁰ effrayé ³¹ prêt ³² poli ³³ examiné ³⁴ condamné ³⁵ lâché ³⁶ occupé ³⁷ bon
³⁸ refusé ³⁹ ingrat ⁴⁰ averti ⁴¹ content ⁴² d'entendre ⁴³ assassiné ⁴⁴ fidèle ⁴⁵ envers
 tout le monde ⁴⁶ Messieurs.

CONJUGATION OF AVOIR AND ÊTRE.

Negatively, Interrogatively, and Interrogatively with a Negation

138 The negation is generally expressed in French by two words, *ne* (not) before the verb, and *pas*, *point*, *plus*, *jamais*, *rien*, or some other negative expression (173), which is put after the verb, in simple tenses, and generally between the auxiliary and the past participle in compound tenses; as

je *ne* vois *pas*
 je *n'ai pas* vu
 il *ne* rit *jamais*
 je *n'ai rien* dit

I do not see
I have not seen
he never laughs
I have said nothing

139 The interrogation is formed by placing the nomina-

- **tive pronoun after the verb or its auxiliary, to which it is joined by a hyphen ; as**

parlez-vous ?	<i>do you speak ?</i>
avez-vous parlé ?	<i>have you spoken ?</i>

140 When the third person singular of a verb used interrogatively ends with a vowel, it is parted from the pronoun *il, elle, on, &c.*, by the euphonic letter *-t-* ; as

aura-t-il ?	<i>will he have ?</i>		parle-t-elle ?	<i>does she speak ?</i>

141 When the nominative of a verb is a noun, it is placed before the verb, and the pronoun *il, elle, &c.*, is put after the verb, to form the interrogation ; as

votre frère est-il riche ?	<i>is your brother rich ?</i>
votre sœur a-t-elle un piano ?	<i>has your sister a piano ?</i>

142 When a noun is the direct object of an active verb employed with a negation, *de* alone is used, instead of the article *du, de la, des*, before that noun ; as

je n'ai pas de pain	<i>I have no bread</i>
je n'ai pas de viande	<i>I have no meat</i>
je n'ai pas de livres	<i>I have no books</i>
je ne bois pas de vin	<i>I do not drink wine</i>

143 Neither the Imperative nor the tenses of the Subjunctive and Infinitive moods are used interrogatively.

AVOIR.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE.

<i>Negatively.</i>	<i>Interrogatively.</i>	<i>Interrog. with a Neg.</i>
<i>I have not &c.</i>	<i>Have I ? &c.</i>	<i>Have I not ? &c.</i>
Je n'ai pas	Ai-je ?	N'ai-je pas ?
Tu n'as pas	As-tu ?	N'as-tu pas ?
Il n'a pas	A-t-il ?	N'a-t-il pas ?
Nous n'avons pas	Avons-nous ?	N'avons-nous pas ?
Vous n'avez pas	Avez-vous ?	N'avez-vous pas ?
Ils n'ont pas	Ont-ils ?	N'ont-ils pas ?

IMPERFECT.

<i>I had not &c.</i>	<i>Had I ? &c.</i>	<i>Had I not ? &c.</i>
Je n'avais pas	Avais-je ?	N'avais-je pas ?
Tu n'avais pas	Avais-tu ?	N'avais-tu pas ?
Il n'avait pas	Avait-il ?	N'avait-il pas ?
Nous n'avions pas	Avions-nous ?	N'avions-nous pas ?
Vous n'aviez pas	Aviez-vous ?	N'aviez-vous pas ?
Ils n'avaient pas	Avaient-ils ?	N'avaient-ils pas ?

PAST DEFINITE.

I had not &c.
Je n'eus pas
Tu n'eus pas
Il n'eut pas
Nous n'eûmes pas
Vous n'eûtes pas
Ils n'eurent pas

Had I ? &c.
Eus-je ?
Eus-tu ?
Eut-il ?
Eûmes-nous ?
Eûtes-vous ?
Eurent-ils ?

Had I not ? &c.
N'eus-je pas ?
N'eus-tu pas ?
N'eut-il pas ?
N'eûmes-nous pas ?
N'eûtes-vous pas ?
N'eurent-ils pas ?

FUTURE.

I shall not have &c.
Je n'aurai pas
Tu n'auras pas
Il n'aura pas
Nous n'aurons pas
Vous n'aurez pas
Ils n'auront pas

Shall I have ? &c.
Aurai-je ?
Auras-tu ?
Aura-t-il ?
Aurons-nous ?
Aurez-vous ?
Auront-ils ?

Shall I not have ? &c.
N'aurai-je pas ?
N'auras-tu pas ?
N'aura-t-il pas ?
N'aurons-nous pas ?
N'aurez-vous pas ?
N'auront-ils pas ?

CONDITIONAL PRESENT

I should not have &c.
Je n'aurais pas
Tu n'aurais pas
Il n'aurait pas
Nous n'aurions pas
Vous n'auriez pas
Ils n'auraient pas

Should I have ? &c.
Aurais-je ?
Aurais-tu ?
Aurait-il ?
Aurions-nous ?
Auriez-vous ?
Auraient-ils ?

Should I not have ? &c.
N'aurais-je pas ?
N'aurais-tu pas ?
N'aurait-il pas ?
N'aurions-nous pas ?
N'auriez-vous pas ?
N'auraient-ils pas ?

Compound Tenses.

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have not had &c.
Je n'ai pas eu
Tu n'as pas eu
Il n'a pas eu
Nous n'avons pas eu
Vous n'avez pas eu
Ils n'ont pas eu

Have I had ? &c.
Ai-je eu ?
As-tu eu ?
A-t-il eu ?
Avons-nous eu ?
Avez-vous eu ?
Ont-ils eu ?

Have I not had ? &c.
N'ai-je pas eu ?
N'as-tu pas eu ?
N'a-t-il pas eu ?
N'avons-nous pas eu ?
N'avez-vous pas eu ?
N'ont-ils pas eu ?

PLUPERFECT.

I had not had &c.
Je n'avais pas eu, &c.

Had I had ? &c.
Avais-je eu ? &c.

Had I not had ? &c.
N'avais-je pas eu ? &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had not had &c.
Je n'eus pas eu, &c.

Had I had ? &c.
Eus-je eu ? &c.

Had I not had ? &c.
N'eus-je pas eu ? &c.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall not have had
Je n'aurai pas eu, &c.

Shall I have had ?
Aurai-je eu ? &c.

Shall I not have had ?
N'aurai-je pas eu ? &c.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should not have had
Je n'aurais pas eu, &c.

Should I have had?
Aurais-je eu? &c.

Should I not have had?
N'aurais-je pas eu? &c.

ETRE.

PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE

Negatively.
I am not &c.
Je ne suis pas
Tu n'es pas
Il n'est pas
Nous ne sommes pas
Vous n'êtes pas
Ils ne sont pas

Interrogatively.
Am I? &c.
Suis-je?
Es-tu?
Est-il?
Sommes-nous?
Êtes-vous?
Sont-ils?

Interrog. with a Neg.
Am I not? &c.
Ne suis-je pas?
N'es-tu pas?
N'est-il pas?
Ne sommes-nous pas?
N'êtes-vous pas?
Ne sont-ils pas?

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have not been &c.
Je n'ai pas été, &c.

Have I been? &c.
Ai-je été? &c.

Have I not been? &c.
N'ai-je pas été? &c.

N.B — Conjugate the whole verb in the same manner.

Read and translate.

Avez-vous des plumes et de l'encre? Je ne suis pas prêt. N'êtes-vous pas Italien? Non. Êtes-vous Espagnol? Oui. N'ai-je pas un beau gilet bleu? Votre cousine avait-elle sa robe rose? Non; elle n'était pas en grande toilette. Es-tu content de ton tailleur? Ma sœur aura-t-elle son chapeau neuf? N'aurez-vous pas quelques amis ce soir? Je n'étais pas sur le bateau. Auriez-vous été effrayé si vous y aviez été? Nous n'aurons pas de pluie aujourd'hui. Serez-vous visible à onze heures? Non; je ne serai pas chez moi. Votre fils n'aura-t-il pas un fusil? Votre père serait-il content si vous veniez avec moi? Ces dames sont-elles au salon? Ces messieurs n'auront-ils pas bientôt leur café? Ont-ils eu le thé? Non, il n'est pas encore prêt.

Promiscuous Exercise

on the two verbs AVOIR and ÊTRE, used negatively, interrogatively, and interrogatively with a negation.

Indicative present. I have no (142) pencils. Have you any (28) pens? Have they no messages² for³ him? I am not pleased⁴. Are you ready⁵? Is your sister (141) happy? Thou art not punctual⁶. Hast thou any sisters? Are they not (at home)?

¹ crayon pl. ² communication pl. ³ pour ⁴ content ⁵ prêt ⁶ ponctuel ⁷ chez eux

Imperfect. I had not a good penknife⁸. Had he not a good master⁹? Had we not your dog¹⁰ this morning? You were not very happy¹¹. Was she with you? Were they not in the garden? Were not these horses (141) sold?

Past definite. He had not the courage to refuse¹². Had she a reward¹³ for her work¹⁴? Had they not a supper¹⁵? I was not prudent enough¹⁶. Were we not very generous¹⁷? Were you reprimanded¹⁸? Were your brothers at the concert?

Future. I shall not have time¹⁹. Wilt thou have a horse? Shall you have a carriage²⁰? Will they not have new gloves²¹? Will your sister be here to-morrow²²? No; she will not be with us. Will they not be examined²³? Will my pupils be ready at nine o'clock?

Conditional present. Your brother would have no success²⁴. Should we have guns²⁵? Would she not have (new-laid eggs²⁶)? I would not be troublesome²⁷. Would that man be a good soldier²⁸? Would they not be very ridiculous²⁹?

Past indefinite. I have had no fruits. Have you had almonds³⁰? Has she not had lace³¹? Have you been wet³²? Have the children (141) had their dinner? I have not been absent. Have they not been defeated³³? Has he not been scolded³⁴? Has your friend had prizes? Has not your father had a letter this morning?

Pluperfect. I had had no plums³⁵. Had we had rain³⁶? Had they not had hail³⁷? She had not been vaccinated³⁸. Had you been deceived³⁹? Had not his cousin (J) had the fever?

Past anterior. I had had no assistance⁴⁰. Had she had a holiday⁴¹? Had you not been wounded⁴²? They had not been pleased⁴³.

Future anterior. I shall have had no excuse. Will he have had a tutor⁴⁴? Will she not have been scolded? They will not have been perceived⁴⁵. Will not your daughters have had new (56) dresses?

Conditional past. You would have had no charity⁴⁶. Would he have had diamonds⁴⁷? Would my master have been pleased⁴⁸. We should not have been admitted⁴⁹. Would they not have been disappointed⁵⁰? The soldiers would not have had bread.

⁸ canif *m.* ⁹ maître *m.* ¹⁰ chien ¹¹ heureux ¹² de refuser ¹³ récompense *f.*
¹⁴ travail *m.* ¹⁵ souper *m.* ¹⁶ assez ¹⁷ généreux ¹⁸ réprimandé ¹⁹ le temps ²⁰ voiture *f.*
²¹ gant *pl.* ²² demain ²³ examiné ²⁴ succès ²⁵ fusil *pl.* ²⁶ œuf frais *pl.*
²⁷ importun ²⁸ soldat *m.* ²⁹ ridicule ³⁰ amande ³¹ dentelle *f.* ³² mouillé ³³ défait
³⁴ grondé ³⁵ prune *pl.* ³⁶ pluie *f.* ³⁷ grêle *f.* ³⁸ vacciné ³⁹ trompé ⁴⁰ secours
⁴¹ congé ⁴² blessé ⁴³ content ⁴⁴ précepteur *m.* ⁴⁵ aperçu ⁴⁶ charité ⁴⁷ diamant
⁴⁸ content ⁴⁹ admis ⁵⁰ désappointé.

REGULAR VERBS.

144 FIRST CONJUGATION IN ER.

AIMER, to love.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.—*Aimer, to love* PAST.—*Avoir aimé, to have loved*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—*Aimant, loving* PAST.—*Aimé, loved*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

<i>J'aime*</i>	<i>I love, do love or am loving</i>
<i>Tu aimes</i>	<i>Thou lovest</i>
<i>Il aime</i>	<i>He loves</i>
<i>Nous aimons</i>	<i>We love</i>
<i>Vous aimez</i>	<i>You love</i>
<i>Ils aiment</i>	<i>They love</i>

<i>J'aimais</i>	<i>I loved or</i>
<i>Tu aimais</i>	<i>Thou wast loving</i>
<i>Il aimait</i>	<i>He was loving</i>
<i>Nous aimions</i>	<i>We were loving</i>
<i>Vous aimiez</i>	<i>You were loving</i>
<i>Ils aimaient</i>	<i>They were loving</i>

PAST DEFINITE.

<i>J'aimai</i>	
<i>Tu aimas</i>	<i>Thou lovedst</i>
<i>Il aimait</i>	<i>He loved</i>
<i>Nous aimâmes</i>	<i>We loved</i>
<i>Vous aimâtes</i>	<i>You loved</i>
<i>Ils aimèrent</i>	<i>They loved</i>

<i>J'aimerai</i>	
<i>Tu aimeras</i>	<i>Thou wilt love</i>
<i>Il aimera</i>	<i>He will love</i>
<i>Nous aimerons</i>	<i>We shall love</i>
<i>Vous aimerez</i>	<i>You will love</i>
<i>Ils aimeront</i>	<i>They will love</i>

* NOTE. — The French has no emphatic auxiliary like *do, does, or did*, and the participle present is never used as in the English expressions *I am loving, I was loving, &c.*, but all the simple tenses are formed with one word only, *j'aime, j'aimais, &c.*

Compound Tenses.**PAST INDEFINITE.**

J'ai aimé	<i>I have loved</i>
Tu as aimé	<i>Thou hast loved</i>
Il a aimé	<i>He has loved</i>
Nous avons aimé	<i>We have loved</i>
Vous avez aimé	<i>You have loved</i>
Ils ont aimé	<i>They have loved</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais aimé	<i>I had loved</i>
Tu avais aimé	<i>Thou hadst loved</i>
Il avait aimé	<i>He had loved</i>
Nous avions aimé	<i>We had loved</i>
Vous aviez aimé	<i>You had loved</i>
Ils avaient aimé	<i>They had loved</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus aimé	<i>I had loved</i>
Tu eus aimé	<i>Thou hadst loved</i>
Il eut aimé	<i>He had loved</i>
Nous eûmes aimé	<i>We had loved</i>
Vous eûtes aimé	<i>You had loved</i>
Ils eurent aimé	<i>They had loved</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai aimé	<i>I shall have loved</i>
Tu auras aimé	<i>Thou wilt have loved</i>
Il aura aimé	<i>He will have loved</i>
Nous aurons aimé	<i>We shall have loved</i>
Vous aurez aimé	<i>You will have loved</i>
Ils auront aimé	<i>They will have loved</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.**PRESENT.**

J'aimerais	<i>I should love</i>
Tu aimerais	<i>Thou wouldst love</i>
Il aimerait	<i>He would love</i>
Nous aimerions	<i>We should love</i>
Vous aimeriez	<i>You would love</i>
Ils aimeraient	<i>They would love</i>

PAST.

J'aurais or eusse aimé	<i>I should have loved</i>
Tu aurais or eusses aimé	<i>Thou wouldst have loved</i>
Il aurait or eût aimé	<i>He would have loved</i>
Nous aurions or eussions aimé	<i>We should have loved</i>
Vous auriez or eussiez aimé	<i>You would have loved</i>
Ils auraient or eussent aimé	<i>They would have loved</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aime	<i>Love (thou)</i>
Qu'il aime	<i>Let him love</i>
Aimons	<i>Let us love</i>
Aimez	<i>Love (ye or you.)</i>
Qu'ils aiment	<i>Let them love</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Que j'aime	<i>That I may love</i>
Que tu aimes	<i>That thou mayst love.</i>
Qu'il aime	<i>That he may love</i>
Que nous aimions	<i>That we may love</i>
Que vous aimiez	<i>That you may love</i>
Qu'ils aiment	<i>That they may love</i>

IMPERFECT.

Que j'aimasse	<i>That I might love</i>
Que tu aimasses	<i>That thou mightst love</i>
Qu'il aimât	<i>That he might love</i>
Que nous aimassions	<i>That we might love</i>
Que vous aimassiez	<i>That you might love</i>
Qu'ils aimassent	<i>That they might love</i>

Compound Tenses.

PAST.

Que j'aie aimé	<i>That I may have loved</i>
Que tu aies aimé	<i>That thou mayst have loved</i>
Qu'il eût aimé	<i>That he may have loved</i>
Que nous ayons aimé	<i>That we may have loved</i>
Que vous ayez aimé	<i>That you may have loved</i>
Qu'ils aient aimé	<i>That they may have loved</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse aimé	<i>That I might have loved</i>
Que tu eusses aimé	<i>That thou mightst have loved</i>
Qu'il eût aimé	<i>That he might have loved</i>
Que nous eussions aimé	<i>That we might have loved</i>
Que vous eussiez aimé	<i>That you might have loved</i>
Qu'ils eussent aimé	<i>That they might have loved</i>

Conjugate like *aimer*: *apporter, to bring*; *blâmer, to blame*; *chanter, to sing*; *commencer, to begin*; *cultiver, to cultivate*; *donner, to give*; *étudier, to study*; *enseigner, to teach*; *flatter, to flatter*; *frapper, to strike*; *garder, to keep*; *honorer, to honour*; *inventer, to invent*; *jurer, to judge*; *laisser, to leave*; *marcher, to walk*; *nommer, to name*; *parler, to speak*; *porter, to carry*; *raconter, to relate*; *remercier, to thank*; *sonner, to ring*; *travailler, to work*; *trouver, to find*; *voyager, to travel*.

REMARKS

ON SOME VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

145 In verbs whose Infinitive ends in *ger*, *g* must always be followed by *e* mute, before *a* and *o*, in order to preserve the soft sound of *g*; as *manger* to eat, *je mangeai*; *juger* to judge, *nous jugeons*.

146 Verbs ending in *cer*, as *placer*, *menacer*, take a cedilla under the *c*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, to preserve its soft articulation; as *il plaça* he placed, *nous menaçons* we threaten.

147 Verbs ending in *eler*, *eter*, generally double the *l* and *t*, when followed by *e* mute; as *appeler* to call, *j'appelle*; *jeter* to throw, *je jette*. Except *bourreler*, *congeler*, *déceler*, *geler*, *harceler*, *peler*, *acheter*, *colleter*, *coqueter*, *décolleter*, *étiqueter*, and the verbs where the *e* preceding the *l* or *t* is an *é* accented, as *recéler*, *empiéter*, which require a grave accent over the *e* before the *l* or *t*; as *il gèle* it freezes, *il achète* he buys, *il révèle* he reveals.

148 When the last syllable of the Infinitive of a verb in *er* is preceded by *é* acute, or *e* mute, that letter is changed into *è* grave before a mute syllable; as *céder*, *je cède*; *espérer*, *j'espère*; *mener*, *je mène*.

149 Verbs which end in *ayer*, *oyer*, *uyer*, in the Infinitive, retain *y* after *y* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and the present of the subjunctive; as *nous payions*, *nous employions*, *vous appuyiez*; *que nous payions*, *que vous payiez*; from *payer*, *employer*, *appuyer*. When *y* would be followed by *e* mute, it is changed into *i*; as *payer*, *je paie*, *j'emploierai*.

150 Verbs ending in *ier* in the Infinitive, as *prier*, *lier*, are written with double *ii* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and present of the subjunctive; as *nous priions*, *vous priiez*; *que nous lions*, *que vous liez*.

151 Verbs ending in *éer* in the Infinitive, as *créer*, *agréer*, preserve the two *ee* throughout their conjugation, except before *a*, *o*, *i*, and take three *eee* in the participle past feminine; as *crée*, *m. créée*, *f.*

Read and translate.

Je travaille six heures par jour. Blâmes-tu ma conduite? Ma fille parle trois langues, le français, l'anglais, et l'allemand. Nous déjeunons à huit heures du matin, et nous entrons en étude à huit heures et demie. Dinez-vous avec nous aujourd'hui? Non. Vos deux fils dessinent très-bien, et chantent de même. J'admire l'heureuse situation de cette grande ville. Pendant qu'il parlait ainsi, Télémaque baissait les yeux. Nous habitons alors la campagne. Les étoiles brillaient au ciel. Nous errâmes longtemps dans la plaine. Ces messieurs arrivèrent-ils à temps pour le concert? Je passerai un mois avec mon cousin, et nous chasserons tous les jours. Apporterez-vous votre fusil? Je chasserais souvent si j'avais le temps. Aimerez-vous venir à Rome avec nous? Ces chevaux mangeraient toute cette avoine si vous la leur

donniez. Ne jugeons pas les autres trop sévèrement. Nous *longeâmes* cette île, et le lendemain nous *arrivâmes* en face de sept montagnes de glace. La brume *commençait* à nous envelopper. Comment *appelez-vous* cette montagne? On l'*appelle* le Mont Blanc. Je *désirerais* que vous *parlassiez* français. Je ne crois pas que nous *arrivions* avant la nuit.

Exercise on the FIRST CONJUGATION.

Indicative present. I water¹ my garden. Thou speakest² French³. Does (175) he sing⁴ every⁵ morning? She dances⁶ well. We blame⁷ these gentlemen⁸. You brush⁹ your coat¹⁰. Do they barri- cade¹¹ the street? They (*f.*) do not speak German¹².

Imperfect. I esteemed¹³ my friend because he was very just. Did (175) he sweep¹⁴ the room? My friend taught¹⁵ French, German, and Italian. We were correcting our exercise when you called the master. Were you (175) listening¹⁶ at the door? They (used to give¹⁷) bread to the poor. We studied our lessons every morning.

Past definite. I bought¹⁸ a French dictionary yesterday. Thou announcedst¹⁹ good news²⁰. Did not that (young lady²¹) (play on²²) the harp with taste? We met²³ your father in the streets of Paris in 1860. You forgot²⁴ your books and pens. They unsealed²⁵ the letter.

Future. I shall eat²⁶ some chicken²⁷. He will not neglect²⁸ his duty. We shall decide²⁹ the question. Shall you attack³⁰ the enemy? They will buy³¹ your horses. Will my son soon speak French?

Conditional present. I would cultivate³² the flowers of our garden. Would your father accept³³ my invitation for to-morrow? We would breakfast³⁴ with you if we could³⁵. You would correct³⁶ the faults of your exercise. Would your friends accept those propositions? Should we refuse their presents?

Imperative. Study³⁷ thy lesson. Let us love³⁸ justice, peace, and virtue. Let us celebrate³⁹ this great event⁴⁰. Lend⁴¹ me fifty guineas. Do not lend him your money.

Subjunctive present. I wish⁴² that he (may find⁴³) a good situation. In order that⁴⁴ you (may admire⁴⁵) the beauty of that landscape⁴⁶. He wishes that you (may think of⁴⁷) their misfortunes. I wish that they (may forget⁴⁸) my faults.

Imperfect. Provided⁴⁹ I (might surmount⁵⁰) the obstacles. (It would be necessary⁵¹) that we (might shut⁵²) the shutters⁵³. Your master wished that you (might conjugate⁵⁴) these verbs with facility. I wished that they (should protect⁵⁵) that young lady.

¹ arroser ² parler ³ Français ⁴ chanter ⁵ tous les ⁶ danse ⁷ blâmer ⁸ messieurs
⁹ broser ¹⁰ habit ¹¹ barricader ¹² Allemand ¹³ estimer ¹⁴ balayer ¹⁵ enseigner
¹⁶ écouter ¹⁷ donner ¹⁸ acheter ¹⁹ annoncer ²⁰ nouvelle *f.* ²¹ demoiselle *f.* ²² jouer
²³ rencontrer ²⁴ oublier ²⁵ décacheter ²⁶ manger ²⁷ poulet *m.* ²⁸ négliger
²⁹ décider ³⁰ attaquer ³¹ acheter ³² cultiver ³³ accepter ³⁴ déjeuner ³⁵ pouvoir
³⁶ corriger ³⁷ étudier ³⁸ aimer ³⁹ célébrer ⁴⁰ événement ⁴¹ prêter ⁴² souhaiter *or*
⁴³ désirer ⁴⁴ trouver ⁴⁵ Afin que ⁴⁶ admirer ⁴⁷ paysage *m.* ⁴⁸ penser à ⁴⁹ oublier
⁵⁰ Pourvu que ⁵¹ surmonter ⁵² Il faudrait ⁵³ fermer ⁵⁴ volet ⁵⁵ conjuguer
⁵⁶ protéger.

Promiscuous Exercise*On the Compound Tenses of the First Conjugation.*

I have worked¹ three hours² this morning. Has he not finished³ his letter? They have not studied⁴ their lessons. I had (hesitated to⁵) tell him that news. Thou hadst not thought of⁶ the message⁷. Had your tutor⁸ corrected⁹ your exercise? When he had dined¹⁰ he went¹¹ into the garden. As soon as¹² he had counted¹³ the money, he disappeared¹⁴. I should soon have dispatched¹⁵ that man. When you shall have spoken¹⁶ to your master, you shall come¹⁷ and see me. Would you have played¹⁸ if you had been with us? We would not have walked¹⁹ if we had found²⁰ a carriage. Would your uncle have given²¹ his consent²²? I do not believe²³ that he has spent²⁴ more than²⁵ two hundred francs. Do you think²⁶ that I have offended²⁷ him? Was it possible that we should have danced so late²⁸?

¹ travailler ² achever ³ étudier ⁴ hésiter à ⁵ penser à ⁶ commission f. ⁷ précepteur
⁸ corriger ⁹ dîner ¹⁰ aller ¹¹ Dès que ¹² compter ¹³ disparaître ¹⁴ expédier
¹⁵ parler ¹⁶ venir ¹⁷ jouer ¹⁸ marcher ¹⁹ trouver ²⁰ donner ²¹ consentement m.
²² croire ²³ dépenser ²⁴ de ²⁵ penser ²⁶ offenser ²⁷ si tard.

152 SECOND CONJUGATION IN IR.**FINIR, to finish.****INFINITIVE MOOD.****PRESENT.**—Finir, *to finish***PAST.**—Avoir fini, *to have finished***PARTICIPLES.****PRESENT.**—Finissant, *finishing***PAST.**—Fini, *finished***INDICATIVE MOOD.****PRESENT.**

Je finis
 Tu finis
 Il finit
 Nous finissons
 Vous finissez
 Ils finissent

I finish
Thou finishest
He finishes
We finish
You finish
They finish

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'ai fini, &c.

• *I have finished*

IMPERFECT.

Je finissais	<i>I was finishing</i>
Tu finissais	<i>Thou wast finishing</i>
Il finissait	<i>He was finishing</i>
Nous finissions	<i>• We were finishing</i>
Vous finissiez	<i>You were finishing</i>
Ils finissaient	<i>They were finishing</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais fini, &c.	<i>I had finished</i>

PAST DEFINITE.

Je finis	<i>I finished</i>
Tu finis	<i>Thou finishedst</i>
Il finit	<i>He finished</i>
Nous finîmes	<i>We finished</i>
Vous finîtes	<i>You finished</i>
Ils finirent	<i>They finished</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus fini, &c.	<i>I had finished</i>

FUTURE.

Je finirai	<i>I shall finish</i>
Tu finiras	<i>Thou wilt finish</i>
Il finira	<i>He will finish</i>
Nous finirons	<i>We shall finish</i>
Vous finirez	<i>You will finish</i>
Ils finiront	<i>They will finish</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai fini, &c.	<i>I shall have finished</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je finirais	<i>I should finish</i>
Tu finirais	<i>Thou wouldst finish</i>
Il finirait	<i>He would finish</i>
Nous finirions	<i>We should finish</i>
Vous finiriez	<i>You would finish</i>
Ils finiraient	<i>They would finish</i>

PAST.

J'aurais or eusse fini, &c.	<i>• I should have finished</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Finis	<i>Finish (thou)</i>
Qu'il finisse	<i>Let him finish</i>
Finissons	<i>Let us finish</i>
Finissez	<i>Finish (ye or you)</i>
Qu'ils finissent	<i>• Let them finish</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Que je finisse	<i>That I may finish</i>
Que tu finisses	<i>That thou mayst finish</i>
Qu'il finisse	<i>That he may finish</i>
Que nous finissions	<i>That we may finish</i>
Que vous finissiez	<i>That you may finish</i>
Qu'ils finissent	<i>That they may finish</i>

Que j'aie fini, &c.	<i>That I may have finished</i>

IMPERFECT.

Que je finisse	<i>That I might finish</i>
Que tu finisses	<i>That thou mightst finish</i>
Qu'il finît	<i>That he might finish</i>
Que nous finissions	<i>That we might finish</i>
Que vous finissiez	<i>That you might finish</i>
Qu'ils finissent	<i>That they might finish</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse fini, &c.	<i>That I might have finished</i>

Conjugate like *finir*; applaudir, *to applaud*; avertir, *to warn*; bâtir, *to build*; chérir, *to cherish*; choisir, *to choose*; démolir, *to demolish*; fleurir, *to blossom*; fournir, *to furnish*; nourrir, *to feed*; punir, *to punish*; remplir, *to fill*; ternir, *to tarnish*, *to sully*; trahir, *to betray*; vernir, *to varnish*, &c.

REMARKS

ON A FEW VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

153 All verbs in *ir*, the present participle of which is not in *issant*, do not belong to the regular form.

154 The verb *bénir*, to bless, has two participles past, *béni*, m., *bénite*, f.; as *du pain BÉNIT*, *de l'eau BÉNITE*; and *béni*, m., *bénie*, f., blessed; as *peuple BÉNI de Dieu*, *famille BÉNIE du Ciel*.

155 The verb *haïr*, to hate, preserves the two dots on *i* throughout the conjugation; except in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative: *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*; and in the second person singular of the imperative, *hais*.

156 The verb *fleurir*, signifying to blossom, and to be prosperous, has two imperfect tenses of the indicative, and two participles present. When *fleurir* means to blossom, it makes *fleurissait*, *fleurissant*; when it signifies to be prosperous, it makes *florissait*, *florissant*.

Read and translate.

Cette pauvre femme *nourrit* ses enfants par son travail, et tous ses enfants la *chérissent*. *Avertissez-le* que deux de ses vaisseaux ont *péri* la nuit dernière. L'armée *envahissait* tout le pays. Quand *réunirez-vous* vos amis pour leur apprendre cette nouvelle? Nous *bâtissons* une église pour les habitants de cette paroisse. Les fleurs *embellissent* la nature, et *nourrissent* les abeilles. Avez-vous *choisi* les fleurs que vous voulez acheter? Non, je ne les ai pas encore *choisies*. Quand les *choisirez-vous*? Je les *choisirai* demain matin, et vous les planterez tout de suite, de peur qu'elles ne *périssent*. Il faut que je *finisse* ma lettre avant dîner, car si je ne la *finissais* pas, il serait trop tard après dîner. Ne *désobéissez* jamais à vos parents, Dieu vous *punirait*.

Exercise on the SECOND CONJUGATION.

Indicative present. I cherish¹ those good friends. He punishes² his pupils³ too severely. We demolish⁴ that old castle. Do you not polish⁵ that marble? They applaud⁶ all that⁷ he says⁸. Do those children fulfil⁹ their duties¹⁰? They do not obey¹¹ their master.

Imperfect. I was (reflecting on¹²) his letter when he (came in¹³). Wast thou not building¹⁴ a stable? He was warning¹⁵ your brother of his danger. We were finishing¹⁶ our work when he passed. Were you not demolishing¹⁷ the wall of the garden? Were they not enjoying¹⁸ the pleasures of the country¹⁹? They enslaved²⁰ all the vanquished²¹ nations. Your uncle and cousin were building a castle.

Past definite. I furnished²² all the money. Didst thou succeed²³ in thy project? That girl disobeyed²⁴ her parents. We filled²⁵ the bottle with²⁶ water. Did you perform²⁷ the duties of his office²⁸ during his absence? They invaded²⁹ our country³⁰. All the spectators applauded. Did we not warn that man?

Future. I shall punish him for his disobedience. Thou wilt not finish thy work this evening. This tree will soon blossom³¹. Will your son climb³² the hill with us? Shall we not warn³³ his friends? You will succeed in your undertaking³⁴. Those thieves will languish³⁵ a long time in their prison. Will they finish this evening?

Conditional present. I should convert³⁶ the impious. Thou wouldst enjoy³⁷ a good health. Would your brother blemish³⁸ his name? We (would sympathise with³⁹) their sorrows. You would embellish⁴⁰ that residence if it were yours⁴¹. They would not betray⁴² their country. Would they not sully their glory?

Imperative. Fill thy glass. Punish the crime. Let us build a

¹ chérir ² punir ³ élève ⁴ démolir ⁵ polir ⁶ applaudir ⁷ tout ce que ⁸ dire
⁹ remplir ¹⁰ devoir ¹¹ obéir à ¹² réfléchir sur ¹³ entrer ¹⁴ bâtir ¹⁵ avertir ¹⁶ finir
¹⁷ démolir ¹⁸ jouir de ¹⁹ campagne f. ²⁰ asservir ²¹ vaincu ²² fournir ²³ réussir
²⁴ désobéir ²⁵ remplir ²⁶ de ²⁷ remplir ²⁸ place ²⁹ envahir ³⁰ pays ³¹ fleurir
³² graver ³³ avertir ³⁴ entreprise ³⁵ languir ³⁶ convertir ³⁷ jouir de ³⁸ ternir
³⁹ compatir à ⁴⁰ embellir ⁴¹ à vous ⁴² trahir

fine house. Let us establish⁴³ wise laws. Polish⁴⁴ the barrel⁴⁵ of that musket. Let them bless⁴⁶ Providence.

Subjunctive. present. Come⁴⁷ before⁴⁸ I demolish my work. He wishes⁴⁹ that I should reflect on that proposal⁵⁰. (In order that⁵¹) she may not perish⁵². Let us work, for fear⁵³ we should undergo⁵⁴ the punishment. Unless⁵⁵ you establish wise laws. Do you think⁵⁶ that those bankers will fulfil⁵⁷ their engagement?

Imperfect. I (trembled for fear⁵⁸) he (should) blemish his reputation. In order that she (might soften⁵⁹) that unfeeling⁶⁰ heart. It would be (desirable⁶¹) that we (should act⁶²) in⁶³ concert. It would be necessary that you should finish your exercise before dinner. We expected⁶⁴ that they (would rebuild⁶⁵) that farm.

⁴³ établir ⁴⁴ polir ⁴⁵ canon m. ⁴⁶ bénir ⁴⁷ venir ⁴⁸ avant que ⁴⁹ vouloir ⁵⁰ proposition f. ⁵¹ Afin que ⁵² périr ⁵³ de peur que ⁵⁴ subir ⁵⁵ A moins que ⁵⁶ penser ⁵⁷ remplir ⁵⁸ trembler que ⁵⁹ adoucir ⁶⁰ insensible ⁶¹ à désirer ⁶² agir ⁶³ de ⁶⁴ attendre ⁶⁵ rebâtir.

Promiscuous Exercise

On the Compound Tenses of the Second Conjugation.

I have warned¹ him of his errors. We have not enjoyed² our holidays. Have you not finished your exercise? I had not reflected³ seriously. Had you not chosen⁴ a red cloak? When he had built⁵ his house, he sold⁶ it. As soon as we had finished our lesson, we (went out⁷). Would they not have been punished, if they had not obeyed? I did not know⁸ that they had abolished⁹ that law. Had they not betrayed¹⁰ their general? These tulips would have blossomed¹¹ sooner, if the pots had been filled¹² with good soil¹³. When I shall have embellished¹⁴ my residence, I will invite¹⁵ all my friends. Do you think¹⁶ that they have accomplished¹⁷ their task¹⁸? Would not these fish have perished¹⁹, if they had not been fed²⁰?

¹ avertir ² jouir de ³ réfléchir ⁴ choisir ⁵ bâtir ⁶ vendre ⁷ sortir ⁸ savoir ⁹ abolir ¹⁰ trahir ¹¹ fleurir ¹² remplir ¹³ terre f. ¹⁴ embellir ¹⁵ inviter ¹⁶ croire ¹⁷ accomplir ¹⁸ tâche ¹⁹ périr ²⁰ nourrir.

Division of the SECOND CONJUGATION.

157 The second conjugation is divided into *four* classes, which are distinguished by the *present participle*, the *present of the Indicative*, and the *past definite*. The first class is like *finir* (152); the three others are as follows:—

2. <i>To feel</i>	<i>sentir</i>	<i>sentant</i>	<i>je sens</i>	<i>je sentis</i>
3. <i>To offer</i>	<i>offrir</i>	<i>offrant</i>	<i>j'offre</i>	<i>j'offris</i>
4. <i>To hold</i>	<i>tenir</i>	<i>tenant</i>	<i>je tiens</i>	<i>je tins</i>

* The conjunctions marked * require *ne* before the verb.

158 MODEL-VERBS.

II. Class

III. Class

IV. Class

INFINITIVE PRESENT.

Sentir, to feel

Offrir, to offer

Tenir, to hold

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Sentant, feeling

Offrant, offering

Tenant, holding

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Senti, felt

Offert, offered

Tenu, held

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I feel
 Je sens
 Tu sens
 Il sent
 Nous sentons
 Vous sentez
 Ils sentent

I offer
 J'offre
 Tu offres
 Il offre
 Nous offrons
 Vous offrez
 Ils offrent

I hold
 Je tiens
 Tu tiens
 Il tient
 Nous tenons
 Vous tenez
 Ils tiennent

IMPERFECT.

I was feeling
 Je sentais, &c.

I was offering
 J'offrais, &c.

I was holding
 Je tenais, &c.

PAST DEFINITE.

I felt
 Je sentis
 Tu sentis
 Il sentit
 Nous sentimes
 Vous sentîtes
 Ils sentirent

I offered
 J'offris
 Tu offris
 Il offrit
 Nous offrîmes
 Vous offrites
 Ils offrirent

I held
 Je tins
 Tu tins
 Il tint
 Nous tintmes
 Vous tintes
 Ils tinrent

FUTURE.

I shall feel
 Je sentirai, &c.

I shall offer
 J'offrirai, &c.

I shall hold
 Je tiendrai, &c.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

I should feel
 Je sentirais, &c.

I should offer
 J'offrirais, &c.

I should hold
 Je tiendrais, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Feel (thou)
Sens
Sentons
Sentez

Offer (thou)
Offre
Offrons
Offrez

Hold (thou)
Tiens
Tenons
Tenez

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

That I may feel
Que je sente
Que tu sentes
Qu'il sente
Que nous sentions
Que vous sentiez
Qu'ils sentent

That I may offer
Que j'offre
Que tu offres
Qu'il offre
Que nous offrons
Que vous offriez
Qu'ils offrent

That I may hold
Que je tienne
Que tu tiennes
Qu'il tienne
Que nous tenions
Que vous teniez
Qu'ils tiennent

IMPERFECT.

That I might feel
Que je sentisse
Que tu sentisses
Qu'il sentît
Que nous sentissions
Que vous sentissiez
Qu'ils sentissent

That I might offer
Que j'offrisse
Que tu offrisses
Qu'il offrît
Que nous offrissions
Que vous offrissiez
Qu'ils offrissent

That I might hold
Que je tinsse
Que tu tinsses
Qu'il tint
Que nous tinssions
Que vous tinssiez
Qu'ils tinssent

159 The *first class* consists of about three hundred verbs, the *present participle* of which is in *issant*, and are conjugated like *finir* (152).

160 The *second class* contains the following verbs, which are conjugated like *sentir* :—

ROOTS	DERIVATIVES	
Sentir, to feel	{ Consen-tir	to consent
	{ Pressen-tir	to foresee
	{ Ressen-tir	to resent
Mentir, to lie	Démen-tir	to give the lie
Partir, to set out	{ Dépar-tir	to divide
	{ Repar-tir	to set out again
Sortir, to go out	Ressor-tir*	to go out again
	{ Redor-mir†	to sleep again
	{ Endor-mir	to lull asleep
Dormir, to sleep	{ Endor-mir (s')	to fall asleep
	{ Se rendor-mir	to fall asleep again
Servir, to serve	Desser-vir	to clear the table
Se repentir, to repent	(See the Reflective Verbs, 191, 192)	

* *Ressor-tir*, meaning to be under the jurisdiction of, is conjugated like *savoir*.

161 The *third class* comprises the following verbs, which are conjugated like *offrir* :—

ROOTS	DERIVATIVES	
Ou-<i>vrir</i> , to open	{ Rou- <i>vrir</i>	to open again
	{ Entr'-ou- <i>vrir</i>	to half-open
Cou-<i>vrir</i> , to cover	{ Décou- <i>vrir</i>	to discover
	{ Recou- <i>vrir</i>	to cover again
Of-<i>frir</i> , to offer	{ Mésof- <i>frir</i>	to underbid
Souf-<i>frir</i> , to suffer	(No derivatives)	

162 The *fourth class* contains the following verbs, which are conjugated like *tenir* :—

ROOTS	DERIVATIVES	
	{ Abst- <i>enir</i>	to abstain
	{ Appart- <i>enir</i>	to belong
	{ Cont- <i>enir</i>	to contain
	{ Dét- <i>enir</i>	to detain
T-<i>enir</i> , to hold	{ Entret- <i>enir</i>	to keep up
	{ Maint- <i>enir</i>	to maintain
	{ Obt- <i>enir</i>	to obtain
	{ Ret- <i>enir</i>	to retain
	{ Sout- <i>enir</i>	to uphold
	{ Av- <i>enir</i>	to happen
	{ Contrev- <i>enir</i>	to contravene
	{ Conv- <i>enir</i>	to agree
	{ Dev- <i>enir</i>	to become
	{ Disconv- <i>enir</i>	to deny
	{ Interv- <i>enir</i>	to intercede
V-<i>enir</i> , to come	{ Parv- <i>enir</i>	to reach
	{ Prév- <i>enir</i>	to warn &c.
	{ Prov- <i>enir</i>	to proceed
	{ Rev- <i>enir</i>	to come back
	{ Subv- <i>enir</i>	to relieve
	{ Surv- <i>enir</i>	to befall
	{ Souv- <i>enir</i> (se)	to remember
	{ Se ressouv- <i>enir</i>	to recollect

Read and translate.

Sentez-vous le parfum de ces violettes? Il présentait son malheur. Consentira-t-il à ce mariage? Quand partons-nous pour la campagne? Ces jeunes gens ne sortaient-ils pas trop souvent? Nous dormions jusqu'à trois heures, puis nous partions pour la chasse. Nos soldats se sont couverts de gloire en Crimée. Ouvrez la fenêtre, s'il vous plaît, car je souffre trop de la chaleur. Viendrez-vous nous voir dimanche prochain? Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, car il est sorti fort tard. En revenant, nous découvrîmes un affreux précipice. Je me souviens toujours avec plaisir de mon

voyage en Suisse. Les troupes françaises *souffrirent* beaucoup dans la campagne d'Egypte, mais elles *servirent* leur patrie avec un courage héroïque. Votre ami *convient-il* de ses torts? A-t-il *obtenu* la permission qu'il avait demandée?

Exercise on the II. III. and IV. Classes.

He consents¹ to the marriage of his son. We (set out²) for India next week. Do (175) they offer³ you a good sum of money? My children (were sleeping⁴) very soundly. That officer suffered⁵ with much courage. Did (175) you discover⁶ his malice? This house will belong⁷ to his daughter after his death. The troops did not restrain⁸ the populace. Columbus discovered America in 1492 (*the date to be given in words*). We agree⁹ with you that he (was in the wrong¹⁰). Those horses belong to my friend. We did not return¹¹ home before ten in the evening. Did they not keep¹² their promise? The French (covered themselves¹³) with glory at Solferino. My mother (fell down¹⁴) in opening¹⁵ the door. Have you covered the table? When will you come¹⁶ and see me? I (go out¹⁷) very seldom. Did you sleep well last night? Have you opened the window? No; but I shall open it before¹⁸ we go out.

¹ consentir ² partir ³ offrir ⁴ dormir ⁵ souffrir ⁶ découvrir ⁷ appartenir ⁸ contenir ⁹ convenir ¹⁰ avoir tort ¹¹ revenir ¹² tenir ¹³ se couvrir ¹⁴ tomber ¹⁵ ouvrir ¹⁶ venir ¹⁷ sortir ¹⁸ avant que (*with the subjunctive*)

163 THIRD CONJUGATION IN OIR.

RECEVOIR, to receive.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.—Recevoir, to receive PAST.—Avoir reçu, to have received

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—Recevant, receiving PAST.—Reçu, received

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je reçois
Tu reçois
Il reçoit
Nous recevons
Vous recevez
Ils reçoivent

I receive
Thou receivest
He receives
We receive
You receive
They receive

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'ai reçu, &c. *I have received*

IMPERFECT.*

Je recevais	<i>I was receiving</i>
Tu recevais	<i>Thou wast receiving</i>
Il recevait	<i>He was receiving</i>
Nous recevions	<i>We were receiving</i>
Vous receviez	<i>You were receiving</i>
Ils recevaient	<i>They were receiving</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais reçu, &c. *I had received*

PAST DEFINITE.

Je reçus	<i>I received</i>
Tu reçus	<i>Thou receivedst</i>
Il reçut	<i>He received</i>
Nous reçûmes	<i>We received</i>
Vous reçûtes	<i>You received</i>
Ils reçurent	<i>They received</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus reçu, &c. *I had received*

FUTURE.

Je recevrai	<i>I shall receive</i>
Tu recevras	<i>Thou wilt receive</i>
Il recevra	<i>He will receive</i>
Nous recevrons	<i>We shall receive</i>
Vous recevrez	<i>You will receive</i>
Ils recevront	<i>They will receive</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai reçu, &c. *I shall have received*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je recevrais	<i>I should receive</i>
Tu recevrais	<i>Thou wouldst receive</i>
Il recevrait	<i>He would receive</i>
Nous recevriions	<i>We should receive</i>
Vous recevriez	<i>You would receive</i>
Ils recevraient	<i>They would receive</i>

PAST.

J'aurais reçu, &c. *I should have received*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Reçois	<i>Receive (thou)</i>
Qu'il reçoive	<i>Let him receive</i>
Recevons	<i>Let us receive</i>
Recevez	<i>Receive (ye or you)</i>
Qu'ils reçoivent	<i>Let them receive</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Que je reçoive	<i>That I may receive</i>
Que tu reçoives	<i>That thou mayst receive</i>
Qu'il reçoive	<i>That he may receive</i>
Que nous recevions	<i>That we may receive</i>
Que vous receviez	<i>That you may receive</i>
Qu'ils reçoivent	<i>That they may receive</i>

Que j'aie reçu, &c. *That I may have received*

Que je reçusse	<i>That I might receive</i>
Que tu reçusses	<i>That thou mightst receive</i>
Qu'il reçût	<i>That he might receive</i>
Que nous reçussions	<i>That we might receive</i>
Que vous reçussiez	<i>That you might receive</i>
Qu'ils reçussent	<i>That they might receive</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse reçu, &c. *That I might have received*

Conjugate like **recevoir**: *apercevoir, to perceive*; *concevoir, to conceive*; *devoir, to owe*; *percevoir, to collect*; *redevoir, to owe still*.

164 Verbs in *avoir* only are conjugated after *recevoir*; all others in *oir*, like *voir, savoir, &c.*, are irregular.

165 In all the verbs of the 3rd conjugation, the *c* of the root takes a cedilla (**11**) whenever it is followed by *o* or *u*; as *j'aperçois, j'aperçus*.

166 *Devoir* and *redevoir* take a circumflex accent on the *û* of the participle past: as *dû, redû*; but the accent is not used when the participle is feminine or plural: *due, dûes, dus*.

Read and translate.

J'aperçois les tours du château; les apercevez-vous? Vous les apercevrez bientôt, elles doivent être dans la direction du soleil couchant. Je conçois que vous ne les aperceviez pas si vous avez la vue basse. Nous reçûmes un panier de raisins la semaine

dernière, et nous *recevrons* un panier de pêches la semaine prochaine. Cet architecte *conçoit-il* votre plan? Je ne crois pas qu'il le *conçoive* très-bien, mais peut-être le *concevra-t-il* mieux quand je le lui aurai expliqué. Ils ont *déçu* mes plus chères espérances. Si nous montions sur cette colline, nous *apercevriions* la mer et les navires qui voguent vers l'Amérique. Je ne *savais* pas que vous *dussiez* tant d'argent; si je l'avais *su*, j'aurais été fort inquiet.

Exercise on the THIRD CONJUGATION.

Indicative present. I perceive¹ his house in the distance². Thou owest³ me twelve pounds⁴. My brother receives⁵ three hundred and fifty pounds (a year⁶). We do not perceive⁷ your intention. You receive your friends well. Do they not owe⁸ much gratitude⁹ to your father? Do those ladies receive visits?

Imperfect. I already conceived great (29⁵) hopes. Didst thou not perceive that star¹⁰? She received a letter every day. We received¹¹ our income¹² quarterly¹³. Did you not owe him two hundred guineas? They perceived the danger (soon enough¹⁴).

Past definite. I received a visit from¹⁵ your sister. Thou conceivedst a good plan. Did your brother receive my letter (in good time¹⁶)? We owed the victory to their courage. You perceived your error before¹⁷ me. They conceived a great horror for¹⁸ his conduct. We did not perceive the comet.

Future. I shall receive a parcel from France next¹⁹ week. He will easily perceive the beauties of that work²⁰. Will he not receive money²¹ in (a few²²) days? Shall we perceive the setting²³ of the sun? You will receive a reward²⁴ for your trouble²⁵. Will they not entertain²⁶ a bad²⁷ opinion of me?

Conditional present. I would receive his advice²⁸ with pleasure. Would her mother receive her⁹ with kindness²⁹? We ought³¹ to avoid³² the company of this man. You ought not to neglect³³ your lessons. They would receive your presents with joy.

Imperative. Receive my thanks³⁴ for all³⁵ thy kindness. Let us conceive the importance of our duties. Receive that stranger with kindness. Do not receive his letters.

Subjunctive present. Stay³⁶ with me until³⁷ I receive assistance³⁸. Although³⁹ he receives my letters, he never answers them. I do not think that we shall perceive the sun to-day. It is not likely⁴⁰ that you will receive your money. Is it possible that those men should owe more than (they possess⁴¹)?

Imperfect. (He wished me to⁴²) receive his money this morning, that⁴³ he might pay⁴⁴ the workmen⁴⁵. I wrote⁴⁶ to him (by post⁴⁷), that

¹ apercevoir ² lointain m. ³ devoir ⁴ livre ⁵ recevoir ⁶ par an ⁷ concevoir
⁸ devoir ⁹ reconnaissance f. ¹⁰ étoile f. ¹¹ percevoir ¹² revenu ¹³ tous les trois mois
¹⁴ assez tôt ¹⁵ de ¹⁶ à temps ¹⁷ avant ¹⁸ de ¹⁹ prochain ²⁰ ouvrage m. ²¹ de l'argent
²² quelques ²³ coucher m. ²⁴ récompense f. ²⁵ peine ²⁶ concevoir ²⁷ mauvais
²⁸ avis m. ²⁹ la ³⁰ bonté ³¹ devoir ³² éviter ³³ négliger ³⁴ remerciement ³⁵ tout
³⁶ Rester ³⁷ jusqu'à ce que ³⁸ des secours ³⁹ Quoique ⁴⁰ probable ⁴¹ ils ne possèdent
⁴² Il voulait que je ⁴³ afin que ⁴⁴ payer ⁴⁵ ouvrier ⁴⁶ écrire ⁴⁷ par la poste

he might receive my letter (in time⁴⁸). He wished⁴⁹ that we might conceive the depth⁵⁰ of his plan. Was it possible that they should not conceive my design⁵¹?

⁴⁸ à temps ⁴⁹ voudrait ⁵⁰ profondeur *f.* ⁵¹ dessein *m.*

167 FOURTH CONJUGATION IN **RENDRE**.

RENDRE to render.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.—Rendre, to render PAST.—Avoir rendu, to have rendered

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—Rendant, rendering PAST.—Rendu, rendered

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je rends	<i>I render</i>
Tu rends	<i>Thou renderest</i>
Il rend	<i>He renders</i>
Nous rendons	<i>We render</i>
Vous rendez	<i>You render</i>
Ils rendent	<i>They render</i>

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'ai rendu, &c.	<i>I have rendered</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je rendais	<i>I was rendering</i>
Tu rendais	<i>Thou wast rendering</i>
Il rendait	<i>He was rendering</i>
Nous rendions	<i>We were rendering</i>
Vous rendiez	<i>You were rendering</i>
Ils rendaient	<i>They were rendering</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais rendu, &c.	<i>I had rendered</i>

PAST DEFINITE.

Je rendis	<i>I rendered</i>
Tu rendis	<i>Thou renderedst</i>
Il rendit	<i>He rendered</i>
Nous rendîmes	<i>We rendered</i>
Vous rendîtes	<i>You rendered</i>
Ils rendirent	<i>They rendered</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus rendu, &c. *I had rendered*

Je rendrai	<i>I shall render</i>
Tu rendras	<i>Thou wilt render</i>
Il rendra	<i>He will render</i>
Nous rendrons	<i>We shall render</i>
Vous rendrez	<i>You will render</i>
Ils rendront	<i>They will render</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai rendu, &c. *I shall have rendered*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je rendrais	<i>I should render</i>
Tu rendrais	<i>Thou wouldst render</i>
Il rendrait	<i>He would render</i>
Nous rendrions	<i>We should render</i>
Vous rendriez	<i>You would render</i>
Ils rendraient	<i>They would render</i>

J'aurais rendu, &c. *I should have rendered*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rends	<i>Render (thou)</i>
Qu'il rende	<i>Let him render</i>
Rendons	<i>Let us render</i>
Rendez	<i>Render (ye or you)</i>
Qu'ils rendent	<i>Let them render</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Que je rende	<i>That I may render</i>
Que tu rendes	<i>That thou mayst render</i>
Qu'il rende	<i>That he may render</i>
Que nous rendions	<i>That we may render</i>
Que vous rendiez	<i>That you may render</i>
Qu'ils rendent	<i>That they may render</i>

Que j'aie rendu, &c. *That I may have rendered*

IMPERFECT.

Que je rendisse	<i>That I might render</i>
Que tu rendisses	<i>That thou mightst render</i>
Qu'il rendît	<i>That he might render</i>
Que nous rendissions	<i>That we might render</i>
Que vous rendissiez	<i>That you might render</i>
Qu'ils rendissent	<i>That they might render</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse rendu, &c.	<i>That I might have rendered</i>

168 Conjugate like **rendre**; attendre, *to expect*; confondre, *to confound*; défendre, *to forbid*; entendre, *to hear*; fondre, *to melt*; mordre, *to bite*; perdre, *to lose*; pendre, *to hang*; répandre, *to spill, to spread*; répondre, *to answer, to reply*; suspendre, *to suspend*; tondre, *to shear*; vendre, *to sell*, &c.

Read and translate.

Entendez-vous le bruit qui se fait dans la montagne? Non, je n'entends rien. Avez-vous répondu à la lettre de mon avocat? Non, j'y répondrai tout à l'heure. Nous attendions le courrier avec grande impatience, mais il a perdu ses dépêches en traversant la montagne. Je perdis dix mille francs d'un coup. Les Russes défendirent Sébastopol avec beaucoup de courage et de talent. J'attendrai que vous ayez refondu votre ouvrage pour en acheter un exemplaire. Mon père vendra sa voiture dès qu'il aura vendu son cheval. Mon oncle et mon cousin vous attendront à la station du chemin de fer, et là vous prendrez une voiture qui vous amènera jusqu'ici. La neige fondrait si le soleil paraissait. Vendriez-vous cette ferme si vous en trouviez un bon prix?

Exercise on the FOURTH

Indicative present. I expect¹ some friends this evening. Dost thou hear² what³ he says? He sells⁴ all his estates⁵. We do not answer⁶ for that gentleman. You defend⁷ your country. Those children lose⁸ their time. Do those hens (lay eggs⁹) every day?

Imperfect. I was waiting for¹⁰ your answer. He was spreading¹¹ terror everywhere. Was your sister corresponding¹² with him? We were condescending¹³ to their desires. You were defending him¹⁴ in vain. They (were melting into¹⁵) tears.

Past definite. I sold forty sheep and two cows. Didst thou lose three hundred thousand francs? Did she hear you? We (went down¹⁶) the hill. You did not return¹⁷ the salute. Did you not hang¹⁸ your coat in the hall¹⁹? They spilt²⁰ all the wine which was in the cellar²¹. We heard a great noise in the room.

¹ attendre ² entendre ³ ce que ⁴ vendre ⁵ terres ⁶ répondre ⁷ défendre ⁸ perdre
⁹ pondre ¹⁰ attendre ¹¹ répandre ¹² correspondre ¹³ condescendre ¹⁴ le ¹⁵ fondre
¹⁶ en ¹⁷ descendre ¹⁸ rendre ¹⁹ pendre ²⁰ vestibule m. ²¹ réfectoire ²² cave f.

Future. Shall I answer (in a few²²) words? He will render²³ you a great service. Will he not lose his place? Shall we shear²⁴ our sheep next week? You will hear his speech²⁵. They will sell their (country-house²⁶). Will not your dogs bite²⁷ me?

Conditional present. I would defend her²⁸ (at the peril²⁹) of my life. Wouldst thou pretend³⁰ (to be right³¹)? My brother would wait for an answer. Would she not suspend³² her judgment? We would defend that honest man. Would you not confound³³ his pride³⁴? The judges would render justice to everybody³⁵.

Imperative. (Come down³⁶) immediately. Let us expect our happiness from³⁷ ourselves. Let us wait (a little longer³⁸). Hear that noise. Do not lose your time. Let them sell their horses.

Subjunctive present. Speak louder³⁹, that I may hear what⁴⁰ you say. He always (goes out⁴¹), although we (forbid him⁴²) to do⁴³ it. Feed⁴⁴ that horse well, (in order that⁴⁵) you may sell it better. The general (wishes them⁴⁶) to defend the town (to the last⁴⁷). I do not wish⁴⁸ them to sell wine⁴⁹.

Imperfect. He wished⁵⁰ that I should not answer⁵¹. I wished that thou mightest hear the music of the new opera. In order that she (might correspond⁵²) with her friends. They would be sorry⁵³ that we should wait (the whole day⁵⁴). We (were afraid⁵⁵) you would lose your way⁵⁶. I wished that the children should not spill⁵⁷ (any water⁵⁸) on the carpet. Our master (would not allow us⁵⁹) to correspond with the other pupils.

²² en peu de ²³ rendre ²⁴ tondre ²⁵ discours *m.* ²⁶ maison de campagne ²⁷ mordre
²⁸ la ²⁹ au péril ³⁰ prétendre ³¹ avoir raison ³² suspendre ³³ confondre ³⁴ orgueil
m. ³⁵ tout le monde ³⁶ descendre ³⁷ de ³⁸ un peu plus longtemps ³⁹ plus haut
⁴⁰ ce que ⁴¹ sortir ⁴² lui défendre ⁴³ de faire ⁴⁴ Nourrir ⁴⁵ afin que ⁴⁶ vouloir
qu'ils ⁴⁷ jusqu'à l'extrémité ⁴⁸ vouloir que ⁴⁹ du vin ⁵⁰ vouloir ⁵¹ répondre
⁵² correspondre ⁵³ fâché ⁵⁴ toute la journée ⁵⁵ craindre que ⁵⁶ chemin ⁵⁷ répandre
⁵⁸ d'eau ⁵⁹ ne voulait pas que nous

Division of the FOURTH CONJUGATION.

169 The fourth conjugation, like the second, is divided into *four* classes, the Infinitive of which ends thus:—

The I. class ends in	{	-andre	<i>us</i>	Rép-andre	<i>to spread &c.</i>
		-endre	„	R-andre	<i>to render</i>
		-ondre	„	Rép-ondre	<i>to answer</i>
		-erde	„	P-erde	<i>to lose</i>
		-ordre	„	M-andre	<i>to bite</i>
The II. class ends in	{	-aître	„	Conn-aître	<i>to know</i>
		-oître	„	Cr-oître	<i>to grow</i>
The III. class ends in	{	-uire	„	Cond-uire	<i>to conduct</i>
The IV. class ends in	{	-aindre	„	Cr-aindre	<i>to fear</i>
		-eindre	„	P-eindre	<i>to paint</i>
		-oindre	„	J-oindre	<i>to join</i>

The *first class* is conjugated like *rendre* (167), the three others are as follows:—

MODEL-VERBS.

II. Class.	III. Class.	IV. Class.
INFINITIVE PRESENT.		
Connaitre, to know	Conduire, to conduct	Craindre, to fear
PARTICIPLE PRESENT.		
Connaissant, knowing	Conduisant, conducting	Craignant, fearing
PARTICIPLE PAST.		
Connu, known	Conduit, conducted	Craint, feared

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>I know &c.</i>	<i>I conduct &c.</i>	<i>I fear &c.</i>
Je connais	Je conduis	Je crains
Tu connais	Tu conduis	Tu crains
Il connaît	Il conduit	Il craint
Nous connaissons	Nous conduisons	Nous craignons
Vous connaissez	Vous conduisez	Vous craignez
Ils connaissent	Ils conduisent	Ils craignent

IMPERFECT.

<i>I knew</i>	<i>I was conducting</i>	<i>I was fearing</i>
Je connaissais, &c.	Je conduisais, &c.	Je craignais, &c.

PAST DEFINITE.

<i>I knew &c.</i>	<i>I conducted &c.</i>	<i>I feared &c.</i>
Je connus	Je conduisis	Je craignis
Tu connus	Tu conduisis	Tu craignis
Il connut	Il conduisit	Il craignit
Nous connûmes	Nous conduistmes	Nous craignîmes
Vous connûtes	Vous conduisîtes	Vous craignîtes
Ils connurent	Ils conduisirent	Ils craignirent

FUTURE.

<i>I shall know</i>	<i>I shall conduct</i>	<i>I shall fear</i>
Je connaîtrai, &c.	Je conduirai, &c.	Je craindrai, &c.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

<i>I should know</i>	<i>I should conduct</i>	<i>I should fear</i>
Je connaîtrais, &c.	Je conduirais, &c.	Je craindrais, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Know (thou)</i>	<i>Conduct (thou)</i>	<i>Fear (thou)</i>
Connais	Conduis	Crains
Connaissons	Conduisons	Craignons
Connaissez	Conduisez	Craignez

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

<i>That I may know &c.</i>	<i>That I may conduct &c.</i>	<i>That I may fear &c.</i>
Que je connaisse	Que je conduise	Que je craigne
Que tu connaisses	Que tu conduises	Que tu craignes
Qu'il connaisse	Qu'il conduise	Qu'il craigne
Que nous connaissions	Que nous conduisions	Que nous craignions
Que vous connaissiez	Que vous conduisiez	Que vous craigniez
Qu'ils connaissent	Qu'ils conduisent	Qu'ils craignent

IMPERFECT.

<i>That I might know</i>	<i>That I might conduct</i>	<i>That I might fear</i>
Que je connusse, &c.	Que je conduisisse, &c.	Que je craignisse, &c.

170 CLASS II.—Conjugate like *connaître* to know :—

Reconnaître, méconnaître ; paraître, *to appear* ; apparaître, comparaître ; croître,* *to grow*, accroître, décroître, recroître.

171 CLASS III.—Conjugate like *conduire* to conduct :—

Reconduire ; cuire, *to cook or bake*, recuire ; enduire, *to plaster* ; induire, *to induce, to lead* ; produire, *to produce*, reproduire ; réduire, *to reduce* ; séduire, *to tempt, to bribe* ; traduire, *to translate* ; construire, *to construct, to build* ; détruire, *to destroy* ; déduire, *to deduct* ; introduire, *to introduce*.

172 CLASS IV.—Conjugate like *craindre* to fear :—

Astreindre, *to tie down, to confine to* ; atteindre, *to reach* ; aveindre, *to take out, to fetch* ; ceindre, *to gird* ; contraindre, *to compel* ; enceindre, *to enclose* ; enfreindre, *to infringe* ; enjoindre, *to enjoin* ; éteindre, *to extinguish, put out* ; feindre, *to feign* ; joindre, *to join* ; oindre, *to anoint* ; peindre, *to paint* ; plaindre, *to pity* ; restreindre, *to limit* ; teindre, *to dye*.

Read and translate.

Connaissez-vous cet homme ? Non, je ne le connais pas. Conduisez-le au salon. Je craignais que vous ne fussiez malade. La rivière a crû considérablement depuis hier. Craignez-vous quelque danger ? L'impératrice paraissait très-fatiguée ; je ne

* The verb *croître* takes the circumflex accent on the *i* or *u*, as given in the following tenses and persons :—*Infinitive present.* Croître.—*Participle past.* Crû.—*Indicative present.* Je crois, tu crois, il croît.—*Past definite.* Je crus, tu crûs, nous crûmes, vous crûtes.—*Future.* Je croîtrai, &c.—*Conditional.* Je croitrais, &c.—*Imperative.* Crois.—*Imperfect.* Qu'il croît.

J'ai *pus reconnue* tout d'abord. Un incendie *détruisit* la fameuse bibliothèque d'Alexandrie. Nous *atteignîmes* le sommet du Vésuve à sept heures du matin. Ton père a été *contraint* de payer toute la somme. Ne *plaignez* pas son sort, car il l'a bien mérité. Je *peindrai* demain toute la matinée, et je vous *rejoindrai* dans l'après-midi. *Peignez*-vous à l'aquarelle ? Non, je *peins* à l'huile.

Exercise on the II. III. and IV. Classes.

Do you translate¹ Cæsar² or Virgil³ ? Take⁴ the ladies to the drawing-room. I do not fear⁵ his anger. They (were building⁶) a very large vessel. Did you translate that work⁷ ? I did not know⁸ your brother's house (26). The stars appear⁹ and disappear¹⁰ at every¹¹ moment. Introduce¹² that passage into your new work. At what o'clock do you (put out¹³) the candles ? Do you think¹⁴ that he will know me after an absence of several years ? He will not reach¹⁵ them to-day. I would introduce your son into (good company¹⁶), if he were here. We paint¹⁷ two hours (a day¹⁸), and our master does not complain¹⁹ of us. Fear²⁰ to displease²¹ your parents. The ivy (was growing²²) on the walls of the castle. Did they not appear surprised ? Your sister has disappeared all (at once²³). Do not infringe²⁴ the laws of the country. Those fields produce²⁵ a large quantity of wheat and potatoes. Your presence would produce a good effect. The mushrooms grow in one night. Your bread is not baked²⁶ enough. Do they know their misfortune ? Not yet.

¹ traduire ² Cæsar ³ conduire ⁴ craindre ⁵ construire ⁶ connaître ⁷ paraître
⁸ disparaître ⁹ tout ¹⁰ introduire ¹¹ éteindre ¹² croire ¹³ atteindre ¹⁴ la bonne
 compagnie ¹⁵ peindre ¹⁶ par jour ¹⁷ se plaindre ¹⁸ craindre ¹⁹ déplaire ²⁰ croître
²¹ tout à coup ²² enfreindre ²³ produire ²⁴ cuire.

Of Verbs used Interrogatively and with a Negation.

173 As we have already mentioned (138), a negation is generally expressed in French by two words, as follows:—

Ne.....pas	not
Ne.....point	not at all
Ne.....plus	no more, no longer
Ne.....jamais	never
Ne.....rien	nothing
Ne.....guère	not often, scarcely ever, but little
Ne.....personne*	nobody
Ne.....nul*	no, not any
Ne.....aucun*	
Ne.....nullement	not at all, by no means
Ne.....aucunement	
Ne.....nulle part*	nowhere
Ne.....ni	neither, nor
Ne.....que*	not...but (only)

* When the tense is compound, *personne*, *nul*, *aucun*, *nulle part*, and *que* come after the participle.

Exercise.

Je ne parle pas allemand. Votre sœur n'est point en état de sortir. Mon frère n'est plus à Paris. Je n'ai jamais vu la reine. Ne dites rien à mon père. Il ne pense guère aux pauvres. Je ne connais personne. Il n'a vu personne. Je ne vois aucun obstacle à cela. Il n'est nullement capable d'une pareille action. Ma mère ne va nulle part. Elle ne va ni aux soirées, ni aux diners. Il ne vend que du thé et du café. • Je n'ai acheté que deux chevaux.

174 When the verb is in the infinitive, *ne pas, ne point, ne plus, &c.*, are generally placed before the verb: *je voudrais NE PAS voir cela ; pour NE RIEN dire de plus.*

175 The English, in asking questions, generally make use of the expressions *do, does, did, &c.*, or of some tenses of the verb *to be*; but the French use the simple forms of the verb; as

<i>do you like music?</i>	<i> aimez-vous la musique ?</i>
<i>did she arrive in time?</i>	<i> arriva-t-elle à temps ?</i>
<i>are you reading Milton?</i>	<i> lisez-vous Milton ?</i>

176 The *e* mute, when it terminates the first person singular of the present of the indicative, takes an *acute accent* before the pronoun *je*, in order to soften the pronunciation; as

<i>aime-je ?</i>	<i>do I love ?</i>	<i> </i>	<i>parlé-je ?</i>	<i>do I speak ?</i>

177 When a verb has but one syllable in the first person singular of the present of the Indicative, and ends with two consonants, we make use of the expression *est-ce que*, for the sake of euphony: thus, instead of *rends-je ? cours-je ? mens-je ?* we say, *est-ce que je rends ? est-ce que je cours ? est-ce que je mens ?*

178 The use of *est-ce que* is not limited to monosyllables only, but it is frequently used in French with the tenses of the Indicative and Conditional, and then the nominative pronoun precedes the verb; as

<i>est-ce que vous l'avez vu ?</i>	<i>have you seen him ?</i>
<i>est-ce qu'il ne viendra pas ?</i>	<i>will he not come ?</i>

Principal tenses of PARLER, to speak.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

Negatively.	Interrogatively.	Interrog. with a Neg
<i>I do not speak &c.</i>	<i>Do I speak ? &c.</i>	<i>Do I not speak ? &c.</i>
<i>Je ne parle pas</i>	<i>Parlé-je ? (176)</i>	<i>Ne parlé-je pas ?</i>
<i>Tu ne parles pas</i>	<i>Parles-tu ?</i>	<i>Ne parles-tu pas ?</i>
<i>Il ne parle pas</i>	<i>Parle-t-il ?</i>	<i>Ne parle-t-il pas ?</i>
<i>Nous ne parlons pas</i>	<i>Parlons-nous ?</i>	<i>Ne parlons-nous pas ?</i>
<i>Vous ne parlez pas</i>	<i>Parlez-vous ?</i>	<i>Ne parlez-vous pas ?</i>
<i>Ils ne parlent pas</i>	<i>Parlent-ils ?</i>	<i>Ne parlent-ils pas ?</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>I was not speaking &c.</i>	<i>Was I speaking? &c.</i>	<i>Was I not speaking? &c.</i>
Je ne parlais pas	Parlais-je?	Ne parlais-je pas?
Tu ne parlais pas	Parlais-tu?	Ne parlais-tu pas?
Il ne parlait pas	Parlait-il?	Ne parlait-il pas?
Nous ne parlions pas	Parlions-nous?	Ne parlions-nous pas?
Vous ne parliez pas	Parliez-vous?	Ne parliez-vous pas?
Ils ne parlaient pas	Parlaient-ils?	Ne parlaient-ils pas?

PAST DEFINITE.

<i>I did not speak &c.</i>	<i>Did I speak? &c.</i>	<i>Did I not speak? &c.</i>
Je ne parlai pas	Parlai-je?	Ne parlai-je pas?
Tu ne parlas pas	Parlas-tu	Ne parlas-tu pas?
Il ne parla pas	Parla-t-il?	Ne parla-t-il pas?
Nous ne parlâmes pas	Parlâmes-nous?	Ne parlâmes-nous pas?
Vous ne parlâtes pas	Parlâtes-vous?	Ne parlâtes-vous pas?
Ils ne parlèrent pas	Parlèrent-ils?	Ne parlèrent-ils pas?

PAST INDEFINITE.

<i>I have not spoken &c.</i>	<i>Have I spoken? &c.</i>	<i>Have I not spoken? &c.</i>
Je n'ai pas parlé	Ai-je parlé?	N'ai-je pas parlé?
Tu n'as pas parlé	As-tu parlé?	N'as-tu pas parlé?
Il n'a pas parlé	A-t-il parlé?	N'a-t-il pas parlé?
Nous n'avons pas parlé	Avons-nous parlé?	N'avons-nous pas parlé?
Vous n'avez pas parlé	Avez-vous parlé?	N'avez-vous pas parlé?
Ils n'ont pas parlé	Ont-ils parlé?	N'ont-ils pas parlé?

N.B.—Conjugate the whole verb in the same manner.

279 Terminations of French Verbs.

INFINITIVE.

1 -er, 2 -ir, 3 -oir, 4 -re.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—-ant, in all verbs PAST.—-é, -i, -u, -t

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

1st. pers.	Singular	3rd.	1st.	Plural	3rd.
	2nd.	il, elle	1st.	2nd.	ils, elles
je	tu		nous	vous	
-e	-es	-e	-ons	-ez	-ent
-s	-s	-t			
-ds	-ds	-d			

IMPERFECT.

-ais -ais -ait -ions -iez -aient

-ai	-as	-a	-âmes	-âtes	-ârent
-is	-is	-it	-îmes	-îtes	-îrent
-us	-us	-ut	-ûmes	-ûtes	-ûrent
-ins	-ins	-int	-îmes	-îtes	-îrent

FUTURE.

-rai	-ras	-ra	-rons	-rez	-ront

CONDITIONAL.

-rais	-rais	-rait	-rions	-riez	-raient

IMPERATIVE.

No 1st pers.	-e or -s	-e	-ons	-ez	-ent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

-e	-es	-e	-ions	-iez	-ent

IMPERFECT.

-asse	-asses	-ût	-assions	-assiez	-assent
-isse	-isses	-ît	-issions	-issiez	-issent
-usse	-usses	-ût	-ussions	-ussiez	-ussent
-insse	-insse	-int	-inssions	-inssiez	-inssent

N.B.—The verbs which deviate from the above terminations will be found in the list of *Irregular and Defective Verbs* (206).

FORMATION OF TENSES.

180 The tenses of verbs are divided into *primitive* and *derivative*. The *primitive tenses* are those which serve to form all the others; they are

The	{	<i>Present of the Infinitive</i>	Aimer, &c.
		<i>Participle present</i>	Aimant, &c.
		<i>Participle past</i>	Aimé, &c.
		<i>Present of the Indicative</i>	J'aime, &c.
		<i>Past Definite</i>	J'aimai, &c.

The *derivative tenses* are those which are formed from the primitive.

Rules for the Formation of Tenses.

181 From the INFINITIVE PRESENT are formed: —

The *Future* and the *present* of the *Conditional*, by changing the terminations *r*, *oir*, *re*, into *rai* and *rais* :—

aime- <i>r</i>	j'aime- <i>rai</i>	j'aime- <i>rais</i>
fini- <i>r</i>	je fini- <i>rai</i>	je fini- <i>rais</i>
recev- <i>oir</i>	je recev- <i>rai</i>	je recev- <i>rais</i>
rend- <i>re</i>	je rend- <i>rai</i>	je rend- <i>rais</i>

182 From the **PARTICIPLE PRESENT** are formed :—

1 The three persons plural of the *Present of the Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ons*, *cz*, *ent* :—

aim- <i>ant</i>	nous aim- <i>ons</i>	vous aim- <i>ez</i>	ils aim- <i>ent</i>
finiss- <i>ant</i>	nous finiss- <i>ons</i>	vous finiss- <i>cz</i>	ils finiss- <i>ent</i> *
recev- <i>ant</i>	nous recev- <i>ons</i>	vous recev- <i>cz</i>	ils reçoiv- <i>ent</i> *
rend- <i>ant</i>	nous rend- <i>ons</i>	vous rend- <i>cz</i>	ils rend- <i>ent</i>

2 The *Imperfect of the Indicative*, and the *Present of the Subjunctive*, by changing *ant* into *ais* and into *e* :—

aim- <i>ant</i>	j'aim- <i>ais</i>	que j'aim- <i>e</i>
finiss- <i>ant</i>	je finiss- <i>ais</i>	que je finiss- <i>e</i> *
recev- <i>ant</i>	je recev- <i>ais</i>	que je reçoiv- <i>e</i> *
rend- <i>ant</i>	je rend- <i>ais</i>	que je rend- <i>e</i>

183 With the **PARTICIPLE PAST** are formed :—

All the compound tenses, by means of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être* ; as *j'ai aimé*, *il est aimé* ; *j'avais reçu*, *tu seras reçu*, &c.

184 From the **PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE** is formed :—

The *Imperative*, by suppressing the pronouns *je*, *nous*, *vous* ; as *j'aime*, *aime* ; *nous finissons*, *finissons*, *vous recevez*, *recevez*.

185 From the **PAST DEFINITE** is formed :—

The *Imperfect of the Subjunctive*, by adding *se* to the 2nd person of the singular :—

tu aimas	que j'aimas- <i>se</i>
tu finis	que je finis- <i>se</i>
tu reçus	que je reçus- <i>se</i>
tu rendis	que je rendis- <i>se</i>

* Except verbs of Class IV. of the second conjugation, and verbs of the third conjugation see pages 72 and 75.

PASSIVE VERBS.

186 An active or *transitive* verb (and a transitive verb only*) becomes *passive* by adding its *participle past* to every mood and tense of the auxiliary verb *être*: and the participle agrees, as an adjective (**42**), in gender and number with the subject to which it relates; as

le roi est estimé	<i>the king is esteemed</i>
la reine est estimée	<i>the queen is esteemed</i>
votre frère fut puni	<i>your brother was punished</i>
votre sœur fut punie	<i>your sister was punished</i>

The conjugation of all *passive* verbs being simply the conjugation of the auxiliary verb *être* in all its moods and tenses, to which is added the *participle past* of any transitive verb, two tenses only are given as a model.

PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE.

Je suis	}	aimé	<i>I am loved</i>
Tu es		or	<i>Thou art loved</i>
Il or elle est	}	aimée	<i>He or she is loved</i>
Nous sommes		aimés	<i>We are loved</i>
Vous êtes	}	or	<i>You are loved</i>
Ils or elles sont		aimées	<i>They are loved</i>

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'ai été aimé	<i>I have been loved</i>
Tu as été aimé	<i>Thou hast been loved</i>
Il a été aimé	<i>He has been loved</i>
Nous avons été aimés	<i>We have been loved</i>
Vous avez été aimés	<i>You have been loved</i>
Ils ont été aimés	<i>They have been loved</i>

NEUTER VERBS.

187 The neuter or *intransitive* verbs are conjugated like active verbs. Their compound tenses are generally formed with the auxiliary verb *avoir*; as *j'ai langui, j'avais dormi*; except some which are conjugated with *être*; as

Aller, to go	Devenir, to become
Arriver, to arrive	Éclorre, to blow open
Décéder, to die	Entrer, to enter

* NOTE.—The two intransitive verbs *obéir* to obey, *convenir* to agree, may become passive; as *le maître est obéi, la chose est convenue*.

Intervenir, *to intervene*Mourir, *to die*Naître, *to be born*Parvenir, *to succeed*Provenir, *to proceed*Revenir, *to come again*Survenir, *to come unexpectedly*Venir, *to come*

188 Some neuter verbs are conjugated with both *avoir* and *être*; with *avoir* they express an action, with *être* the state resulting from that action; such as *demeurer, descendre, disparaître, monter, rester, &c.* (See Syntax, p. 193.)

EXAMPLES.

With AVOIR.

Il a resté six jours à Paris
he stopped six days at Paris

Il a sorti un peu ce matin
he has been out a little this morning

With ÊTRE.

Il est resté à Paris
he remained at Paris

Il est sorti depuis une heure
he went out an hour ago

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

189 The reflective or *pronominal* verbs (**121**) are conjugated with *two* pronouns of the same person (or with a noun and a pronoun) throughout all their tenses, except in the Imperative mood. The pronouns are *je me, tu te, il* or *elle se, nous nous, vous vous, ils* or *elles se*.

They are conjugated in their simple tenses like the regular verbs given as models; but in their compound tenses they always require the auxiliary verb *être* TO BE, whereas in English they take TO HAVE, and the participle past must agree in gender and number with the objective pronoun, if it be *direct*; as

je me suis coupé
elle s'est coupée
son fils s'est coupé
sa fille s'est coupée

I have cut myself
she has cut herself
his son has cut himself
his daughter has cut herself

190 The French generally use the *reflective* form instead of the *passive*, as in English. Thus instead of saying *la France est divisée en 89 départements*, they prefer saying *'a France se divise, &c.*

191 Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb.

SE FLATTER, to flatter one's self.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.—Se flatter, to flatter one's self

PAST.—S'être flatté, to have flattered one's self

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—Se flattant, flattering one's self

PAST.—S'étant flatté, having flattered one's self

INDICATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

I flatter myself

Je me	flatt- <i>e</i>
Tu te	flatt- <i>es</i>
Il se	flatt- <i>e</i>
Nous nous	flatt- <i>ons</i>
Vous vous	flatt- <i>ez</i>
Ils se	flatt- <i>ent</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je me	flatt- <i>ais</i>
Tu te	flatt- <i>ais</i>
Il se	flatt- <i>ait</i>
Nous nous	flatt- <i>ions</i>
Vous vous	flatt- <i>iez</i>
Ils se	flatt- <i>aient</i>

PAST DEFINITE.

Je me	flatt- <i>ai</i>
Tu te	flatt- <i>as</i>
Il se	flatt- <i>a</i>
Nous nous	flatt- <i>âmes</i>
Vous vous	flatt- <i>âtes</i>
Ils se	flatt- <i>èrent</i>

FUTURE.

Je me	flatt- <i>erai</i>
Tu te	flatt- <i>eras</i>
Il se	flatt- <i>era</i>
Nous nous	flatt- <i>erons</i>
Vous vous	flatt- <i>erez</i>
Ils se	flatt- <i>eront</i>

Compound Tenses

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have flattered myself

Je me	suis	flatt- <i>é</i>
Tu t'	es	flatt- <i>é</i>
Il s'	est	flatt- <i>é</i>
Nous nous	sommes	flatt- <i>és</i>
Vous vous	êtes	flatt- <i>és</i>
Ils se	sont	flatt- <i>és</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Je m'	étais	flatt- <i>é</i>
Tu t'	étais	flatt- <i>é</i>
Il s'	était	flatt- <i>é</i>
Nous nous	étions	flatt- <i>és</i>
Vous vous	étiez	flatt- <i>és</i>
Ils s'	étaient	flatt- <i>és</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

Je me	fus	flatt- <i>é</i>
Tu te	fus	flatt- <i>é</i>
Il se	fut	flatt- <i>é</i>
Nous nous	fûmes	flatt- <i>és</i>
Vous vous	fûtes	flatt- <i>és</i>
Ils se	furent	flatt- <i>és</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je me	serai	flatt- <i>é</i>
Tu te	seras	flatt- <i>é</i>
Il se	sera	flatt- <i>é</i>
Nous nous	serons	flatt- <i>és</i>
Vous vous	serez	flatt- <i>és</i>
Ils se	seront	flatt- <i>és</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Simple Tenses.

Je me	flatt- <i>erais</i>
Tu te	flatt- <i>erais</i>
Il se	flatt- <i>erait</i>
Nous nous	flatt- <i>erions</i>
Vous vous	flatt- <i>eriez</i>
Ils se	flatt- <i>eraient</i>

Compound Tenses.

PAST.

Je me	serais	flatt- <i>é</i>
Tu te	serais	flatt- <i>é</i>
Il se	serait	flatt- <i>é</i>
Nous nous	serions	flatt- <i>és</i>
Vous vous	seriez	flatt- <i>és</i>
Ils se	seraient	flatt- <i>és</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Flatt-*e-toi* (90)
 Flatt-*ons-nous*
 Flatt-*ez-vous*

Flatter thyself
Let us flatter ourselves
Flatter yourself (or yourselves)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je me	flatt- <i>e</i>
Que tu te	flatt- <i>es</i>
Qu'il se	flatt- <i>e</i>
Que nous nous	flatt- <i>ions</i>
Que vous vous	flatt- <i>iez</i>
Qu'ils se	flatt- <i>ent</i>

PAST.

Que je me	sois	flatt- <i>é</i>
Que tu te	sois	flatt- <i>é</i>
Qu'il se	soit	flatt- <i>é</i>
Que nous nous	soyons	flatt- <i>és</i>
Que vous vous	soyez	flatt- <i>és</i>
Qu'ils se	soient	flatt- <i>és</i>

IMPERFECT.

Que je me	flatt- <i>asse</i>
Que tu te	flatt- <i>asses</i>
Qu'il se	flatt- <i>ât</i>
Que nous nous	flatt- <i>assions</i>
Que vous vous	flatt- <i>assiez</i>
Qu'ils se	flatt- <i>assent</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Que je me	fusse	flatt- <i>é</i>
Que tu te	fusses	flatt- <i>é</i>
Qu'il se	fût	flatt- <i>é</i>
Que nous nous	fussions	flatt- <i>és</i>
Que vous vous	fussiez	flatt- <i>és</i>
Qu'ils se	fussent	flatt- <i>és</i>

192 Reflective Verb, Conjugated

Negatively, Interrogatively, and Interrogatively with a Negation.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.—Ne pas s'habiller, *not to dress*

PAST.—Ne s'être pas habillé, *not to have dressed one's self*

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ne s'habillant pas *not dressing one's self*

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Ne s'étant pas habillé *not having dressed one's self*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

Negatively.

PRESENT.

I do not dress myself &c.
 Je ne m'habille pas
 Tu ne t'habilles pas
 Il ne s'habille pas
 Nous ne nous habillons pas
 Vous ne vous habillez pas
 Ils ne s'habillent pas

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have not dressed myself &c.
 Je ne me suis pas habillé
 Tu ne t'es pas habillé
 Il ne s'est pas habillé
 Nous ne nous sommes pas habillés
 Vous ne vous êtes pas habillés
 Ils ne se sont pas habillés

IMPERFECT.

I was not dressing myself
 Je ne m'habillais pas, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

I had not dressed myself
 Je ne m'étais pas habillé, &c.

PRETERIT.

I did not dress myself
 Je ne m'habillai pas, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

I had not dressed myself.
 Je ne me fus pas habillé, &c.

FUTURE.

I shall not dress myself
 Je ne m'habillerai pas, &c.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall not have dressed myself
 Je ne me serai pas habillé, &c.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should not dress myself
 Je ne m'habillerais pas, &c.

PAST.

I should not have dressed myself
 Je ne me serais pas habillé, &c.

193 When the Imperative of a reflexive verb is negative, the pronoun precedes the verb in all persons (92).

IMPERATIVE MOOD (92).

Ne t'habille pas
 Ne nous habillons pas
 Ne vous habillez pas

Do not dress thyself
Let us not dress ourselves
Do not dress yourselves

Interrogatively (143).

PRESENT.

Do I dress myself? &c.
 M'habillé-je? (176)
 T'habilles-tu?
 S'habille-t-il?
 Nous habillons-nous?
 Vous habillez-vous?
 S'habillent-ils?

PAST INDEFINITE.

Have I dressed myself? &c.
 Me suis-je habillé?
 T'es-tu habillé?
 S'est-il habillé?
 Nous sommes-nous habillés?
 Vous êtes-vous habillés?
 Se sont-ils habillés?

IMPERFECT.

Was I dressing myself?
M'habillais-je ? &c.

PRETERIT.

Did I dress myself?
M'habillai-je ? &c.

FUTURE.

Shall I dress myself?
M'habillerai-je ? &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Had I dressed myself?
M'étais-je habillé ? &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

Had I dressed myself?
Me fus-je habillé ? &c.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall I have dressed myself?
Me serai-je habillé ? &c.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Should I dress myself?
M'habillerais-je ? &c.

PAST.

Should I have dressed myself?
Me serais-je habillé ? &c.

Interrogatively with a Negation (143).

PRESENT.

Do I not dress myself?
Ne m'habillé-je pas ?
Ne t'habilles-tu pas ?
Ne s'habille-t-il pas ?
Ne nous habillons-nous pas ?
Ne vous habillez-vous pas ?
Ne s'habillent-ils pas ?

PAST INDEFINITE.

Have I not dressed myself?
Ne me suis-je pas habillé ?
Ne t'es-tu pas habillé ?
Ne s'est-il pas habillé ?
Ne nous sommes-nous pas habillés
Ne vous êtes-vous pas habillés ?
Ne se sont-ils pas habillés ?

IMPERFECT.

Was I not dressing myself?
Ne m'habillais-je pas ? &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Had I not dressed myself?
Ne m'étais-je pas habillé ? &c.

PRETERIT.

Did I not dress myself?
Ne m'habillai-je pas, &c.

PAST ANTERIOR.

Had I not dressed myself?
Ne me fus-je pas habillé ? &c.

FUTURE.

Shall I not dress myself?
Ne m'habillerai-je pas ? &c.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall I not have dressed myself?
Ne me serai-je pas habillé ? &c.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Should I not dress myself?
Ne m'habillerais-je pas ? &c.

PAST.

Should I not have dressed myself?
Ne me serais-je pas habillé ? &c.

Read and translate.

Je me couche ordinairement à onze heures. Nous nous promenons (559, 560) tous les jours vers trois heures de l'après-midi. Vous vous levez trop matin. 'Comment vous portez-vous ? Je me porte bien, merci. Ma sœur s'est enrhumée à la promenade. Ils se repentent de ce qu'ils ont fait. Comment s'appelle cette ville ? Je ne me rappelle pas le nom. Il se plaignait d'un mal de tête. Vous vous fatiguez trop, reposez-vous un peu. Nous nous proposons de vous écrire. Ils se réjouiront de votre succès. Vous êtes-vous lavé ce matin ? Non, je me suis levé trop tard. Je me fâcherai si cela vous arrive encore. Votre frère se souvient-il de ce que je lui ai dit ? Ne vous tromperiez-vous pas dans votre calcul ? On voulait que je me conformasse aux règles de la maison. Il s'était servi de votre recommandation pour obtenir la place. Vous vous seriez exposés au plus grand danger, si vous vous étiez promenés sur cette route.

Exercise on Reflective Verbs.*Simple Tenses.*

Indicative present. I rise¹ every morning at six o'clock. She (dresses herself²) at ten o'clock. We do not (amuse ourselves³). Do you remember⁴ what⁵ I told⁶ you yesterday ? They (torment themselves⁷) in vain. Are the children dressing themselves ?

Imperfect. I used to bathe⁸ every day in summer. The queen was walking⁹ in her park. Did he not laugh¹⁰ at you ? We were complaining¹¹ without reason. They (were warming themselves¹²) before the stove¹³. Were you not warming yourself ?

Past definite. I distrusted¹⁴ that man. Did his son behave¹⁵ well towards¹⁶ you ? We (rejoiced at¹⁷) his departure. They (were very well¹⁸) during the winter. Did you amuse yourself much ?

Future. I shall remember¹⁹ your birthday. Will he soon (fall asleep²⁰) ? We shall walk²¹ an hour before dinner. Will you not (interfere with²²) the conversation ? They will embark²³ the fifth of May. Will not your friends complain if you come ?

Conditional present. I should (enrich myself²⁴) by that trade. Would she (devote herself²⁵) to drawing and painting²⁶ ? We (would defend ourselves²⁷) with courage. (Would you not make your escape²⁸) if you could ? They would (expose themselves²⁹) to the greatest danger. Would your sisters remember my birthday ?

Imperative. Remember that thou art mortal. Do not rejoice to see your enemies unhappy. Rest³⁰ a little, my friend. Let us not (deceive ourselves³¹). Refresh³² yourselves.

¹ se lever ² s'habiller ³ s'amuser ⁴ se rappeler ⁵ ce que ⁶ dire ⁷ se tourmenter ⁸ se baigner ⁹ se promener ¹⁰ se moquer ¹¹ se plaindre ¹² se chauffer ¹³ poêle m. ¹⁴ se méfier de ¹⁵ se comporter ¹⁶ envers ¹⁷ se réjouir de ¹⁸ se porter très-bien ¹⁹ se souvenir de (162) ²⁰ s'endormir (160) ²¹ se promener ²² se mêler à ²³ s'embarquer ²⁴ s'enrichir ²⁵ s'appliquer à ²⁶ peinture, f. ²⁷ se défendre ²⁸ s'échapper ²⁹ s'exposer ³⁰ se reposer ³¹ se tromper ³² se rafraîchir

Subjunctive present. I must (inquire after³⁵) him. I wish⁴⁴ he (may devote himself³⁸) to this study with more zeal. We must³³ (accustom ourselves³⁷) to work. I do not think that you repent³⁹ of your errors. Do you think that they will perceive³⁹ our designs?

Imperfect. My father wished that I (should excuse myself⁴⁰). Was it necessary⁴¹ that we should trust⁴² those men? We wished you (to rejoice at⁴³) that news. It was required⁴⁴ that they should rise at daybreak⁴⁵.

³³ s'informer de ³⁴ vouloir que ³⁵ s'appliquer ³⁶ Il faut que ³⁷ s'accoutumer ³⁸ se repentir (160) ³⁹ s'apercevoir de ⁴⁰ s'excuser ⁴¹ Fallait-il ⁴² se fier à ⁴³ se réjouir de ⁴⁴ On exigeait ⁴⁵ au point du jour.

Compound Tenses.

Past indefinite. I have trusted to¹ your father. Has he (enriched himself²) at your expense³? You have not subscribed⁴ to the concert. These flowers have (faded away⁵).

Pluperfect. I had dressed myself too late. Had he not repented of his imprudence? We had confided⁶ too inconsiderately⁷ in⁸ him. Your father and mother had complained⁹ of you.

Past anterior. When I had (amused myself¹⁰), I returned¹¹ home¹². When we had approached¹³ him, he rose, and spoke thus¹⁴. You had submitted¹⁵ to their orders.

Future anterior. (As soon as¹⁶) I (shall have taken rest¹⁷), I will (begin again¹⁸). She will have (degraded herself¹⁹). We shall have (grown rich²⁰) before them. They will have seized²¹ their arms before daybreak.

Conditional past. I should have repented²² of my temerity. Would he have (devoted himself²³) to the service of his country²⁴? Those soldiers would have revolted²⁵.

Subjunctive past. Is it possible he should have (disguised himself²⁶) so cleverly²⁷? I do not believe²⁸ that she has fled²⁹. (It is feared³⁰) that they have (drowned themselves³¹). Do you believe that they have been deceived³² so grossly³³?

Pluperfect. He feared³⁴ that I should have (lost myself³⁵) in the forest. We would have wished³⁶ you to remember³⁷ that message³⁸. Would he have wished that you should have (meddled with³⁹) that affair?

¹ se fier à ² s'enrichir ³ dépens pl. ⁴ s'abonner ⁵ se faner ⁶ se confier ⁷ légèrement ⁸ à ⁹ se plaindre (172) ¹⁰ s'amuser ¹¹ revenir (162) ¹² chez moi ¹³ s'approcher de ¹⁴ ainsi ¹⁵ se soumettre (irr.) ¹⁶ Dès que ¹⁷ se reposer ¹⁸ recommencer ¹⁹ se dégrader ²⁰ s'enrichir ²¹ s'emparer de ²² se repentir ²³ se dévouer ²⁴ pays m. ²⁵ se révolter ²⁶ se déguiser ²⁷ si adroitement ²⁸ croire (irr.) ²⁹ s'enfuir (irr.) ³⁰ On craint ³¹ se noyer ³² se tromper ³³ si grossièrement ³⁴ Il craignait ³⁵ s'égarer ³⁶ vouloir que ³⁷ se rappeler ³⁸ commission f. ³⁹ se mêler de.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

194 The *impersonal* verbs are conjugated, according to the termination of their Infinitive mood, on one of the four

- conjugations ; they are used in the third person singular only ; as

neiger	<i>to snow</i>	il neige	il neigeait	il a neigé
geler	<i>to freeze</i>	il gèle	il gelait	il a gelé
pleuvoir	<i>to rain</i>	il pleut	il pleuvait	il a plu
tonner	<i>to thunder</i>	il tonne	il tonnait	il a tonné

195 Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs.

Y AVOIR, *there to be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. — Y avoir, *there to be*

PAST. — Y avoir eu, *there to have been*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. — Y ayant, *there being*

PAST. — Y ayant eu, *there having been*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Il y a
There is or are

IMPERFECT.

Il y avait
There was or were

PAST DEFINITE.

Il y eut
There was or were

FUTURE.

Il y aura
There will be

Compound Tenses.

PAST INDEFINITE.

Il y a eu
There has or have been

PLUPERFECT.

Il y avait eu
There had been

PAST ANTERIOR.

Il y eut eu
There had been

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Il y aura eu
There will have been

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Il y aurait
There would be

PAST.

Il y aurait eu
There would have been

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Qu'il y ait
That there may be

PAST.

Qu'il y ait eu
That there may have been

IMPERFECT.

Qu'il y eût
That there might be

PLUPERFECT.

Qu'il y eût eu
That there might have been

196 Examples of Y AVOIR, used negatively, interrogatively, &c.

Il n'y a pas	Y a-t-il ?	N'y a-t-il pas ?
Il n'y avait pas	Y avait-il ?	N'y avait-il pas ?
Il n'y eut pas	Y eut-il ?	N'y eut-il pas ?
Il n'y aura pas	Y aura-t-il ?	N'y aura-t-il pas ?

197 NOTE.—*Il est* is frequently used in the sense of *il y a*; as

Il est des moments critiques dans la vie.
There are critical moments in one's life.

198 FALLOIR, to be necessary, must.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.—Falloir, *to be necessary*

PAST.—Avoir fallu, *to have been necessary*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.—(None)

PAST.—Fallu, ayant fallu, *having been necessary*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Il faut
It is necessary (it must)

IMPERFECT.

Il fallait
It was necessary

PAST DEFINITE.

Il fallut
It was necessary

Compound Tenses.

PAST INDEFINITE.

Il a fallu
It has been necessary

PLUPERFECT.

Il avait fallu
It had been necessary

PAST ANTERIOR.

Il eut fallu
It had been necessary

FUTURE.

Il faudra
It will be necessary

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Il aura fallu
It will have been necessary

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Il faudrait
It would be necessary

PAST

Il aurait fallu
It would have been necessary

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Qu'il faille
That it may be necessary

PAST.

Qu'il ait fallu
That it may have been necessary

IMPERFECT.

Qu'il fallût
That it might be necessary

PLUPERFECT.

Qu'il eût fallu
That it might have been necessary

199 The English defective verb *must*, is expressed by the impersonal verb *falloir* in two ways; as

I must go	<i>il faut que je parte</i> or <i>il me</i>	} <i>faut partir</i>
Thou must go	<i>il faut que tu partes</i> or <i>il te</i>	
He must go	<i>il faut qu'il parte</i> or <i>il lui</i>	
We must go	<i>il faut que nous partions</i> or <i>il nous</i>	
You must go	<i>il faut que vous partiez</i> or <i>il vous</i>	
They must go	<i>il faut qu'ils partent</i> or <i>il leur</i>	

200 *Falloir* is generally followed by the subjunctive with *que*; as

il faut que j'écrive
il faudra qu'il parte

I must write
he will be obliged to go

201 *Falloir* generally implies *need* or *want*, and is then preceded by one of the objective pronouns, *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous*, *leur*, or followed by a substantive governed by the preposition *à*; as

il me faut un habit
il lui faut de l'argent
il vous faut du repos
il faut une robe à ma sœur

I want a coat
he wants money
you want rest
my sister wants a dress

202 The verb *Faire* is used impersonally, when applied

to the state of the weather, and with the words *jour, nuit, soleil, vent, &c.* ; as

il fait	} beau temps	it is	} fine weather
il faisait		it was	
il fit		it was	
il fera		it will be	
il ferait		it would be	
il fait chaud		It is warm	
il faisait froid		it was cold	
il fait jour		it is daylight	
il faisait nuit		it was night	
il fait du vent		it is windy	
il fait de l'orage		it is stormy	
il fait de la poussière, &c.		it is dusty, &c.	

203 But when (speaking of the weather) the subject to the verb *to be* is either *weather, day, night, morning, evening, &c.*, TO BE is expressed by *être*, and not by *faire* ; as

the weather is very fine
the evening was beautiful

le temps est très-beau
la soirée était belle

204 Many verbs in French are frequently used impersonally ; as

il arrive, *it happens*
il s'agit, *the matter is*
il convient, *it becomes*
il s'ensuit, *it follows*
il fait, *it is (202)*
il importe, *it matters*
il paraît, *it appears*

il semble, *it seems*
il se peut, *it is possible*
il sied, *it is becoming*
il suffit, *it is enough*
il reste, *there remains*
il me tarde, *I long*
il tient, *it depends*

Read and translate.

Combien y a-t-il d'années que vous habitez l'Angleterre ? Il y aura quinze ans au mois de janvier prochain. Je ne croyais pas qu'il y eût si longtemps. Il faut que je réponde à mon père aujourd'hui. Il me faut du papier et des enveloppes. Il fallait venir plus tôt. Y aura-t-il beaucoup de monde à la soirée de l'ambassadeur russe ? Il n'y avait pas plus de cent personnes la dernière fois. Y a-t-il loin d'ici au lac de Genève ? Je crois qu'il y a à peu près deux lieues. Faut-il monter pour y arriver ? Non, il nous faudra descendre. Croyez-vous qu'il faille prendre une voiture ? Non, je ne pense pas que nous en ayons besoin. Quel temps fait-il ? Il fait beaucoup de vent. Il aurait fallu prendre un parapluie.

Exercise on the Impersonal Verbs*Y avoir and Falloir.*

(Is there¹) any² fire in the drawing-room³? No; (there is not any⁴). I want⁵ a large house. My father must⁶ buy two horses. You must go⁷ and see her⁸. There has been a great accident. There were several⁹ men killed. There was one woman wounded¹⁰. It (was necessary¹¹) to carry¹² her on a litter¹³. Has it been necessary to (cut her¹⁴) leg? There were (more than¹⁵) fifty guns¹⁶ on the walls of the town. There will be a concert to-morrow night¹⁷. Will it be necessary (to get up¹⁸) early? There would be more¹⁹ pleasure if you were with us. It would be necessary to warn²⁰ him. There would have been more people²¹ if the weather had been fine. It would have been necessary (to send her²²) a carriage. Do you think²³ that there may be any²⁴ danger? I did not think that it was necessary to write (to him²⁵). Is there (any one²⁶) who (wishes for²⁷) water? What sort of weather is there²⁸ (**202**) it? Is it warm or cold? It is bad weather. It was very²⁹ windy yesterday, and to-day it is very dusty.

¹ Y avoir ² du ³ salon *m.* ⁴ n'y en avoir pas ⁵ me falloir ⁶ falloir que ⁷ aller
⁸ la ⁹ plusieurs ¹⁰ blessé ¹¹ falloir ¹² porter ¹³ brancard *m.* ¹⁴ lui couper ¹⁵ plus de
¹⁶ canon ¹⁷ soir ¹⁸ se lever ¹⁹ plus de ²⁰ prévenir ²¹ monde ²² lui
envoyer ²³ penser ²⁴ du ²⁵ lui ²⁶ quelqu'un ²⁷ désirer ²⁸ faire ²⁹ beaucoup de.

Idiomatic Tenses of Verbs.

205 The *idiomatic tenses* of verbs are formed with the assistance of *venir*, *aller*, and *devoir*.

As all verbs may be conjugated with the same idiomatic constructions, the verb *avoir* only is given as a model.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just had &c.

Je viens d'avoir
 Tu viens d'avoir
 Il vient d'avoir
 Nous venons d'avoir
 Vous venez d'avoir
 Ils viennent d'avoir

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I was going to have &c.

J'allais avoir
 Tu allais avoir
 Il allait avoir
 Nous allions avoir
 Vous alliez avoir
 Ils allaient avoir

PAST DEFINITE ANTERIOR.

I had just had &c.

Je venais d'avoir
 Tu venais d'avoir
 Il venait d'avoir
 Nous venions d'avoir
 Vous veniez d'avoir
 Ils venaient d'avoir

CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT.

I was to have &c.

Je devais avoir
 Tu devais avoir
 Il devait avoir
 Nous devions avoir
 Vous deviez avoir
 Ils devaient avoir

FUTURE PROXIMATE.

I am going to have &c.

Je vais avoir

Tu vas avoir

Il va avoir

Nous allons avoir

Vous allez avoir

Ils vont avoir

CONDITIONAL FUTURE.

I ought or should have &c.

Je devrais avoir

Tu devrais avoir

Il devrait avoir

Nous devrions avoir

Vous devriez avoir

Ils devraient avoir

FUTURE INDEFINITE.

I am to have &c.

Je dois avoir

Tu dois avoir

Il doit avoir

Nous devons avoir

Vous devez avoir

Ils doivent avoir

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

I ought or should have had &c.

J'aurais dû avoir

Tu aurais dû avoir

Il aurait dû avoir

Nous aurions dû avoir

Vous auriez dû avoir

Ils auraient dû avoir

Read and translate.

Je viens de voir vos sœurs dans la rue. L'ambassadeur vient de partir pour Vienne. Nous venions de déjeuner avec le général. Ces messieurs venaient de sortir lorsque j'ai reçu votre lettre. Je vais parler à son maître. Allez-vous faire une visite au duc? Nous allons nous embarquer lorsque le feu éclata dans le vaisseau. Vous ne devriez pas inviter cet homme-là chez vous; j'aurais dû vous le dire plus tôt. Vous allez avoir un congé aujourd'hui. Je devais partir ce matin pour Boulogne, mais le mauvais temps m'a retenu. N'allez-vous pas vous enrhummer, si vous laissez la fenêtre ouverte? Quand votre père doit-il publier son nouvel ouvrage? Va-t-il l'annoncer dans les journaux? N'allez-vous pas écrire à votre libraire?

Exercise on the Idiomatic Tenses.

I have just spoken¹ to his father. We have just arrived (from the²) Continent. The children have just had their dinner. My brother had just written³ to you about⁴ our affair. You had just passed when I saw⁵ him. I am going to learn⁶ German. Is he not going to buy a house? We are going to have an (evening party⁷). They are going to sell their furniture⁸. We are to go⁹ to the opera to-morrow evening. Is not your brother to marry¹⁰ my cousin? I was going to ask you to come¹¹ with us. We were going to take¹² our lesson when the queen arrived in the school. Are you not to see him this evening? Your son should ride¹³ every morning for his health. You should go to¹⁴ Scotland in summer. He ought to have given you something (to eat¹⁵).

¹ parler ² du ³ écrire ⁴ au sujet de ⁵ vis ⁶ apprendre ⁷ soirée f. ⁸ meubles
⁹ aller ¹⁰ épouser ¹¹ venir ¹² prendre ¹³ monter à cheval ¹⁴ en ¹⁵ à manger.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

206 All those verbs that are not conjugated in all their tenses and persons like the models already given, are called *irregular*.

Alphabetical List of the Irregular and Defective Verbs.

In the following list, all the *irregularities* of the verbs are given in full; but when the tenses of a verb are *regular*, the first person only is given.

The verbs printed in black letters, as **Absoudre**, are *defective* (133).

The tenses are placed in the following order :—

1	INFINITIVE	6	PAST DEFINITE
2	PARTICIPLE PRESENT	7	FUTURE
3	PARTICIPLE PAST	8	CONDITIONAL PRESENT
4	INDICATIVE PRESENT	9	IMPERATIVE
5	IMPERFECT	10	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT
	11	IMPERFECT	

ABATTRE, to pull down. Conjugated like *Battre*; which see.

Absoudre, to absolve. 2 Absolvant; 3 absous, *m.*, absoute, *f.* 4 J'absous, absous, absout; absolvons, absolvez, absolvant. 5 J'absolvais. 7 J'absoudrai. 8 J'absoudrais. 9 Absous; absolvons. -ez. 10 Que j'absolve.

Abstraire, to abstract; like *Traire*.

ACCOURIR, to run, to hasten; like *Courir*.

Accroître, only used in the infinitive with *faire*; as, *faire accroître*, to impose upon, to make one believe.

ACCUEILLIR, to receive, to welcome; like *Cueillir*.

ACQUÉRIR, to acquire. 2 Acquérant; 3 acquis. 4 J'acquiens, acquiers, acquiert; acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent. 5 J'acquerais. 6 J'acquies. 7 J'acquerrai.* 8 J'acquerrais. 9 Acquiens; acquérons, -ez. 10 Que j'acquière, -es, -e; que nous acquérions, -iez, qu'ils acquièrent. 11 Que j'acquiesse.

207 * NOTE.—The double *r* in the future and the conditional must be sounded strongly. This applies also to the verbs *courir* and *mourir*.

ADMETTRE, to admit; like *Mettre*.

ALLER, to go. 2 Allant; 3 allé (être allé or avoir été). 4 Je vais, vas, va; allons, allez, vont. 5 J'allais. 6 J'allai. 7 J'irai. 8 J'irais. 9 Va, qu'il aille; allons, allez, qu'ils aillent. 10 Que j'aille. 11 Que j'allasse.

208 **NOTE.**—We use both *être allé* and *avoir été* for the compound tenses of this verb. *Être allé* signifies *to be gone*, and *avoir été* signifies *to have been or returned*.
Ex.:—

elle est allée à Paris
elle a été deux fois à Paris

she is gone to Paris
she has been twice to Paris

209 *Aller* is often used as a reflexive verb with *en*; as *s'en aller* to go away.

INFINITIVE.

Simple Tenses.

S'en aller
S'en allant

Compound Tenses.

S'en être allé
S'en étant allé

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I am going away &c.
Je m'en vais
Tu t'en vas
Il s'en va
Nous nous en allons
Vous vous en allez
Ils s'en vont

PAST INDEFINITE.

I have gone away &c.
Je m'en suis allé
Tu t'en es allé
Il s'en est allé
Nous nous en sommes allés
Vous vous en êtes allés
Ils s'en sont allés

Je m'en allais, &c.
Je m'en allai, &c.
Je m'en irai, &c.
Je m'en irais, &c.
Que je m'en aille, &c.
Que je m'en allasse, &c.

Je m'en étais allé, &c.
Je m'en fus allé, &c.
Je m'en serai allé, &c.
Je m'en serais allé, &c.
Que je m'en sois allé, &c.
Que je m'en fusse allé, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Affirmatively.

Va-t'en
Qu'il s'en aille
Allons-nous-en
Allez-vous-en
Qu'ils s'en aillent

Negatively.

Ne t'en va pas
Qu'il ne s'en aille pas
Ne nous en allons pas
Ne vous en allez pas
Qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas

210 **NOTE.**—The Imperative *va* takes an *s* for the sake of euphony when followed by *y* adverb, or *en* pronoun; as *vas-y, vas-en chercher*. But when *y* precedes the present infinitive of a verb, *va* does not take *s*; as *va y porter mes ordres*. *Va* does not take *s* when followed by the preposition *en*; as *va en Italie*.

APPRENDRE, to learn;

like *Prendre*

ASSAILLIR, to attack, to assail, to assault. 2 Assaillant; 3 assailli. 4 J'assaill-e, -es, e; assaill-ons, -ez, -ent. 5 J'assaillais. 6 J'assaillais. 7 J'assaillirai. 8 J'assaillirais. 9 Assaille. 10 Que j'assaille. 11 Que j'assailisse.

ASSEOIR (s'), to sit down. 2 S'asseyant; 3 assis. 4 Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied; nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseyent. 5 Je m'asseyais. 6 Je m'assis. 7 Je m'assiérai or m'asseyerai. 8 Je m'assiérais or m'asseyerai. 9 Assieds-toi.

- qu'il s'asseye; asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous, qu'ils s'asseyent
 10 Que je m'asseye. 11 Que je m'assisse.

Asseoir is also frequently used as an active verb; as *asseyez cet enfant*.

Attraire, to allure (seldom used); like *Traire*.

Avenir or **Advenir**, to happen (an } like *Venir*.
 impersonal verb seldom used); }

BATTRE, to beat. 2 Battant; 3 battu. 4 Je bats, bats, bat, battons, battez, battent. 5 Je battais. 6 Je battis. 7 Je battrai. 8 Je battrais. 9 Bats, qu'il batte; battons, -ez, qu'ils battent. 10 Que je batte. 11 Que je battisse.

BÉNIR, to bless, is regular. (See 152.)

BOIRE, to drink. 2 Buvant; 3 bu. 4 Je bois, bois, boit; buv-ons, -ez, boivent. 5 Je buvais. 6 Je bus. 7 Je boirai. 8 Je boirais. 9 Bois, qu'il boive; buvons, -ez, qu'ils boivent. 10 Que je boive, -es, -e; que nous buvions, -ez, qu'ils boivent. 11 Que je busse.

BOUILLIR, to boil. 2 Bouillant; 3 bouilli. 4 Je bous, bous, bout; bouill-ons, ez, -ent. 5 Je bouillais. 6 Je bouillis. 7 Je bouillirai. 8 Je bouillirais. 9 Bous, qu'il bouille; bouillons, -ez, qu'ils bouillent. 10 Que je bouille. 11 Que je bouillisse.

Bouillir, as an active verb, is only used in the infinitive mood with *faire*; as *faites bouillir cette viande* boil that meat.

Braire, to bray. 4 Il brait; ils braient. 7 Il braira; ils brairont. 8 Il brairait; ils brairaient.

Bruire, to roar, to rustle. 2 Bruyant. 4 Il bruit 5 Il bruysait and bruissait; ils bruyaient and bruissaient.

Choir, to fall. Past part. *Chu*.

CIRCONCIRE, to circumcise; like *Médire*.

CIRCONSCRIRE, to circumscribe; like *Écrire*.

Clore, to close, to enclose. 2 Closant; 3 Clos. 4 Je clos, clos, clôt. 7 Je clorai. 8 Je clorais. 9 Clos. 10 Que je close.

COMBATTRE, to fight; like *Battre*.

COMMETTRE, to commit; like *Mettre*.

COMPLAIRE, to please; like *Plaire*.

COMPRENDRE, to understand; like *Prendre*.

COMPROMETTRE, to compromise; like *Mettre*.

CONCLURE, to conclude. 2 Concluant; 3 conclu. 4 Je concl-us, -us, -ut; concl-uons, -uez, -uent. 5 Je concluais. 6 Je conclus. 7 Je conclurai. 8 Je conclurais. 9 Conclus, qu'il conclue; concluons, -ez, qu'ils concluent. 10 Que je conclue. 11 Que je conclusse,

CONCOURIR, to *concur* ; like *Courir*.

CONFIRE, to *preserve* (in sweets), to } like *Médire*.
pickle (in vinegar) ;

CONQUÉRIR, to *conquer*, like *Acquérir*, but only used in the Infinitive and the following tenses :—*Participles*, Conquérant, conquis. *Past def.* Je conquis. *Subj. imperf.* Que je conquisse. *Also in the compound tenses.* J'ai conquis, &c

CONTREDIRE, to *contradict* ; like *Médire*.

CONTREFAIRE, to *counterfeit* ; like *Faire*.

CONVAINCRE, to *convince* ; like *Vaincre*.

CORROMPRE, to *corrupt* ; like *Rompre*.

COUDRE, to *sew*. 2 Cousant ; 3 Cousu. 4 Je couds, couds, coud ; cous-ons, -ez, -ent. 5 Je cousais. 6 Je cousis. 7 Je coudrai. 8 Je coudrais. 9 Couds, qu'il couse ; cousons, -ez, qu'ils cousent. 10 Que je couse. 11 Que je cousisse.

COURIR, to *run*. 2 Courant ; 3 couru. 4 Je cours, cours, court ; courons, -ez, -ent. 5 Je courais. 6 Je courus. 7 Je courrai (207). 8 Je courrais. 9 Cours, qu'il coure ; courons, -ez, qu'ils courent. 10 Que je coure. 11 Que je courusse.

CROIRE, to *believe*. 2 Croyant ; 3 cru. 4 Je crois, crois, croit ; croyons, croyez, croient. 5 Je croyais. 6 Je crus. 7 Je croirai, 8 Je croirais. 9 Crois, qu'il croie ; croyons, croyez, qu'ils croient. 10 Que je croie, croies, croie ; que nous croyions, croyiez, croient. 11 Que je crusse.

CUEILLIR, to *gather*. 2 Cueillant ; 3 cueilli. 4 Je cueill-e, -es, -e, cueill-ons, -ez, -ent. 5 Je cueillais. 6 Je cueillis. 7 Je cueillerai. 8 Je cueillerais. 9 Cueille, qu'il cueille ; cueillons, -ez, qu'ils cueillent. 10 Que je cueille. 11 Que je cueillisse.

DÉBATTRE, to *debate* ; like *Battre*.

DÉCHOIR, to *fall*, to *sink*, to *decline*. (No *pres. part.*) 3 Déchu. 4 Je déchois, déchois, déchoit ; déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient. 6 Je déchus. 7 Je décherrai. 8 Je décherrais. 10 Que je déchoie. 11 Que je déchusse.

DÉCLORE, to *unclose* ; like *Clore*.

DÉCOUDRE, to *unsew* ; like *Coudre*.

DÉCRIRE, to *describe* ; like *Écrire*.

DÉDIRE, to *contradict*, to *gainsay* ; like *Médire*.

DÉFAILLIR, to *decay*, to *fall*, to *faint*. *Past part.* Défailli—*Indic. plur.* Nous défail-*ons*, -ez, -ent. *Imperfect.* Je défail-*lais*. *Past def.* Je défail-*lis*.

DÉFAIRE, to *undo* ; like *Faire*.

- DÉMETTRE**, to dislocate, to dismiss ; like *Mettre*.
DÉPLAIRE, to displease ; like *Plaire*.
DÉPOURVOIR, to deprive. Past part. *Dépourvu*.
DÉSAPPRENDRE, to unlearn ; like *Prendre*.
DÉVÊTIR, to undress ; like *Vêtir*.
DIRE, to say, to tell. 2 Disant ; 3 dit. 4 Je dis, dis, dit ; disons, dites, disent. 5 Je disais. 6 Je dis. 7 Je dirai. 8 Je dirais. 9 Dis, qu'il dise ; disons, dites, qu'ils disent. 10 Que je dise. 11 Que je disse.
DISCOURIR, to discourse ; like *Courir*.
DISSOUDRE, to dissolve ; like *Absoudre*.
DISTRAIRE, to divert ; like *Traire*.
ÉBATTRE (s'), to be merry ; like *Battre*.
ÉBOUILLIR, to boil away. Past part. *Ébouilli*.
ÉCHOIR, to expire, to be due, to full, to happen. 2 Échéant ; 3 échu. 4 Il échoit or échet ; ils échoient or échéent. 6 J'échus. 7 J'écherrai. 8 J'écherrais. 10 Que j'échusse.
ÉCLORE, to blow ; to hatch. 3 Éclos. 4 Il éclot ; ils éclosent. 7 Il éclosa ; ils éclosent. 8 Il éclosait ; ils éclosaient. 10 Qu'il éclosé ; qu'ils éclosent.
ÉCRIRE, to write. 2 Écrivant ; 3 écrit. 4 J'écris, écris, écrit ; écri-vons, -vez, -vent. 5 J'écrivais. 6 J'écrivis. 7 J'écrirai. 8 J'écri-rai. 9 Ecris, qu'il écrive ; écri-vons, -vez, qu'ils écrivent. 10 Que j'écrive. 11 Que j'écrivisse.
ÉLIRE, to elect ; like *Lire*.
EMBOIRE, to imbibe ; like *Boire*.
ÉMOUDRE, to whet ; like *Moudre*.
ÉMOUVOIR, to stir up ; like *Mouvoir*.
ENCLORE, to enclose ; like *Clore*.
ENCOURIR, to incur ; like *Courir*.
ENFUIR (s'), to fly ; like *Fuir*.
ENQUÉRIR (s'), to inquire ; like *Acquérir*.
ENSUIVRE (s'), to follow (Impers.) ; like *Suivre*.
ENTRELUIRE, to glimmer ; like *Luire*.
ENTREMETTRE (s'), to interpose ; like *Mettre*.
ENTREPRENDRE, to undertake ; like *Prendre*.

ENTREVOIR, to have a glimpse of; like *Voir*.

ENVOYER, to send. 2 Envoyant; 3 envoye. 4 J'envoie, -es, -e; envoy-ons, -ez, envoient. 5 J'envoyais. 6 J'envoyai. 7 J'enverrai. 8 J'enverrais. 9 Envoie, qu'il envoie; envoy-ons, -ez, qu'ils envoient. 10 Que j'envoie, -es, -e; que nous envoy-ions, -iez, envoient. 11 Que j'envoyasse.

ÉPRENDRE (s'), to be smitten; like *Prendre*; but seldom used except in the past participle, *épris*, m., *éprise*, f.

ÉQUIVALOIR, to be equivalent; like *Valoir*

EXCLURE, to exclude; like *Conclure*.

EXTRAIRE, to extract; like *Traire*.

FAILLIR, to fail; to err; to be near. 2 Faillant; 3 failli. *Past. def.* Je faillis. Used in the compound tenses with *avoir*.

FAIRE, to make, to do. 2 Faisant; 3 fait. 4 Je fais, fais, fait; faisons, faites, font. 5 Je faisais. 6 Je fis. 7 Je ferai. 8 Je ferais. 9 Fais, qu'il fasse; faisons, faites, qu'ils fassent. 10 Que je fasse. 11 Que je fisse.

We may write in the pres. of the Ind. *fesons* or *faisons*; in the Imperf. *fesais*, &c., or *faisais*; and in the pres. part. *fesant* or *faisant*.

FÉRIR, to strike, is only used in the expression *sans coup férir*, without striking a blow.

FLEURIR. (See 156.)

FORCLORE, to debar. *Past part.* *Forclos*. No other tense.

FORFAIRE, to forfeit. *Past part.* only, *Forfait*.

FRIRE, to fry. *Past part.* *frit*. *Je fris, tu fris, il frit* (no plur.). *Fut.* *Je frirai*. *Cond.* *Je frirais*. *Imperat.* 2nd pers. only, *fris*. In all the other tenses it is conjugated with the verb *faire* and the infinitive *frire*; as *je faisais frire*; *nous faisons frire*, &c.

FUIR, to fly, to shun. 2 Fuyant; 3 fui. 4 Je fu-is, -is, -it; fuy-ons, -ez, fuient. 5 Je fuyais. 6 Je puis. 7 Je fuirai. 8 Je fuirais. 9 Puis, qu'il fuie; fuy-ons, -ez, qu'ils fuient. 10 Que je fuie. 11 Que je fusse.

The present and imperfect of the subjunctive are seldom used; they are supplied by *que je prenne la fuite*; *que je prisse la fuite*.

GÉSIR, to lie. *Gisant*. *Ind. pres.* Il gît; nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent. *Imperf.* Je gis-ais, -ais, -ait; nous gis-ions, -iez, -aient. The rest is obsolete. *Ci gît* is used on monumental inscriptions for *hic jacet*, here lies.

Gisant, gisons, gisez, gisent; je gisais, &c., are pronounced as if written with a double s: as *gisasant, je gissais, &c.*

HAÏN, to hate. 2 Haïssant; 3 haï. 4 Je hais, hais, haït; haïss-ons,

-ez, -ent. 5 Je haïssais. 6 Je haïs (*seldom used*). 7 Je haïrai. 8 Je haïrais. 9 Hais; haïss-*ons*, -ez. 10 Que je haïsse. 11 Que je haïsse.

HONNIR, to dishonour (obsolete). Past part. *Honni*; as *Honni soit qui mal y pense*.

INSCRIRE, to inscribe; like *Écrire*.

INTERDIRE, to forbid, to interdict; like *Médire*.

INTERROMPRE, to interdict; like *Rompre*.

ISSIR, to issue (obsolete). Past part. *Issu*.

LIRE, to read. 2 Lisant; 3 lu. 4 Je lis, lis, lit; lis-*ons*, -ez, -ent. 5 Je lisais. 6 Je lus. 7 Je lirai. 8 Je lirais. 9 Lis, qu'il lise; lis-*ons*, -ez, qu'ils lisent. 10 Que je lise. 11 Que je lusse.

LUIRE, to shine, to glitter. 2 Luisant; 3 lui. 4 Je luis, luis, luit; luis-*ons*, lue-*z*, luit. 5 Je luisais. (No past def.) 7 Je luirai. 8 Je luirais. 9 Luis. 10 Que je luisse. (No imperf. subj.)

MAUDIRE, to curse. 2 Maudissant; 3 maudit. 4 Je maudi-*s*, -*t*; -*ssons*, -*ssez*, -*ssent*. 5 Je maudissais. 6 Je maudis. 7 Je maudirai. 8 Je maudirais. 9 Maudi-*s*, -*ssons*, -*ssez*. 10 Que je maudisse. 11 Que je maudisse.

MÉDIRE, to slander. 2 Médisant; 3 médit. 4 Je médi-*s*, -*s*, -*t*; -*sons*, -*sez*, -*sent*. 5 Je médisais. 6 Je médis. 7 Je médirai. 8 Je médirais. 9 Médi-*s*, -*sons*, -*sez*. 10 Que je médise. 11 Que je médisse.

MÉFAIRE, to do wrong; used only in the Inf.

MÉPRENDRE (SE), to mistake; like *Prendre*.

MESSEJOIR, not to become; like *Seoir*.

METTRE, to put. 2 Mettant; 3 mis. 4 Je mets, mets, met; mett-*ons*, -ez, -ent. 5 Je mettais. 6 Je mis. 7 Je mettrai. 8 Je mettrai. 9 Mets, qu'il mette; mett-*ons*, -ez, qu'ils mettent. 10 Que je mette. 11 Que je misse.

MOUDRE, to grind. 2 Moulant; 3 moulu. 4 Je mouds, mouds, moud; moul-*ons*, -ez, -ent. 5 Je moulais. 6 Je moulus. 7 Je moudrai. 8 Je moudrais. 9 Mouds, qu'il moule; moul-*ons*, -ez, qu'ils moulent. 10 Que je moule. 11 Que je moulusse.

MOURIR, to die. 2 Mourant; 3 mort. 4 Je meurs, meurs, meurt; mour-*ons*, -ez, meurent. 5 Je mourais. 6 Je mourus. 7 Je mourrai (207). 8 Je mourrais. 9 Meurs, qu'il meure; mour-*ons*, -ez, qu'ils meurent. 10 Que je meure. 11 Que je mourusse.

MOUVOIR, to move. 2 Mouvant; 3 mû. 4 Je meus, meus, meut; mouv-*ons*, -ez, meuvent. 5 Je mouvais. 6 Je mus. 7 Je mouvrai. 8 Je mouvrais. 9 Meus, qu'il meuve; mouv-*ons*, -ez, qu'ils meuvent. 10 Que je meuve. 11 Que je musse.

NAÎTRE, *to be born, &c.* 2 Naissant; 3 né. 4 Je nais. nais, naît; naiss-ons, -ez, -ent. 5 Je naissais. 6 Je naquis. 7 Je naîtrai. 8 Je naîtrais. 9 Nais; naiss-ons, -ez. 10 Que je naisse. 11 Que je naquisse.

NUIRE, *to hurt*; like *Conduire*, except the past part., *nui*.

OMETTRE, *to omit*; like *Mettre*.

OUIR, *to hear*; obsolete except in the past part., *ouï*, followed by *dire*, as *j'ai ouï dire*.

PAÎTRE, *to graze, to feed.* 2 Paissant; 3 pu (seldom used). 4 Je pais, pais, paît; paiss-ons, -ez, -ent. 5 Je paissais. 6 (No past def.). 7 Je paîtrai. 8 Je paîtrais. 9 Pais; paiss-ons, -ez. 10. Que je paise. 11 (No imperf. subj.)

PARCOURIR, *to run over*; like *Courir*.

PARFAIRE, *to complete*; like *Faire*.

PERMETTRE, *to permit*; like *Mettre*.

PLAIRE, *to please.* 2 Plaisant; 3 plu. 4 Je plais, plais, plaît; plaiss-ons, -ez, -ent. 5 Je plaisais. 6 Je plus. 7 Je plairai. 9 Plais; plaiss-ons, -ez. 10 Que je plaise. 11 Que je plusse.

PLEUVOIR, *to rain.* (Impersonal.) 2 Pleuvant; 3 plu. 4 Il pleut 5 Il pleuvait. 6 Il plut. 7 Il pleuvra. 8 Il pleuvrait. 9 (No imperative). 10 Qu'il pleuve. 11 Qu'il plût.

POINDRE, *to dawn.* Fut. *Il poindra*.

POURSUIVRE, *to pursue*; like *Suivre*.

POURVOIR, *to provide.* 2 Pourvoyant; 3 pourvu. 4 Je pourvoi-s, -s, -t; pourvoy-ons, -ez, pourvoient. 5 Je pourvoyais. 6 Je pourvus. 7 Je pourvoirai. 8 Je pourvoirais. 9 Pourvois, qu'il pourvoie; pourvoy-ons, -ez, qu'ils pourvoient. 10 Que je pourvoie. 11 Que je pourvusse.

POUVOIR, *to be able.* 2 Pouvant; 3 pu. 4 Je puis or peux, peux, peut; pouv-ons, -ez, peuvent. 5 Je pouvais. 6 Je pus. 7 Je pourrai. 8 Je pourrais. 9 (No imperative). 10 Que je puisse. 11 Que je pusse.

PRÉDIRE, *to foretell*; like *Médire*.

PRENDRE, *to take.* 2 Prenant; 3 pris. 4 Je prends, prends, prend; prenons, prenez, prennent. 5 Je prenais. 6 Je pris. 7 Je prendrai. 8 Je prendrais. 9 Prends, qu'il prenne; prenons, prenez, qu'ils prennent. 10 Que je prenne. 11 Que je prisse.

PRESCRIRE, *to prescribe*; like *Écrire*.

PRÉVALOIR, *to prevail*; like *Valoir*, except the *Subj. Pres.* Que je prévale, -es, -e; que nous préval-ions, -iez, qu'ils prévalent.

PRÉVOIR, *to foresee*; like *Voir*, except the *Future*. Je prévoirai, prévoiras, prévoira; prévoi-rons, -rez, -ront; and the *Condit.* Je prévoirais, &c.

- PROMETTRE**, to promise ; like *Mettre*.
- Promouvoir**, to promote. Past part. *Promu*. This verb is seldom used except in the inf., and in the compound tenses ; as *il a été promu*.
- PROSCRIRE**, to proscribe ; like *Écrire*.
- QUÉRIR**, to fetch. Used only in the inf., after *aller*, *venir*, *envoyer* ; as *aller quérir*.
- RABÂTRE**, to abate ; like *Bâtre*.
- RAPPRENDRE**, to learn again ; like *Prendre*.
- RASSEOIR (SE)**, to sit again ; like *Asseoir*.
- Ravoir**, to have again. No other tense.
- REBATTRE**, to beat again ; like *Battre*.
- REBOIRE**, to drink again ; like *Boire*.
- REBOUILLIR**, to boil again ; like *Bouillir*.
- Reclure**, to shut up. Used only in the inf., and in the compound tenses with the past part., *reclus*.
- Reconquérir**, to conquer again ; like *Conquérir*.
- RECOUDRE**, to sew again ; like *Coudre*.
- RÉCRIRE**, to write again ; like *Écrire*.
- RECUEILLIR**, to reap, &c. ; like *Cueillir*.
- REDÉFAIRE**, to undo again ; like *Faire*.
- REDIRE**, to say again ; like *Dire*.
- REÉLIRE**, to re-elect ; like *Lire*.
- REFAIRE**, to do again ; like *Faire*.
- REFLEURIR**. (See *Fleurir*.)
- RELIRE**, to read again ; like *Lire*.
- Reluire**, to shine ; like *Luire*.
- REMETTRE**, to put again ; like *Mettre*.
- REMOUDRE**, to grind again ; like *Moudre*.
- RENAÎTRE**, to be born again ; like *Naitre*.
- Rentraire**, to darn ; like *Traire*.
- RENOYER**, to send back ; like *Envoyer*.
- REPAÎTRE**, to feed ; like *Paitre*.
- REPRENDRE**, to take again ; like *Prendre*.
- REPROMETTRE**, to promise again ; like *Mettre*.

REQUÉRIR, to require ; like *Acquérir*.

RÉSOUTRE, to resolve. 2 Résolvant ; 3 résolu. 4 Je résou-s, s, -t ; resolv-ons, -ez, -ent. 5 Je résolvais. 6 Je résolus. 7 Je résoudrei. 8 Je résoudrais. 9 Résous, qu'il résolve ; resolv-ons, -ez, qu'ils résolvent. 10 Que je résolve. 11 Que je résolusse.

When *résoudre* signifies to change into, its past part. is *résous*, and has no feminine.

RETRAIRE, to redeem ; like *Traire*.

REVALOIR, to return like for like ; like *Valoir*.

REVÊTIR, to clothe ; like *Vêtir*.

REVIVRE, to revive ; like *Vivre*.

REVOIR, to see again ; like *Voir*.

RIRE, to laugh. 2 Riant ; 3 ri. 4 Je ris, ris, rit ; rions, riez, rient. 5 Je riaais. 6 Je ris. 7 Je rirai. 8 Je rirais. 9 Ris, qu'il rie ; rions, riez, qu'ils rient. 10 Que je rie. 11 Que je risse.

ROMPRE, to break. 2 Rompant ; 3 rompu. 4 Je romps, romps, rompt ; romp-ons, -ez, -ent. 5 Je rompais. 6 Je rompis. 7 Je romprai. 8 Je romprais. 9 Romps, qu'il rompe ; romp-ons, -ez, qu'ils rompent. 10 Que je rompe. 11 Que je rompisse.

SAILLIR, to project. 2 Saillant ; 3 sailli. Only used in the following forms :—4 Il saille ; ils saillent. 5 Il saillait ; ils saillaient. 6 (No past def.) 7 Il saillera ; ils sailleront. 8 Il saillerait ; ils sailleraient. 10 Qu'il saille. 11 Qu'il saillît.

SATISFAIRE, to satisfy ; like *Faire*.

SAVOIR, to know. 2 Sachant ; 3 su. 4 Je sais, sais, sait ; sav-ons, -ez, -ent. 5 Je savais. 6 Je sus. 7 Je saurai. 8 Je saurais. 9 Sache, sachez, sachez. 10 Que je sache. 11 Que je susse.

Difference between *savoir* and *connaître*. (Vide No. 556.)

SECOURIR, to relieve, to help ; like *Courir*.

SEoir, to become, to fit. Impersonal, used only in the following tenses :—*Seyant*.—Il sied ; ils sièent.—Il seyait ; ils seyaient.—Il siéra ; ils sièront.—Il sièrait, ils sièraient.—Ex. : *Cet habit vous sied bien*, this coat becomes you well.

SEoir, to sit, has only the two participles, *Séant*, sitting, and *Sis*, m., *Sise*, f., situated.

SOUMETTRE, to submit ; like *Mettre*.

SOURdre, to spring out. Il sourd ; ils sourdent.

SOURIRE, to smile ; like *Rire*.

SOUSCRIRE, to subscribe ; like *Écrire*.

SOUSTRAIRE, to subtract ; like *Traire*.

SUFFIRE, to suffice. 2 Suffisant ; 3 suffi. 4 Je suffis, *suffis, suffit* ; *suffisons, -ez, -sent.* 5 Je suffisais. 6 Je suffis. 7 Je *suffirai.* 8 Je *suffirais.* 9 Suffis, qu'il suffise ; *suffi-sons, -ez, qu'ils suffisent.* 10 Que je suffisse. 11 Que je *suffisse.*

SUIVRE, to follow. 2 Suivant ; 3 suivi. 4 Je suis, *suis, suit* ; *suiv-ons, -ez, -ent.* 5 Je suivais. 6 Je suivis. 7 Je *suivrai.* 8 Je *suivrais.* 9 Suis, qu'il suive ; *suiv-ons, -ez, qu'ils suivent.* 10 Que je suive. 11 Que je *suivisse.*

SURFAIRE, to surcharge ; like *Faire.*

SURGIR, to land, to arise. Frequently used in the 3rd person of some tenses, by modern writers, in the sense of *s'élever, naître* ; as *surgissant ; il surgit ; il surgissait.*

SURPRENDRE, to surprise ; like *Prendre.*

SURSEOIR, to suspend. 2 Sursoyant ; 3 sursis. 4 Je *sursoi-s, -s, -t* ; *sursoy-ons, -ez, sursoi-ent.* 5 Je *sursoyais.* 6 Je *sursis.* 7 Je *surseoirai.* 8 Je *surseoirais.* 9 *Sursois.* 10 Que je *sursoie.* 11 Que je *sursisse.*

SURVIVRE, to survive ; like *Vivre.*

TAIRE, to conceal ; like *Plaire.*

TISSER, to weave, is regular, except in the past part., *tissu, m., tissue, f.*

TRAIRE, to milk. 2 Trayant ; 3 trait. 4 Je *trai-s, -s, -t* ; *tray-ons, -ez, traient.* 5 Je *trayais.* 6 (No past def.). 7 Je *trairai.* 8 Je *trairais.* 9 Trais, qu'il traie ; *tray-ous, -ez, qu'ils traient.* 10 Que je traie. 11 (No imperf. of the subj.).

TRANSCRIRE, to transcribe ; like *Écrire.*

TRANSMETTRE, to transmit ; like *Mettre.*

TRESSAILLIR, to start ; like *Assaillir.*

VAINCRE, to vanquish. 2 Vainquant ; 3 vaincu. 4 Je *vaincs, vainces, vainc* ; *vainq-uons, -uez, -uent.* 5 Je *vainquais.* 6 Je *vainquis.* 7 Je *vaincrai.* 8 Je *vaincrais.* 9 *Vaincs, qu'il vainque ; vainq-uons, -uez, -uent.* 10 Que je *vainque.* 11 Que je *vainquisse.*

VALOIR, to be worth. 2 Valant ; 3 valu. 4 Je *vaux, vaux, vaut* ; *val-ons, -ez, -ent.* 5 Je *valais.* 6 Je *valus.* 7 Je *vaudrai.* 8 Je *vaudrais.* 9 (No Imperative). 10 Que je *vaill-e, -cs, -e ; valions, valiez, vaillent.* 11 Que je *valusse.*

VÊTIR, to dress, to clothe. 2 Vêtant ; 3 vêtu. 4 Je *vêts, vêts, vêt* ; *vêt-ons, -ez, -ent.* 5 Je *vétais.* 6 Je *vêtis.* 7 Je *vêtirai.* 8 Je *vêtirais.* 9 Vêts, qu'il vête ; *vêt-ons, -ez, -ent.* 10 Que je vête. 11 Que je *vêtisse.*

VIVRE, to live. 2 Vivant ; 3 vécu. 4 Je *vis, vis, vit ; viv-ons, -ez, -ent.* 5 Je *vivais.* 6 Je *vécus.* 7 Je *vivrai.* 8 Je *vivrais.* 9 *Vis,*

qu'il vive ; viv-*ons*, -*ez*, qu'ils vivent. 10 Que je vive. 11 Que je vécusse.

VOIR, *to see*. 2 Voyant ; 3 vu. 4 Je vois, vois, voit ; voy-*ons*, -*ez*, voient. 5 Je voyais. 6, Je vis. 7 Je verrai. 8 Je verrais. 9 Voie ; voy-*ons*, -*ez*, qu'ils voient. 10 Que je voi-*e*, -*es*, -*e* ; voy-*ions*, -*iez*, voient. 11 Que je visse.

VOULOIR, *to be willing, to wish*. 2 Voulant ; 3 voulu. 4 Je veux, veux, veut ; voul-*ons*, -*ez*, veulent. 5 Je voulais. 6 Je voulais. 7 Je voudrai. 8 Je voudrais. 9 Veuille ; qu'il veuille ; veuillez, qu'ils veuillez. 10 Que je veuill-*e*, -*es* -*e* ; voul-*ions*, -*iez*, veulent. 11 Que je voulusse.

Veuillex, in the Imperative, is used in the sense of *be so good* ; as *veuillex lui dire que je l'attends* ; but when we command, we use *veux, voulons, voulez*, which are seldom used ; as, *Faites un effort, voulez seulement*.—LAMENNAIS.

EXERCISE ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

First and Second Conjugations.

Read and translate.

1 Où *allez-vous* ? Je *vais* à Londres. Les chagrins montent sur le trône et *vont* s'asseoir à côté du souverain. S'il est vrai que le temps *aille* sans cesse, il n'est pas moins vrai que nous *allons* sans cesse avec lui. *Irons-nous* bientôt à la campagne ? Il faudrait que j'*allasse* à Paris la semaine prochaine. Souffrons avec résignation les maux que le Ciel nous *envoie*. Ne vous fiez pas à ce charlatan, il vous *enverra* dans l'autre monde. *Envoyez-moi* votre domestique, et je vous *enverrai* le livre que vous demandez. L'ennemi nous *envoya* quelques bombes qui se perdirent dans les tranchées.

2 Le bruit *court* que nous allons avoir la guerre. Ces enfants *courraient* (207) toute la journée si on le leur permettait. Quand un sauvage *meurt* l'hiver à la chasse, son corps est conservé dans les branches des arbres. Nous *mourrons* (207) comme nous aurons *vécu*. Alexandre *conquit* l'Asie, et César *conquit* la Gaule. Les seuls amis solides sont ceux qu'on *acquiert* par des vertus solides. Les enfants *acquièrent* des connaissances sans notre secours. Vos sœurs et moi, nous *cueillions* des fleurs dans la prairie lorsqu'on *vint* nous dire qu'il était mort. Chacun *recueille* ce qu'il a semé. Louis XIV *accueillait* très-favorablement tous les hommes de lettres. Une tempête nous *assaillit* à la sortie du port. Ses bonnes qualités lui *acquirent* l'estime de tout le monde. Nos beaux jours *furent* rapidement. *Fuyons* les mauvaises compagnies, si nous voulons rester sages. C'est en *fuyant* que parfois on s'assure le triomphe. Le sang lui *bout* dans les veines. Vous *mettez* ces œufs dans l'eau aussitôt qu'elle *bouillira*.

Exercise.

I (am going¹) to² Ireland. Shall you go to France next³ summer? No, I shall not go. Let us go to the garden. We went to pay⁴ a visit to our first minister (the day before yesterday⁵). I will send⁶ him my servant. We sent some flowers to your sister. We shall go and see you as soon as we can⁷. When do you (go away⁸)? I shall go away this evening. Has your uncle gone away? Not yet, but he will soon go away. His father has acquired⁹ great wealth by his industry. His mother died¹⁰ of grief¹¹. They do not hate¹² him. The fruits he gathers¹³ are not ripe. Shall I gather some¹⁴ of these flowers? Where have you gathered these flowers? Does the water boil¹⁵? Not yet¹⁶ but it will soon boil.

Men die¹⁷ young in hot climates. Will this young officer die from his wounds? I do not think¹⁸ that his father is (454) dead. We ran¹⁹ to his help when he called²⁰ us. The clouds (were flying²¹) with rapidity. Commerce (was flourishing²²) in our country. We acquire new knowledge²³ every day. I will collect²⁴ some useful books. Alexander conquered²⁵ a great part of Asia. Our horses ran for²⁶ two hours without stopping²⁷. The enemy assailed²⁸ us on a sudden. This bird would die (207) if you (did not give him²⁹) water. I wish³⁰ you would help³¹ this poor family. If I conquer³², you will conquer (207). Did you receive³³ him well? Yes; but I would have received him better if I had not been unwell. Shall you not reap³⁴ the fruit of your labours³⁵? We have clothed³⁶ their children. They (ran away³⁷) at the first appearance of danger. Our troops assaulted³⁸ the entrenchments (at daybreak³⁹).

¹ aller ² en ³ prochain ⁴ faire ⁵ avant hier ⁶ envoyer ⁷ pourrons ⁸ s'en aller
⁹ acquérir ¹⁰ mourir ¹¹ chagrin ¹² hair ¹³ cueillir ¹⁴ quelques-unes ¹⁵ bouillir
¹⁶ pas encore ¹⁷ mourir ¹⁸ Je ne crois pas ¹⁹ courir ²⁰ appeler ²¹ fuir ²² fleurir
²³ connaissance *f. pl.* ²⁴ recueillir ²⁵ conquérir ²⁶ pendant ²⁷ s'arrêter ²⁸ assaillir
²⁹ ne lui donniez pas de ³⁰ Je désirerais que ³¹ secourir ³² conquérir ³³ accueillir
³⁴ recueillir ³⁵ peines ³⁶ vêtir ³⁷ s'enfuir ³⁸ assaillir ³⁹ à la pointe du jour.

Third Conjugation.

Read and translate.

Je ne *veux* pas que ma mère *sache* que je vous ai *vu*. *Pourriez*-vous me dire combien *vaut* cette maison? Si peu qu'elle *vaille*, elle *vaut* bien ce que l'on en demande. Quand *verrez*-vous le propriétaire? Il faut que je le *sache*, afin que je *puisse* lui faire mes offres. Je n'avais pas *prévu* votre arrivée, je ne *puis* vous le dire maintenant. *Asseyez*-vous un instant, je vais *savoir* si nous *pourrons* lui parler. Nous nous *assîmes* à l'ombre d'un palmier, et bientôt nous *vîmes* quelques sauvages sortir de la forêt. Je ne *savais* pas que vous *voulussiez* partir ce soir. C'est un ressort qui *meut* toute la machine. Le sort de ses enfants l'*émut* jusqu'aux larmes, mais la vue du supplice ne *put* l'*émouvoir*. Quand *sauvez*-vous vos leçons? Je les *saurai* dans une demi-heure. J'*aurais voulu* que vous les *sussiez* plus tôt.

Exercise.

This house is worth¹ fifteen hundred guineas. Is that bill due² to-day? The spring which moves³ the machine is very simple. (Sit down⁴), gentlemen, and (rest yourselves⁵) a little. Shall we see⁶ your mother this evening? She cannot⁷ come before half-past eight o'clock. You will not know⁸ your lesson, if you do not (make haste⁹). Should you not foresee¹⁰ that event? I sat down under the shade of a tree. Who will (provide for¹¹) their wants? We could¹² be very useful to your brother on¹³ that occasion. I think¹⁴ it will rain¹⁵ (the whole¹⁶) day. The speaker¹⁷ (stirred up¹⁸) the passions of the audience¹⁹. The judges did put off²⁰ the execution of the arrest. I must²¹ know²² who (is knocking²³) at the door. That bonnet does not become²⁴ her. He prevailed²⁵ upon the others at our last meeting²⁶. Do you think that he wishes²⁷ to buy my oxen? Have you not seen my new purchase²⁸?

¹ valoir ² devoir ³ mouvoir ⁴ s'asseoir ⁵ se reposer ⁶ voir ⁷ ne pouvoir ⁸ savoir
⁹ se dépêcher ¹⁰ prévoir ¹¹ pourvoir à ¹² pouvoir ¹³ dans ¹⁴ croire ¹⁵ pleuvoir
¹⁶ toute la ¹⁷ orateur ¹⁸ émouvoir ¹⁹ auditoire ²⁰ surseoir ²¹ falloir que ²² savoir
²³ frapper ²⁴ seoir ²⁵ prévaloir ²⁶ réunion ²⁷ vouloir ²⁸ emplette.

Fourth Conjugation.

Read and translate.

Quel auteur lisez-vous dans votre classe? Notre professeur veut que nous apprenions un passage de Virgile tous les jours. On dit que les Russes ont été battus par les alliés; croyez-vous que la nouvelle soit vraie? Dites-moi ce que vous en pensez, et buvons à la santé de nos braves qui ont vaincu l'ennemi. Ne faites pas à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas qui vous fût fait à vous-mêmes. Démocrite riait sans cesse, Héraclite pleurait toujours. Il faudrait que vous écrivissiez votre lettre avant que je fisse aucunes démarches à ce sujet. Tous les enfants qui naquirent le même jour que Sésostriis furent amenés à la cour par ordre du roi. Nous naissons et nous vivons pour la société. Ne prenez pas vos amis au hasard; suivez mon conseil, il est bon. Fontenelle vécut cent ans. Nous buvions du lait de chèvre tous les matins. Ces jeunes orphelines cousent deux ou trois heures par jour. Avez-vous mis mon cheval dans l'écurie? Je l'y mettrai quand il aura bu. Nous moulons tous les jours beaucoup de café, mais nous en moulons davantage l'année dernière. Avez-vous résolu ce problème? Le feu résout le bois en cendre. Les frictions résolvent les tumeurs.

Exercise.

These children (are learning¹) their lessons. You surprise² me very much. The Russians were beaten³ by the allies. The artillery (beat down⁴) the walls of the fortress. Drink⁵ a little milk every morning, it⁶ will do⁷ you good⁸. We did not drink (28) beer whilst

¹ apprendre ² surprendre ³ battre ⁴ abattre ⁵ boire ⁶ cela ⁷ faire ⁸ du bien

we were in France. We drink (28) wine at dinner. Do you think⁹ that she is (254) happy? We believed (we perceived¹⁰) a vessel in the distance¹¹. I wrote¹² to him all the particulars of that affair. I do¹³ my duty; do yours. We satisfy¹⁴ our masters. Tell¹⁵ him that I will write to-morrow. I must say¹⁶ my prayers before breakfast. What did you do when we were gone¹⁷? Do not read¹⁸ so long¹⁹, but take²⁰ a little recreation. Have you read the paper? No; I shall read it this evening.

Follow²¹ the good examples of your forefathers. Did the troops pursue²² the enemy after the battle? The Greeks vanquished²³ the Persians at Marathon, Salamis, and Plataea, and thereby transmitted²⁴ glory to their posterity. Those unhappy people curse²⁵ their fate. The Duke of Wellington lived²⁶ above eighty years. The sun was not shining²⁷ when we (went out²⁸). They surprised the enemy during the night. You did not hurt²⁹ his interests. Do they elect³⁰ a president every year? We laughed³¹ at his expense. The flocks (were grazing³²) in the meadow. They (were milking³³) their cows. Have you ground³⁴ the coffee for this evening? Do you think I have displeased³⁵ your father? Napoleon was born³⁶ in the island of Corsica, in the year 1769. Did he live long³⁷? He lived fifty-two years; but he would have lived longer, if he had been in a healthier climate.

⁹ croire ¹⁰ apercevoir ¹¹ dans le lointain ¹² écrire ¹³ faire ¹⁴ satisfaire ¹⁵ dire
¹⁶ dire ¹⁷ partir ¹⁸ lire ¹⁹ si longtemps ²⁰ prendre ²¹ suivre ²² poursuivre ²³ vaincre
²⁴ transmettre ²⁵ maudire ²⁶ vivre ²⁷ luire ²⁸ sortir ²⁹ nuire ³⁰ élire ³¹ rire
³² paître ³³ traire ³⁴ moudre ³⁵ déplaire ³⁶ naître ³⁷ longtemps.

PARTICIPLES.

211 A *participle* is a word which partakes of the nature of a verb, and of that of an adjective. It has the signification and government of a verb; as

des enfants *aimant* l'étude
 ayant *reçu* votre lettre

children *loving* study
 having received *your* note

And, like an adjective, it expresses also the quality or state of persons or things to which it refers; as

un champ *labouré*
 une fille *chérie*

a ploughed *field*
 a beloved *daughter*

There are two sorts of participles; the participle *present*, ending in *ant*, as *aimant*, *finissant*, often preceded by *en*, and always invariable; and the participle *past*, which has various terminations; as *aimé*, *fini*, *reçu*, *écrit*, *mis*.

The latter may agree in gender and number with the noun or pronoun to which it relates. (See the Syntax, No. 478.)

ADVERBS.

212 An *adverb* is a word indeclinable, which modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; it is placed near and generally *after* the verb; as

il parle <i>éloquemment</i>	<i>he speaks eloquently</i>
elle est <i>fort</i> aimable	<i>she is very amiable</i>
il écrit <i>très-souvent</i>	<i>he writes very often</i>

213 Most adverbs are formed in French from adjectives:—

1 By adding *ment* to the masculine of the adjective, when it ends with a vowel; as

sage, <i>wise</i>	sagement, <i>wisely</i>
poli, <i>polite</i>	poliment, <i>politely</i>

The following take an *é* before the final *ment*: — *aveuglement, commodément, conformément, énormément, uniformément*. The adjectives *beau, nouveau, fou, mou*, form their adverbs from their feminine, *belle, nouvelle, folle, molle*; as *bellement, nouvellement*, &c. *Impuni* makes *impunément*.

2 By adding *ment* to the feminine termination, when the masculine ends with a consonant; as

doux <i>m.</i> , douce <i>f.</i> , <i>gentle</i>	doucement, <i>gently</i>
fort <i>m.</i> , forte <i>f.</i> , <i>strong</i>	fortement, <i>strongly</i>

Gentil makes *gentiment* — *Commune, confuse, diffuse, expresse, importune, obscure, précise, profonde*, change *e* mute into *é*; as *communément, confusément*, &c.

3 When the adjective ends in *ant* or *ent*, the adverb is formed by changing *nt* into *mment*; as

savant, <i>learned</i>	savamment, <i>learnedly</i>
patient, <i>patient</i>	patiemment, <i>patiently</i>

Lent and *présent* make *lentement, présentement*.

214 Adjectives are sometimes used adverbially, as in the following examples:—

parler <i>haut</i>	<i>to speak loud</i>
frapper <i>ferme</i>	<i>to strike hard</i>
sentir <i>bon</i>	<i>to smell nice</i>
chanter <i>faux</i>	<i>to sing out of tune</i>

There are several sorts of adverbs, generally classed according to their signification with reference to *time, place, order, manner, quantity, comparison, affirmation, negation, doubt, and interrogation*.

Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions most in Use.**ADVERBS OF TIME.**

alors <i>then</i>	d'ordinaire <i>usually</i>
anciennement <i>formerly</i>	enfin <i>at last</i>
aujourd'hui <i>to-day</i>	ensuite <i>afterwards</i>
auparavant <i>before</i>	hier <i>yesterday</i>
aussitôt <i>immediately</i>	jadis <i>formerly</i>
autrefois <i>formerly</i>	jamais <i>never; ever</i>
à l'avenir <i>for the future</i>	maintenant <i>now</i>
à jamais <i>for ever</i>	parfois <i>sometimes</i>
à l'improviste <i>unexpectedly</i>	quelquefois <i>sometimes</i>
à présent <i>now</i>	rarement <i>seldom</i>
bientôt <i>soon</i>	souvent <i>often</i>
pendant <i>in the mean time</i>	sans cesse <i>incessantly</i>
déjà <i>already</i>	sur-le-champ <i>immediately</i>
demain <i>to-morrow</i>	tantôt <i>by and by; sometimes</i>
depuis <i>since</i>	tard <i>late</i>
dernièrement <i>lately</i>	tôt <i>soon</i>
dès lors <i>from that time</i>	toujours <i>always</i>
désormais <i>henceforth</i>	tout à coup <i>suddenly</i>
de suite <i>immediately</i>	tout à l'heure <i>presently</i>
dorénavant <i>henceforth</i>	tout de suite <i>immediately</i>
de bonne heure <i>early</i>	tout d'un coup <i>all at once</i>
d'abord <i>at first</i>	vite <i>quickly</i>

ADVERBS OF PLACE AND ORDER.

ailleurs <i>elsewhere</i>	ici près <i>near here</i>
alentour <i>around</i>	jusque là <i>so far</i>
à la fois <i>at once</i>	jusqu'où ? <i>how far ?</i>
à droite <i>on the right</i>	là <i>there</i>
après <i>after</i>	là-bas <i>yonder</i>
auprès <i>near</i>	là-haut <i>above</i>
avant <i>before</i>	là dedans <i>within</i>
ça et là <i>up and down</i>	loin <i>far</i>
ci-après <i>hereafter</i>	nulle part <i>nowhere</i>
dedans <i>within</i>	où <i>where</i>
dehors <i>outside</i>	partout <i>everywhere</i>
derrière <i>behind</i>	par où ? <i>which way ?</i>
dessous <i>underneath</i>	par ici <i>this way</i>
dessus <i>upon</i>	pêle-mêle <i>confusedly</i>
devant <i>before</i>	premièrement <i>first</i>
d'ici <i>hence</i>	près <i>near</i>
d'où <i>whence</i>	proche <i>near</i>
en bas <i>below</i>	puis <i>then</i>
en haut <i>up stairs</i>	sens dessus dessous <i>upside down</i>
ensemble <i>together</i>	séparément <i>separately</i>
ici <i>here</i>	tour-à-tour <i>by turn</i>
ici bas <i>here below</i>	y <i>there</i>

ADVERBS OF MANNER.

autrement <i>otherwise</i>	mal <i>badly</i>
à l'envi <i>vying with one another</i>	pis <i>worse</i>
à peine <i>scarcely</i>	poliment <i>politely</i>
à regret <i>with reluctance</i>	presque <i>almost</i>
bien <i>well</i>	prudemment <i>prudently</i>
exprès <i>on purpose</i>	par hasard <i>by chance</i>
instamment <i>earnestly</i>	sagement <i>wisely</i>
lentement <i>slowly</i>	sciemment <i>knowingly</i>

ADVERBS OF QUANTITY AND COMPARISON.

abondamment <i>plentifully</i>	en sus <i>over</i>
ainsi <i>thus</i>	fort <i>very</i>
à bon marché <i>cheap</i>	guère* <i>but little</i>
à peu près <i>nearly</i>	mieux <i>better</i>
assez* <i>enough</i>	moins* <i>less</i>
aussi <i>also, as, too</i>	peu* <i>little</i>
autant* <i>so much</i>	peu à peu <i>by degrees</i>
au moins <i>at least</i>	plus* <i>more</i>
beaucoup* <i>much</i>	si <i>so, so very†</i>
combien* <i>how much, how many</i>	suffisamment* <i>sufficiently</i>
comme <i>as, how</i>	tant* <i>so much, so many</i>
davantage <i>more</i>	tant soit peu <i>ever so little</i>
de même <i>so</i>	tout-à-fait <i>quite</i>
de plus <i>moreover</i>	tout au plus <i>at most</i>
du moins <i>at least</i>	très <i>very</i>
encore <i>still, yet</i>	trop* <i>too much</i>
entièrement <i>entirely</i>	trop peu <i>too little</i>
environ <i>about</i>	un peu <i>a little</i>

215 * The adverbs of quantity marked * take *de* before the following noun or adjective; as *beaucoup de pain*; *trop de vin*; *moins d'argent*.

216 † So *VERY* is translated merely by *si*; as *she is so VERY obliging*! elle est si obligeante!

ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION, NEGATION, DOUBT, AND INTERROGATION.

certainement } <i>certainly</i>	nullement <i>by no means</i>
certes }	oui † <i>yes</i>
combien? <i>how much? how many?</i>	peut-être <i>perhaps</i>
(of distance) <i>how far?</i> (of	probablement <i>very likely</i>
time) <i>how long?</i>	pourquoi? <i>why?</i>
comment? <i>how?</i>	point du tout <i>not at all</i>
en vérité <i>indeed</i>	quand? <i>when?</i>
non, ne, ni <i>no, not, nor</i>	sans doute <i>without doubt</i>
ne...pas }	volontiers <i>willingly</i>
ne...point } (173) <i>not</i>	vraiment <i>truly, &c.</i>

217 † *Yes* is expressed by *oui*; as *Avez-vous diné? Oui, j'ai diné*. But in replying to a question in which there is a negation, or in contradiction to a negative statement, *yes* is generally expressed by *si*; as *Est-ce que vous ne venez pas avec nous? Si, j'y vais*. (Are you not coming with us? Yes, I am.)

Read and translate.

Quand partez-vous? Je pars *demain*, ou *peut-être* *aujourd'hui*. Allez-vous *souvent* à Paris? J'y vais *rarement*; *ordinairement* une fois chaque année. *Jusqu'où* avez-vous appris? Vous êtes arrivé *trop tard*, venez *plus tôt* une autre fois. *Combien* y a-t-il d'*ici* à Genève? Je ne sais *pas précisément*. *Combien* de temps resterez-vous *ici*? *Pourquoi* me faites-vous cette question? Avez-vous *jamais* été à Rome? *Non*, je n'y ai *jamais* été. *Comment* avez-vous fait cela? *A peine* ai-je eu le temps de le voir. *Par où* passerez-vous en allant en France? Nous irons *d'abord* à Londres, et *ensuite* à Douvres. *Combien* coûte le voyage de Londres à Paris? Avez-vous *déjà* diné? *Non*, je n'ai *pas encore* déjeuné. Il lit *fort peu*, et il écrit *encore moins*. Irez-vous *loin* aujourd'hui? *Que* ne répondez-vous?

Exercise on the Adverbs.

You *always* come¹ too late. Did (175) you not *then* live² in³ Paris? Shall we dine *soon*? He has done⁴ it *on purpose*. My brother was better *yesterday*, now he is worse than *ever*. I will write⁵ to you *to-day* or *to-morrow* at latest. Have you not done *yet*? I have *almost* finished. *How much* have you given⁶ for that watch? *More* than it (is worth⁷). I have (looked for⁸) you *everywhere*, and I have not (been able⁹) to find you *anywhere*. *Where* do you go? I am going *yonder*. *How* do you call¹⁰ this village? I *often* (go out¹¹) *early* in the morning, and *sometimes* I go *very far*. I go *sometimes* (on foot¹²), *sometimes* on horse-back¹³. *When* will they begin? I do not know¹⁴; *soon*, I hope. *Why* is he so angry¹⁵? I have not begun my letter *yet*. Write it *immediately*, and I will send¹⁶ it *presently*. *Perhaps* it is too late for the post.

¹ venir ² demeurer ³ à ⁴ fait ⁵ écrire ⁶ donné ⁷ valoir ⁸ chercher ⁹ pouvoir
¹⁰ appeler ¹¹ sortir ¹² à pied ¹³ à cheval ¹⁴ savoir ¹⁵ en colère ¹⁶ envoyer

PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are invariable words which serve to express the relation which some words have with each other.

218 In French the preposition is always placed before the word which it governs, and never after, as is frequently the case in English; as

je vais à Paris
 il vint après vous
 il est dans la chambre
 de quoi parlez-vous?

I am going to Paris
he came after you
he is in the room
what are you speaking of?

Durant is the only exception; as *sa vie durant*.

PREPOSITIONS USED MOST FREQUENTLY.

à* <i>at, to, in, &c.</i>	excepté <i>except</i>
à cause de <i>on account of</i>	hormis <i>except</i>
à côté de <i>by, next to</i>	jusqu'à <i>as far as</i>
après <i>after</i>	loin de <i>far from</i>
à travers*	malgré <i>in spite of</i>
au travers* (<i>through</i>	moyennant <i>notwithstanding</i>
attendu <i>considering</i>	outre <i>besides</i>
au delà de <i>beyond</i>	par <i>by</i>
auprès de <i>near</i>	parmi* <i>among</i>
autour de <i>around</i>	pendant* <i>during</i>
avant* <i>before</i>	pour* <i>for</i>
avec <i>with</i>	près de } <i>near</i>
chez* <i>at, among</i>	proche de }
contre <i>against</i>	quant à <i>as to, as for</i>
dans* <i>in</i>	sans <i>without</i>
de of, from, with	sauf <i>except</i>
depuis* <i>since</i>	selon <i>according to</i>
derrière <i>behind</i>	sous <i>under</i>
dès <i>from</i>	suivant <i>according to</i>
devant* <i>before</i>	sur <i>upon</i>
durant* <i>during</i>	touchant <i>concerning</i>
en* <i>in</i>	vers* <i>towards</i>
entre* <i>between</i>	voici* <i>here is</i>
envers* <i>towards</i>	voilà* <i>there is</i>
environ <i>about</i>	vis-à-vis de <i>opposite</i>

219 The prepositions *à, de* and *en* are repeated before every word they govern; as, Il apprend à danser et à chanter. — Les chemins sont bordés *de* lauriers, *de* grenadiers, *de* jasmins, et *d'autres* arbres toujours verts et toujours fleuris. (*Fénelon.*) — La France est fertile *en* blé, *en* vin, *en* fruits.

Read and translate.

J'ai donné un dictionnaire à votre ami. Avez-vous écrit à votre mère? Nous parlions *de* vous tout à l'heure. Venez-vous *de* Bordeaux? Je partirai *d'ici* après déjeuner, et j'arriverai à Paris *avant* dix heures du soir. Le tombeau de Napoléon est *dans* la chapelle des Invalides. Nous marchions *sur* une terre de feu, *sous* un ciel de feu, *entre* deux murailles de feu. *Vers* quatre heures nous doublâmes la pointe d'une presqu'île, et nous jetâmes l'ancre *dans* une baie abritée *par* des rochers. Cet argent est *pour* les pauvres. Nous aperçûmes alors *à travers* le brouillard le corps et les vergues d'un grand vaisseau. J'irai *chez* vous demain. Mirabeau parlait *avec* éloquence. Nous irons *jusqu'à* Bruxelles, et nous partirons le soir *par* le chemin de fer de Strasbourg. *Chez* les Français les modes se succèdent rapidement. *Selon*

* See the Syntax, Remarks on Prepositions (No. 514).

moi, il a eu tort d'agir ainsi *envers* vous. Mon père demeure *à* Paris, *vis-à-vis* du Louvre. *Quant à* moi, je n'entreprendrai rien *contre* lui. Il m'a parlé *touchant* cette affaire. Tandis que mes compagnons se chauffaient *autour* d'un grand feu, je me dirigeai *vers* la montagne. Il apprend déjà *à* lire, *à* écrire et *à* chanter. La Russie est fertile *en* blé, *en* chanvre et *en* lin. Sa fille prend des leçons *de* musique, *de* dessin et *de* danse.

Exercise on the Prepositions.

We are going¹ *to* Edinburgh ; are you not coming² *with* us ? I have not been *to* Paris *since* last year. I am not speaking³ *of* you. Do they not come *from* Italy ? She had always two servants walking⁴ *behind* her. I have sent⁵ all your books *except* three. The Alps are situated *between* France and Italy. London is *on* the Thames, and Paris *on* the Seine. Is this parcel⁶ *for* me or *for* you ? He will do⁷ it *in spite of* you. Henry the Fourth (250), king of France, was assassinated *by* Ravallac. We sat⁸ *under* a tree, *near* the bridge. I have found⁹ one of your books *among* mine. It was (373) the custom *among* the Gauls to immerge¹⁰ their new-born¹¹ children *in* cold water, to make¹² them stronger. We went *towards* the frontier. That man has been ungrateful *towards* you. We shall arrive *before* twelve o'clock ; the coach stops¹³ *before* the church. Mozart was almost *from* the cradle¹⁴ a prodigy of musical genius. The fields are covered *with*¹⁵ vines, fig-trees¹⁶, olive-trees, and orange-trees. He owed¹⁷ his life to the clemency and magnanimity of the king.

¹ aller ² venir ³ parler ⁴ qui marchaient ⁵ envoyer ⁶ paquet ⁷ faire ⁸ s'asseoir
⁹ trouver ¹⁰ plonger ¹¹ nouveau-né ¹² rendre ¹³ s'arrêter ¹⁴ berceau ¹⁵ de
¹⁶ figuiers ¹⁷ devoir

CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are invariable, and serve to connect words and sentences together ; as

Travaillons *si* nous voulons acquérir des talents, *car* le temps s'enfuit *et* ne revient plus

Let us study if we wish to acquire knowledge, for time passes, and returns no more

220 Conjunctions are simple or compound : the simple consist of one word, as *et*, *ou*, *si*, &c. ; the compound are formed of two or more words, such as *afin que*, *à moins que*, *pourvu que*, &c.

221 Some conjunctions govern the verb in the *indicative mood*, others in the *subjunctive*, and some also in the *infinitive*.

222 CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE Indicative.

ainsi *thus*
 ainsi que *as*
 après que *after*
 au lieu que *whereas*
 aussitôt que *as soon as*
 au surplus *moreover*
 car *for*
 cependant *however, yet*
 c'est pourquoi *therefore*
 comme *as, like*
 d'ailleurs *besides*
 depuis que *since*
 de plus *moreover*
 de sorte que *so that*
 dès que *as soon as*
 donc *then, therefore*
 et *and*
 en effet *indeed*
 enfin *in short*
 lorsque *when*
 mais *but*
 même *even*
 néanmoins *nevertheless*
 ni *neither, nor*

or *now*
 ou bien *or else*
 ou *either...or*
 outre que *besides*
 parceque *because*
 pendant que *whilst*
 pour lors *then*
 pourquoi *why, wherefore*
 pourtant *however*
 puisque *since*
 quand *when*
 quand même *though*
 que *that*
 savoir *namely*
 selon que *according as*
 si *if*
 sinon *or else, if not*
 sitôt que *as soon as*
 soit *either, or*
 suivant que *according as*
 surtout *especially*
 tandis que *whilst*
 tant que *as long as*
 toutefois *however*

223 CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE Subjunctive.

afin que *that, in order that*
 à moins que *unless*
 avant que *before*
 bien que *though, although*
 de crainte que *for fear*
 de peur que *lest*
 en cas que *in case that*
 encore que *though*
 jusqu'à ce que *till*
 loin que *far from*

nonobstant que *for all that*
 non pas que *not that*
 posé que *suppose that*
 pour que *that*
 pourvu que *provided*
 quoique *though, although*
 sans que *without*
 sinon que *except that*
 soit que *whether*
 supposé que *suppose*

224 CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE Infinitive.

afin de *in order to*
 à moins de *unless*
 avant de *before*
 au lieu de *instead of*
 de crainte de *for fear of*

de peur de *for fear of*
 faute de *for want of*
 jusqu'à *till*
 loin de *far from*
 plutôt que *de rather than*

225 *A moins que*, unless, when followed by a verb in the Infinitive, requires *de* without the negation; as *Je ne pouvais pas le punir plus sévèrement à moins que de le renvoyer*, I could not punish him more severely unless I dismissed him.

See the Syntax, *Remarks on Conjunctions* (No. 531).

Read and translate.

Ne faites pas cela, *car* vous seriez puni. Les méchants meurent *comme* ils ont vécu. Croyez-vous *donc* que la mort n'est rien? Ces chants sont doux, *mais* les tristesses *et* les joies qu'ils réveillent ne sont *ni* mes tristesses *ni* mes joies. *Ni* l'or *ni* la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux. *Or*, vous deviez savoir *que* la chose n'était pas possible. La misère *ou* le déshonneur, attend toujours le joueur. Il faudra *qu'il* paie, *ou* bien il ira en prison. On m'a demandé: *Pourquoi* pleurez-vous? *Et quand* je l'ai dit, nul n'a pleuré avec moi, *parcequ'on* ne me comprenait point. *Pourquoi* le demander, *puisque* vous le savez? Je crois *que* vous gagnerez votre procès. *Si* Napoléon n'avait pas été *si* ambitieux, il ne serait pas tombé. Dieu vous place au-dessus des autres *afin* que vous soyez les pères des peuples. *Soit* que vous veniez, *soit* que vous ne veniez pas, je partirai demain. Travaillez avec assiduité, *afin* de mériter une récompense.

Exercise on the Conjunctions.

Do not disobey¹ your parents, *for* it is a sin. *Why* did you not come (last night²)? *Because* the weather was too bad. *If* I die³ before you, you shall be the father of my children. *Since* you are ill, you ought⁴ not to go out. He is rich, *but* he is not happy. A man *like* him cannot be unhappy. His wife is *neither* pretty *nor* rich. *Though* he works a great deal, he makes (very little⁵) progress. *Whether* I read *or* write, I like to be alone. I will go and see you, *but* I cannot say *when*. I will go, *provided* it does not rain⁶. This drawing is well done, *yet* it might⁷ be better⁸. *Unless* you invite him yourself, he will not come. My father and mother are ill, *but* it is nothing⁹ serious. I think *that* you will succeed¹⁰, *because* you have many recommendations.

¹ désobéir à ² hier soir ³ mourir ⁴ devoir ⁵ très-peu de ⁶ pleuvoir ⁷ pouvoir
⁸ mieux ⁹ rien de ¹⁰ réussir.

INTERJECTIONS.

226 Interjections are invariable words used to express any sudden emotion of the mind.

EXAMPLES.

joy
 grief and pain
 fear
 surprise
 aversion
 admiration

ah ! bon ! vive la joie !
hélas ! aïe ! ah ! ouf !
ha ! hé !
quoi ! vraiment !
fi ! fi donc !
oh ! ah !

encouragement
 silence
 calling
 warning
 attention
 disbelief
 interrogation

allons ! courage ! bravo !
chut ! paix ! st !
holà ! ho ! hé !
prenez garde ! gare !
tiens ! tenez ! voilà !
ah bah !
hé bien !

EXCLAMATORY EXPRESSIONS IN COMMON USE.

au feu ! au feu !
 au secours ! au secours !
 au voleur ! au voleur !
 au meurtre ! on m'assassine !
 aux armes ! aux armes !
 à la garde ! à la garde !

fire ! fire !
help ! help !
thieves ! thieves !
murder ! murder !
to arms ! to arms !
police ! police !

Recapitulation on all the preceding Rules

(either for *written* or *vivâ voce* practice).

FROM NO. 23 TO 85.—The horse and the ass are two useful animals. The night was very stormy. Lions are numerous in Africa. Man is the king of nature. We have some pigeons and some hens. They have bread for three days, and flour for the rest of the week. Is the hamlet far from here? Give these oranges to the little boys. Where are my jewels? I gave them to the jeweller. Spain is under one of the finest skies in Europe. Have you any relations in India? My father and mother live in Calcutta. His sister had a white dress and a pink sash. Are those apricots ripe? The ground is very dry, because the heat has been so great. Is her brother older than I? The tiger is more ferocious than the lion, but it is not so strong. I like good beer better than bad wine. Do you know your lesson? No, I do not know it yet. Which is the most precious of metals?—Gold. That gentleman has a delightful house on the hill. Your house and mine were built at the same time. The Loire is less rapid than the Rhine, but it is wider. The French and English generals were of the same opinion. The enemy had twelve hundred horses, ten thousand five hundred and fifty men, and eighty pieces of cannon. The English watches are much stronger than the French watches. I like Italian music. Is German music as good as the Italian? His mother was a Spanish lady.

FROM NO. 86 TO 110. — **Pronouns.**—Are you pleased with (*content de*) him? I see her in the garden. Has she taken her bonnet? Are you going to London? Have you spoken to him? Do you give them lessons in French? Is this book for me or for him? No, it is for her. Who has called me? Is it you? Who said so? is it he? No, sir; it is I. Bring me my hat, and give him his gloves. Do not give them beer. His house is much larger than mine. Your father is much younger than his. It is the queen of England who

fired the first shot. That is very true. He who does not like work is unhappy. Those who flatter us deceive us. That is the one which I have chosen. The man that we saw yesterday is the one who bought my house. The lady to whom I was speaking is a very good musician. Who has sung that duet? The two ladies we heard last night. Of whom are you speaking? What will you do, if he does not come? What day will you come and see me? Every one works for himself. Everybody complains of his memory, but no one complains of his judgment. Whoever flatters his masters, betrays them. I know nothing more absurd. Both were very distinguished men.

FROM No. 111 TO 226.—**Verbs.**—Were you at the concert last week? No, I did not go. I was hunting in the country when I received your letter. The guns of the allies demolished the fortress. After having given a first assault, they retreated. When do you dine? We breakfasted very early, I begin to be hungry. Would he come if I was to go with him? We shall set off in a few days; if you like to come with us, make haste to pack up your things. You should not go out without telling your father. He will consent to it if you ask him. Do you think that these pencils belong to your master? I was returning from town when I met your brother. Do you know my uncle? I only know him by (*de*) sight. We have caught a great many fish. Can you translate Milton into French? I do not think I can do it. Do you instruct your son yourself? He has lost all his fortune. Do you think he will lose his lawsuit? I believe he will gain it. Take these ladies to the drawing-room, and give them some refreshment. I do not fear that man. Is there anybody (*quelqu'un*) in the room? No, there is nobody. Then sit down and warm yourself until I come back. At what o'clock do you go to bed? I go to bed at eleven o'clock, and I get up in the morning at seven. You must do your exercise, or else your master will be angry. Make haste to dress yourself, it is very late. Has he done his duty? Do not go out yet, it is too cold. Do you think it will be warmer this afternoon? There was some ice this morning. Now rest yourself. Your brother always comes after the others. I have never seen him here. When will he come? He will not come unless you tell him. But do you think he will come if I tell him? Yes, he will, because he told me so.

Part II.

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX is the construction of words and sentences according to the rules of grammar.

SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

227 GENERAL RULE.—The article *le, la, l', or les* is used in French before substantives *common*, taken in a general or individual sense, or designating a whole kind or species; as

les hommes sont mortels
la gloire du héros
le livre que je lis
nous apprenons la géographie

men are mortal
the glory of the hero
the book which I read
we learn geography

Repetition of the Article.

228 The article must be repeated in French before every substantive, whether subject or object of any sentence, when it is already expressed before the first; as

le coton, la laine et la soie sont
des étoffes très-utiles
la France produit de l'argent, du
cuivre, du fer, du plomb, &c.

cotton, wool, and silk are very useful
stuffs
France produces silver, copper,
iron, lead, &c.

229 The article is also repeated before *plus, moins, and mieux*, when they modify several adjectives qualifying a substantive; as

Londres est la ville la plus riche
et la plus peuplée de l'Europe

London is the richest and most
populous town in Europe

Read, translate, and write.

Le lion est le roi des animaux. La peige blanchissait les toits. L'homme est le roi de la nature. L'olivier est l'emblème de la paix. Les hommes sont nés pour la société. L'honneur aux grands cœurs est plus cher que la vie. Le père, la mère, et les enfants sont sortis. Les principaux produits de la Russie sont le blé, le chanvre, le lin, le bois de charpente, le fer, les fourures, les cuirs, et le suif. L'écrivain le plus pur et le plus correct. Les vers les plus touchants et les plus harmonieux. Les livres les mieux écrits et les mieux pensés. L'honnêteté est préférable à tout l'or du monde.

Exercise on the Article.

'The love of glory¹, the fear of shame², and the design (of making³) one's fortune, are often the cause of that valour⁴ (so much⁵) prized⁶ among⁷ men. Charity⁸ is the greatest⁹ of all Christian virtues¹⁰. Men are seldom (satisfied with¹¹) their lot¹². Clemency, wisdom¹³, and courage are finer¹⁴ ornaments in a prince than¹⁵ the jewels¹⁶ with which¹⁷ he is covered¹⁸. Man (was born¹⁹) for society; beasts, fishes, birds, and even reptiles, were created²⁰ for his use²¹. History, geography, and mathematics²² are necessary sciences²³. Study nourishes²⁴ youth²⁵, amuses (old age²⁶), adorns²⁷ prosperity, and comforts²⁸ us in adversity. Gold, silver, copper, lead, and iron, are the principal metals. (Let us avoid²⁹) idleness³⁰ and intemperance. The novel³¹ of Paul and Virginia is the most interesting and most elegantly written book I know³².

¹ gloire *f.* ² honte *f.* ³ de faire ⁴ valeur *f.* ⁵ si ⁶ vanté ⁷ parmi ⁸ charité *f.*
⁹ plus grande ¹⁰ vertu *f.* ¹¹ content de ¹² sort ¹³ sagesse *f.* ¹⁴ de plus beau *pl.*
¹⁵ que ¹⁶ bijou ¹⁷ dont ¹⁸ couvert ¹⁹ est né ²⁰ créer ²¹ usage *m.* ²² mathématiques *pl.*
²³ des sciences ²⁴ nourrir ²⁵ jeunesse ²⁶ vieillesse ²⁷ orner ²⁸ soulager
²⁹ éviter ³⁰ paresse *f.* ³¹ roman ³² connaître.

230 The article is used in French before names of *countries, kingdoms, provinces, mountains, rivers, seas, lakes, &c.*; as

l'Europe et l'Asie
l'Angleterre et la France
 aimez-vous l'Italie ?
la Bourgogne et la Flandre
les Alpes et les Pyrénées
le Rhône et la Seine
l'océan et la Méditerranée

Europe and Asia
England and France
do you like Italy ?
Burgundy and Flanders
the Alps and the Pyrenees
the Rhone and the Seine
the ocean and the Mediterranean

231 EXCEPTION.—These nouns usually take *no article* when they are preceded by the preposition *de*, expressing the qualification, nationality, or origin of the persons or things

mentioned, and after the preposition *en* (to or in), or the verbs *aller*, *arriver*, *venir*, *partir*, *sortir* ; as

le royaume de France •	<i>the kingdom of France</i>
la reine d'Angleterre	<i>the queen of England</i>
du vin de Champagne	<i>Champaign wine</i>
du cuir de Russie	<i>Russian leather</i>
j'ai voyagé en Italie	<i>I have travelled in Italy</i>
il est en Allemagne	<i>he is in Germany</i>
il vient de Russie	<i>he comes from Russia</i>

232 However, the names of some distant countries always take the article ; such are, *le Bengai*, *le Canada*, *le Mexique*, *le Pérou*, *le Brésil*, &c. Thus we say : *je vais au Bengai*, and not *en Bengai* ; *l'or du Pérou*, and not *de Pérou*.

Read, translate, and write.

Les principaux pays de l'Europe sont la France, l'Angleterre, la Russie, l'Autriche, la Prusse, l'Espagne, et l'Italie. La Sicile, la Sardaigne, et la Corse sont des îles importantes situées dans la Méditerranée. Les principaux fleuves de la France sont le Rhône, le Rhin, la Loire, la Seine, la Meuse, et la Garonne. Napoléon franchit les Alpes avec son armée en 1800. Le Mont-Blanc est la plus haute montagne des Alpes. L'acier d'Angleterre, le cuir de Russie, les vins de France et d'Espagne sont très-estimés. Je suis né en France, mais j'ai voyagé en Russie, en Italie, en Allemagne, et en Ecosse. Mon frère ira aux Indes, et de là au Japon. Aimez-vous le vin de Bordeaux ? Moi, j'aime mieux le vin de Bourgogne. L'empereur de Russie, Nicolas, mourut en 1855, pendant la guerre de Crimée. Le coton d'Amérique n'est-il pas plus estimé que celui des Indes ?

Exercise.

Europe, Asia, Africa¹, and America² are the four parts³ of the world. England⁴ and France are the two most⁵ powerful countries⁶ in⁷ Europe. Burgundy⁸ and Champaign⁹ are two provinces of France celebrated for¹⁰ their fine¹¹ wines. The eruption of Vesuvius¹² causes great devastations. The emperor of Austria¹³ was obliged (to leave¹⁴) Vienna at the revolution of 1848. The cloth¹⁵ of England is more durable (than that¹⁶) of France, but not¹⁷ so fine¹⁸. Have you read Thiers' History of France ? I hope I shall go¹⁹ to²⁰ Switzerland²¹ next year. Have you ever²² been to²³ Germany²⁴ ? My father spent²⁵ last winter in Italy, and he intends²⁶ to spend the summer in England. Shall you go to Canada with your brother ? No, I am going to Mexico²⁷. The shawls²⁸ of India²⁹ are in great repute³⁰. I come from Brazil³¹.

¹ Afrique ² Amérique ³ partie ⁴ Angleterre ⁵ plus ⁶ pays *m.* ⁷ de ⁸ Bourgogne *f.* ⁹ Champagne *f.* ¹⁰ par ¹¹ bon ¹² Vésuve *m.* ¹³ Autriche ¹⁴ de quitter ¹⁵ drap *m.* ¹⁶ que celui ¹⁷ pas ¹⁸ fin ¹⁹ aller ²⁰ en ²¹ Suisse ²² jamais ²³ en ²⁴ Allemagne ²⁵ passer ²⁶ se proposer (de) ²⁷ Mexique *m.* ²⁸ châle ²⁹ Inde ³⁰ réputation ³¹ Brésil *m.*

233 The article is generally used in French before nouns of *title, dignity, profession, &c.*; as

la princesse Marie
le maréchal Soult
le général Bertrand
le docteur Orfila

Princess Mary
Marshal Soult
General Bertrand
Doctor Orfila

234 When any of these denominations, *duc, duchesse, comte, comtesse, &c.*, are used formally, they take the word *monsieur* or *madame* with the article; as, *Comment se porte monsieur le duc? Madame la comtesse est-elle chez elle?* But when used familiarly, both *monsieur, &c.*, and the article are omitted; as, *Bonjour, comte, comment allez-vous?*

235 The article *le, la, les*, is used with nouns of *measure, weight, and number*, in speaking of the price of a thing, whereas *a* or *an* is used in English; as

cinq francs *le* boisseau
 deux schellings *la* livre
 trois francs *la* douzaine

five francs a bushel
two shillings a pound
three francs a dozen

236 In speaking of portions of time, or of what is paid for *salary, wages, fees, or admittance* to public places, we use in French the preposition *par*; whereas the English employ *a* or *an*; as

cent guinées *par* an
 dix francs *par* jour
 six schellings *par* billet

a hundred guineas a year
ten francs per day
six shillings a ticket

237 *Du, de la, des*, are used before substantives common having a partitive sense, that is, denoting a *part, a portion* of the persons or things spoken of, and whenever *some* or *any* precedes, or might precede, a noun in English; as

il a *du* papier
 donnez-moi *de la* bière
 nous avons *des* amis
 avez-vous *des* sœurs?

he has some paper
give me some beer
we have friends
have you any sisters?

Read, translate, and write.

Le prince Louis Napoléon fut nommé président de la République en 1848. *Le* cardinal Wolsey était un célèbre ministre de Henri VIII. *Le* comte de Chambord est l'héritier légitime du trône de France. *Le* général Pélissier est maintenant *le* Maréchal, duc de Malakoff. Le bon vin de Bordeaux se vend de 250 à 450 francs *la* feuillette. Le thé, en France, coûte douze francs *la*

livre. On vend les pommes de terre *à la livre*. Notre premier professeur a huit cents livres sterling *par an*. Combien prenez-vous *par leçon*? Je prends dix guinées *par trimestre*. Le dîner est à trois francs *par tête*. Ces pommes me coûtent deux schellings *la douzaine*. Êtes-vous le Professeur Gellert? Non; je suis le Docteur Muller. Ces malheureux ont-ils *du pain et de la viande*? Il a *de l'argent, des terres, et du crédit*.

Exercise.

General Kleber was killed¹ in Egypt. Admiral Nelson fell² at the battle of Trafalgar. Captain Cook was one of the most celebrated navigators of his age³. We saw⁴ Prince Albert at the opening⁵ of the (Crystal Palace⁶). The Prince of Wales⁷, son of Victoria, queen of England, (was born⁸) in 1841. King Louis the Sixteenth died on the scaffold. We expect Professor Wilson. Good wine (is sold⁹) for five shillings a bottle¹⁰, and beer for two shillings a gallon¹¹. He sells¹² sugar at seven pence¹³ a pound¹⁴. Corn¹⁵ is generally sold in France at four francs a bushel¹⁶, and hay for thirty francs a (thousand-weight¹⁷). (How much¹⁸) a dozen? My brother receives three hundred guineas a year¹⁹, and he pays²⁰ twenty shillings a week²¹ for his apartments. I give three shillings a day²² to my gardener. Give me some bread and some butter, some beer or some water. Spain²³ produces²⁴ lemons²⁵, oranges, and olives. Money²⁶ gives to a woman credit, friends, birth²⁷, and beauty. Have you any books for me? Has he any paper? We have friends who come²⁸ this evening.

¹ tuer ² tomber ³ siècle *m.* ⁴ voir ⁵ ouverture *f.* ⁶ palais de cristal *m.* ⁷ Galles ⁸ est né ⁹ se vendre ¹⁰ bouteille *f.* ¹¹ gallon *m.* ¹² vendre ¹³ pence ¹⁴ livre *f.* ¹⁵ blé *m.* ¹⁶ boisseau *m.* ¹⁷ mllier *m.* ¹⁸ Combien ¹⁹ an ²⁰ payer ²¹ semaine ²² jour ²³ Espagne ²⁴ produire ²⁵ citron ²⁶ argent ²⁷ naissance *f.* ²⁸ venir.

Suppression of the Article.

238 No article is used before proper names of *persons, towns, and villages*; as

Racine et Molière
Londres et Paris

Racine and Molière
London and Paris

239 However, a few proper names of persons are excepted from this rule, such as *l'Arioste, le Tasse, le Dante, le Titien, le Poussin, le Corrége, &c.*, which always take the article in imitation of the Italians.

240 There are also some towns whose names are always preceded by the article; as *le Havre, le Mans, la Rochelle, la Flèche, la Haye, la Mecque, &c.* The article is also used when some expression particularising the name of the town precedes or follows it; as *le Paris du XV^e siècle*.

241 If a substantive, taken in a partitive sense, is preceded in French by an adjective or an active verb with a

negation, the preposition *de* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the article *du*, *de la*, *des* ; as

donnez-moi <i>de bon pain</i>	<i>give me good bread</i>
j'ai <i>de bonne viande</i>	<i>I have good meat</i>
il a <i>de beaux chevaux</i>	<i>he has fine horses</i>
ils n'ont pas <i>de vin</i>	<i>they have not any wine</i>
n'avez-vous pas <i>d'amis</i> ?	<i>have you no friends ?</i>

242 Observe, however, that if an adjective forms a part of a compound word, or is essential to the sense, as in *beau-père*, *belle-mère*, *petit-pain*, *jeunes gens*, *beau monde*, *beau temps*, &c., the article must be used ; as *Il y a DES belles-mères qui valent de vraies mères—Voilà DES jeunes gens studieux—Apportez-moi DES petits-pains—Aurons-nous DU beau temps ?*

243 In interrogative negative sentences, the article *du*, *de la*, or *des*, is used or suppressed according to the *partitive* or *negative* sense intended to be given to the sentence ; as

Partitive.

n'avez-vous pas <i>des enfants</i> ?	<i>have you not children ?</i>
n'avez-vous pas <i>du pain</i> ?	<i>have you not bread ?</i>

Negative.

n'avez-vous point <i>d'enfants</i> ?	<i>have you no children ?</i>
n'avez-vous point <i>de pain</i> ?	<i>have you no bread ?</i>

Without the article, the interrogation is a mere question, implying doubt ; whereas with the article it means that you have children and bread.

244 No article is used in French after collective substantives, or adverbs of quantity ; the preposition *de* alone being employed ; as

une foule <i>de gens</i>	<i>a crowd of people</i>
une troupe <i>de soldats</i>	<i>a troop of soldiers</i>
beaucoup <i>de courage</i>	<i>a great deal of courage</i>
trop <i>de vanité</i>	<i>too much vanity</i>

245 EXCEPTION.—When the substantive is taken in a specified sense, the article must be expressed ; as *un grand nombre des personnes que j'ai vues*. It is also used after *la plupart* and *bien* ; as *la plupart des hommes ; bien des amis*.

Read, translate, and write.

Londres et Paris sont les deux plus grandes capitales de l'Europe. Avez-vous jamais été à Berlin ? Frédéric II, roi de Prusse, était un grand guerrier. Alexandre, Annibal, César, et

Napoléon étaient de grands capitaines. *Le Corrège*, et *le Titien* étaient deux grands peintres italiens. Il y a de très-beaux arbres dans la forêt de Fontainebleau. Il n'y a pas de maisons sur cette route. Comment pouvez-vous vous ennuyer? n'avez-vous pas des livres? Je ne puis lire, puisque je n'ai pas de livres. Boulanger, avez-vous des petits-pains? Une troupe de nymphes couronnées de fleurs nageaient en foule derrière le char de la déesse. Je n'ai pas beaucoup de temps à vous donner. A-t-elle versé beaucoup de larmes? Il a trop de bon sens pour agir ainsi. Nous avons traversé une forêt de sapins. Tant d'hommes ne seraient pas si insolents, si tant d'autres n'étaient pas si bêtes. Il y a bien des personnes curieuses dans le monde. J'ai goûté du bon fromage que vous avez acheté hier.

Exercise.

Rome and Carthage were for¹ a long time fighting² for³ the empire of the world⁴. Shakespeare and Milton are the two greatest⁵ poets of England. Titian⁶ is one of my favourite⁷ painters. We have fine pears and good peaches in our garden. Great events⁸ happened⁹ in February, 1848. Those soldiers (had no¹⁰) shoes¹, and often no¹² bread. They have no pencils and no pens. Have you no horses? How can you stay at home? have you not horses? Our young officers showed¹³ (a great deal¹⁴) of courage on¹⁵ that occasion. A great number of men were killed¹⁶ under the walls of the town. What¹⁷ a crowd of people! That man has (too much¹⁸) pride. Most¹⁹ (young men²⁰) boast²¹ too much. We have many enemies and few friends.

¹ pendant ² combattre ³ pour ⁴ monde ⁵ plus grand ⁶ Titien ⁷ favori ⁸ événement ⁹ arriver ¹⁰ n'avoir pas ¹¹ soulier ¹² pas ¹³ montrer ¹⁴ beaucoup de ¹⁵ dans ¹⁶ tuer ¹⁷ Quelle ¹⁸ trop de ¹⁹ La plupart ²⁰ jeunes gens ²¹ se vanter

246 No article is used before common nouns preceded by the words *sans*, *avec*, *entre*, *de*, *soit*, *par*, *pour*, *ni*, *sur*, *jamais*, *comme*, or *en*, when the sense is vague and indeterminate; as

un homme *sans* mérite
combattre *avec* courage
entre amis, on n'a pas de secrets
une vie pleine *de* charmes
il n'a *ni* père *ni* mère
comme poète et historien
il mourut *en* héros

a man *without* merit
to fight *with* courage
between friends one has no secrets
a life *full of* charms
he has *neither* father *nor* mother
as a poet and historian
he died *as* a hero

247 No article is used before common substantives, when they form but one idea with the verb which precedes them; as

avoir besoin, *to want*
avoir envie, *to wish*

avoir peur, *to be afraid*
avoir pitié, *to pity*

avoir froid, *to be cold*
 avoir soif, *to be thirsty*
 avoir soin, *to take care*
 faire peur, *to frighten*
 faire tort, *to wrong*
 faire voile, *to set sail*

mettre fin à, *to put an end to*
 porter envie, *to bear envy*
 porter malheur, *to bring bad luck*
 prendre garde, *to take care*
 prendre plaisir, *to delight*
 rendre grâce, *to return thanks*

248 The article is omitted in French in proverbial sentences, in enumerations, and before nouns used exclaimatively; as

pauvreté n'est pas vice
 hommes, femmes, enfants, tout périt!
 soldats! la patrie compte sur vous

poverty is no vice
men, women, children, all perished!
soldiers! the country relies on you

249 No article is placed before a substantive used *adjectively*, that is, to qualify or particularise another which precedes it; as

Frédéric roi de Prusse
 Paris capitale de la France
 Corneille auteur dramatique

Frederick the king of Prussia
Paris the capital of France
Corneille a dramatic author

250 The article is omitted in French before any number used after substantives to indicate rank or order; as

livre premier
 chapitre dix
 Henri quatre
 Charles douze

book the first
chapter the tenth
Henry the Fourth
Charles the Twelfth

251 No article is used in French, as in English, before a noun expressing the nationality, profession, or trade of the individual, the noun being then a mere adjective; as

Calvin était Français
 Garrick était comédien
 je suis médecin
 son père est avocat

Calvin was a Frenchman
 Garrick was an actor
 I am a physician
 his father is a barrister

252 But *un, une, or des* for the plural, must be used when the sentence begins with *c'est, ce sont, c'était, &c.*; as *c'est un Français; c'était un Anglais.*

253 The article is omitted in French when the substantive begins the title of a book or the heading of a chapter; as

grammaire française
 voyage en Chine
 essai sur l'homme

a French grammar
a voyage to China
an essay on man

254 The article is omitted after *quel*, *what*, used in exclamations ; as

quel homme !
 quelle femme !
 quel beau château !

what a man !
what a woman !
what a beautiful castle !

255 The English article *the*, when used before *more* or *less*, repeated in a sentence, is not expressed in French ; as

plus on a, plus on veut avoir
the more we have, the more we wish to have

Read, translate, and write.

Les hommes *sans* passions, *sans* vertus, et *sans* vices, n'ont qu'un seul sentiment : la vanité mal déguisée. *Entre* voisins, on se parle *avec* franchise. Lequel préférez-vous *comme* poète épique d'Homère ou de Virgile ? Homère, *comme* génie créateur, mérite la préférence. *Jamais* père ne fut plus heureux que vous l'êtes. Cette bonne action vous *portera* bonheur. Paul et Virginie s'assirent sous un arbre, accablés *de* lassitude, *de* faim et *de* soif. *Soldats*, s'écrie Bonaparte, songez que du haut de ces monuments, quarante siècles vous contemplent ! *Témérité* n'est pas *prudence*. *Vieillards, femmes, enfants*, tous voulaient me voir. La Bourgogne, *province* de France, est fertile en vins. Minerve, *déesse* de la sagesse, conduisait Télémaque. Louis *quatorze* protégeait les hommes de lettres. Charles *douze* fut vaincu à Pultava. Son frère est *peintre*, et sa sœur est *musicienne*. Sa mère est *Française*, mais son père était *Allemand*. C'est un *Italien* qui a attenté à la vie de Napoléon *trois*. Voici le titre de l'ouvrage : *Essai* sur l'histoire de France, par Guizot. *Quel* malheur, qu'il soit mort si jeune ! *Quel* tableau ravissant présentent les campagnes !

Exercise.

Where did you buy¹ that fine marble (chimney-piece²) ? Human life is full³ of disappointments⁴. Those⁵ who speak without⁶ reflection are (exposed to⁷) many⁸ errors. If you are (endowed with⁹) wit¹⁰ and judgment, be not (puffed up with¹¹) pride. Do you consider him as a poet or as a moralist ? Have pity (on the¹²) poor, and (return thanks¹³) to God for (that which¹⁴) you have received from Him. I am dying¹⁵ of thirst. Have you (a mind¹⁶) (to go for¹⁷) a walk¹⁸ ? Temerity is not prudence. Fortune, credit, esteem, all¹⁹ was lost²⁰ in one day. Friends, I leave²¹ you for ever ! Mountains, valleys, and you, charming village, I shall never (see you again²²) ! The Duke of Orleans, the eldest²³ son of Louis-Philippe the First, was killed²⁴ by an accident

¹ acheter ² cheminée *f.* ³ plein ⁴ revers ⁵ Ceux ⁶ sans ⁷ exposer à ⁸ beaucoup de ⁹ doué de ¹⁰ esprit ¹¹ gonflé de ¹² des ¹³ rendre grâce ¹⁴ ce que ¹⁵ mourir ¹⁶ envie ¹⁷ de faire ¹⁸ promenade *f.* ¹⁹ tout ²⁰ perdre ²¹ quitter ²² vous revoir ²³ aîné ²⁴ tuer

on the 13th of July, 1842. Charles the Tenth, king of France, lost his throne at the Revolution of 1830. William the Third, king of England, married²⁵ the Princess Mary,²⁶ daughter of James²⁷ the Second. You will find²⁸ that history- at page ten, book the third, chapter²⁹ the second. Walter Scott was a Scotchman. Her husband was a general. Her father is a tailor. What is the title of his book? A French and English dictionary. What a handsome woman! What a large³⁰ house! What a pity³¹ to destroy it! The less you spend³², the more you will have.

²⁵ épouser ²⁶ Marie ²⁷ Jacques ²⁸ trouver ²⁹ chapitre ³⁰ grand ³¹ dommage *m.*
³² dépenser.

SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The difference of construction, in French and in English, of such sentences as, my *father's* house, *la maison de mon père*; the *queen's* carriage, *la voiture de la reine*, &c., has already been shown (No. 26).

256 When by the 's the words *house*, *dwelling*, &c., are understood, the French use *chez*; as, there was an evening party at Mr. Cobden's, *il y avait une soirée CHEZ M. Cobden*; he is gone to his uncle's, *il est allé CHEZ son oncle*.

Of Compound Substantives.

257 In French, the latter of two substantives having relation to each other is always preceded by a preposition, as *de* or *à*. The preposition *de* is used (**27**) when *made of*, *coming from*, *of the*, or *belonging to* can be understood, and the word standing last in English comes first in French, with *de* between the two; as

une table <i>de</i> marbre	<i>a marble table</i>
une chaîne <i>d'</i> or	<i>a gold chain</i>
du vin <i>de</i> Bourgogne	<i>Burgundy wine</i>
de l'huile <i>d'</i> olive	<i>olive oil</i>
une robe <i>d'</i> hiver	<i>a winter dress</i>

258 The preposition *à* is placed between the two words when one expresses the *use* or *purpose* of the other, and also when *by means of*, *with*, or *having*, can be understood, the last word in English being put first in French; as

des armes <i>à</i> feu	<i>fire-arms</i>
un pot <i>à</i> eau	<i>a water-pot</i>
une salle <i>à</i> manger	<i>a dining-room</i>
un bateau <i>à</i> vapeur	<i>a steam-boat</i>
une voiture <i>à</i> deux roues	<i>a two-wheeled carriage</i>

259 The preposition *à* with the *article* is used before a noun representing what is sold in a place, or when the first word is intended to contain the second; as

le marché <i>au</i> blé	<i>the corn-market</i>
la foire <i>aux</i> bestiaux	<i>the cattle-fair</i>
la boîte <i>aux</i> lettres	<i>the letter-box</i>
l'armoire <i>au</i> linge	<i>the linen-press</i>
la cave <i>à</i> la bière	<i>the beer-cellar</i>

Read, translate, and write.

La Notre-Dame de Paris de Victor Hugo est un roman historique du plus grand intérêt. Il sait par cœur la plupart des fables de La Fontaine. La chambre de ma mère a un papier bleu. Monsieur B—— est-il *chez lui*? Dites-lui que je serai *chez moi* toute la matinée. Avez-vous été au *jardin d'hiver*? Elle avait des *bas de soie* et des *souliers de satin*. Combien coûte une bouteille de *vin de Bourgogne*? Je préfère une branche de lilas à un *pot de giroflée*. Il a fait bâtir un moulin à vent, un moulin à eau, et un moulin à vapeur. Une voiture à quatre roues paie plus d'impôt qu'une voiture à deux roues. J'aime beaucoup la chasse au renard. C'est une belle fille *aux yeux noirs*. Où est mon mouchoir de poche? Dans la chambre à coucher. Pouvez-vous me dire où est la boîte aux lettres? Elle est au coin du marché au poisson.

Exercise on the Substantive.

You will find¹ that book in my father's library². Have you read³ Shakespeare's tragedies and Molière's comedies? Cicero's⁴ eloquence and Cato's⁵ virtue will always be⁶ the admiration of posterity⁷. The character⁸ of Æsop's⁹ fables is simple nature. I shall call¹⁰ at your house to-morrow. Go to my tailor's, he works¹¹ well. Is there a ball at the French ambassador's? The galleries¹² of the house are supported¹³ by several iron pillars¹⁴. The Spanish¹⁵ wool is one of the best¹⁶ of Europe. I always keep¹⁷ fire-arms in my bedroom¹⁸ for my safety¹⁹ during the night. Where is the milk-pot? Port²⁰ wine is very dear in England. Shall you build²¹ a three-story²² house? Where is the hay-market? It is near the flower-market. You have broken²³ the mustard-pot. The inventor of gunpowder was a German monk, named Schwartz.

¹ trouver ² bibliothèque ³ lire ⁴ Cicéron ⁵ Caton ⁶ faire ⁷ postérité *f.* ⁸ caractère *m.* ⁹ Ésope ¹⁰ passer ¹¹ travailler ¹² galerie *f. pl.* ¹³ soutenir ¹⁴ pilier ¹⁵ Espagnole ¹⁶ meilleur ¹⁷ tenir ¹⁸ chambre à coucher ¹⁹ sûreté *f.* ²⁰ Oporto ²¹ bâtir ²² trois étages ²³ casser.

Of Collective Nouns.

There are two sorts of collective nouns, the *collective general* and the *collective partitive*.

260 The *collective general* represents the whole object or collection, as *l'armée, le peuple, la flotte, la famille, &c.*, and requires that the *verb, adjective, or pronoun* to which it has reference should always be put in the singular; as

<i>la famille est partie</i>	<i>the family are gone</i>
<i>le peuple est mécontent</i>	<i>the people are dissatisfied</i>

261 The *collective partitive* represents only a portion of the whole object, or collection, as *une foule, une multitude, une infinité, &c.*, and requires that the verb to which it relates should be generally in the plural*; as

<i>une troupe de soldats l'entourèrent</i>	<i>a troop of soldiers surrounded him</i>
<i>une foule d'enfants le suivaient</i>	<i>a crowd of children followed him</i>

NOTE.—A verb is always put in the plural after *la plupart*, unless it is followed by a substantive in the singular; as *la plupart le disent*; *la plupart du monde le dit*.

Number of Proper Names.

262 GENERAL RULE.—In French, proper names of individuals do *not* take the mark of the plural; as

<i>les deux Corneille sont nés à Rouen</i>	<i>the two Corneilles were born at Rouen</i>

263 Sometimes the plural article *les, des, or aux*, is placed before proper names, though denoting only one person, but they do not take the mark of the plural; as

<i>les Corneille et les Racine ont illustré la scène française</i>	<i>Corneille and Racine have illustrated the French stage</i>

264 EXCEPTIONS.—Proper names become *common nouns* whenever they refer to individuals resembling those celebrated characters whose names are used to denote qualifications, and then they take the mark of the plural; as

<i>la France a eu ses Césars et ses Pompées,—des généraux comme César et comme Pompée</i>	<i>France has had her Cæsars and Pompeys,—generals like Cæsar and like Pompey</i>

* But this cannot be given as a rule, as we find many examples in which the verb is put in the singular. In such cases we must consider which of the two words commands the agreement; as

une foule d'ennemis s'affrît à nous.
une troupe d'hommes armés parut à mes yeux.—FLORIAN.
une foule de soldats y furent noyés.—VOLTAIRE.

265 We write also in the plural: les *Bourbons*, les *Condés*, les *Guises*, les *Stuarts*, &c., when these names are used only as titles and surnames belonging to particular families.

Plural of Compound Substantives.

Besides the words just mentioned (**257** and following), there are many compound substantives not formed according to the rules already given, and whose plural offers some difficulty. The following illustration will elucidate the subject.

266 When a compound noun is formed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural; as

un *basse-taille*
un *basse-cour*

des *basses-tailles*
des *basses-cours*

267 When a compound noun is formed of two substantives not separated by a preposition, both take the mark of the plural; as

un *chef-lieu*
un *chou-fleur*
un *oiseau-mouche*

des *chefs-lieux*
des *choux-fleurs*
des *oiseaux-mouches*

268 When a compound noun is formed of two substantives separated by a preposition, the first alone takes the mark of the plural; as

un *arc-en-ciel*
un *chef-d'œuvre*

des *arcs-en-ciel*
des *chefs-d'œuvre*

269 When a compound noun is formed of a substantive and an invariable word, such as a preposition, an adverb, or a verb, the substantive alone takes the mark of the plural, if required by the sense; as

un *avant-coureur*
une *arrière-saison*
une *garde-robe*

des *avant-coureurs*
des *arrière-saisons*
des *garde-robres*

But we write with an *s* in the singular as well as in the plural: un *or* des *essuie-mains*; un *or* des *porte-mouchettes*, &c., because plurality is implied.

270 If one of the two words does not qualify the other, then the use of the number for both depends on the par-

ticular sense which they suggest. Thus we write in French:—

un *appui-main*, des *appuis-main* ; des *appuis* pour la *main*
 un *brèche-dents*, des *brèche-dents* ; qui ont une *brèche aux dents*
 un *garde-côte*, des *gardes-côtes* ; des *gardes* des *côtes*
 un *abat-jour*, des *abat-jour* ; fenêtres qui abattent le *jour*
 un *coupe-gorge*, des *coupe-gorge* ; lieux où l'on coupe la *gorge*

Read, translate, and write.

Tout le *peuple*, à grands cris, *applaudit* sa victoire. La *multitude* des *étoiles* ajoute à la beauté des nuits. Un corps de *Spartiates* font tomber sur lui une grêle de traits. Une *troupe* d'hommes armés *parut* à mes yeux. Les uns courent se jeter dans la rivière de Nerwa, et une foule de *soldats* y furent *noyés*. L'Espagne s'honore d'avoir vu naître *les deux Sénèque*. Le même roi (Louis XIV) qui sut employer *les Condé, les Turenne, les Luxembourg, les Créqui, les Catinat, les Villars* dans ses armées, *les Colbert* et *les Louvois* dans son cabinet, choisit *les Racine* et *les Boileau* pour écrire son histoire ; *les Bossuet* et *les Fénelon* pour instruire ses enfants ; *les Fléchier, les Bourdaloue* et *les Massillon* pour l'instruire lui-même. Il ne faut qu'un roi littérateur pour enfanter *des Corneilles* et *des Racines*. N'admirez-vous pas *les chefs-d'œuvre* de Racine et de Molière ? La femme est le *chef-d'œuvre* de la nature. En France, il y a un préfet dans tous *les chefs-lieux* de département.

Exercise.

The whole¹ fleet (will set sail²) in the course³ of the month. A great number of soldiers lost⁴ (their lives⁵) in that battle. A crowd of nymphs⁶ crowned with⁷ flowers swam⁸ behind the car of the goddess⁹. The people wish¹⁰ for peace ; but the parliament¹¹, who (know best¹²) the interests of the nation, have voted¹³ for the continuation of the war. Are not most men (of opinion¹⁴) that happiness is in virtue ? The combat of the three Horatii¹⁵ against the three Curiatii¹⁶ (took place¹⁷) in the reign of Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome. Nature seldom produces¹⁸ (writers like¹⁹) Homer²⁰, Virgil²¹, Demosthenes, and Cicero²². The Shakespeares and the Racines are not less rare than the Marlboroughs and the Turennes. Do you see²³ those kites²⁴ over the hill ? Gardener, you shall clean²⁵ these flower-borders²⁶ to-morrow. We saw two rainbows²⁷ yesterday evening. I have bought²⁸ two corkscrews²⁹ for my dining-room. Where have you bought these beautiful fenders³⁰ ? I want three counterpanes³¹ for my bed-rooms, and a dozen towels³².

¹ toute la ² mettre à la voile ³ courant *m.* ⁴ perdre ⁵ la vie ⁶ nymphes ⁷ de
⁸ nager ⁹ déesse *f.* ¹⁰ désirer ¹¹ parlement *m.* ¹² connaître mieux ¹³ voter ¹⁴ d'avis
¹⁵ Horace ¹⁶ Curiace ¹⁷ avoir lieu ¹⁸ produire ¹⁹ des ²⁰ Homère ²¹ Virgile ²² Cicéron
²³ voir ²⁴ cerf-volant ²⁵ nettoyer ²⁶ plate-bande ²⁷ arc-en-ciel ²⁸ acheter ²⁹ tire-
 bouchon ³⁰ garde-feu ³¹ couvre-pied ³² essui-mains

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives.

271 GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives in French agree in gender and number with the substantives or pronouns to which they relate (**42**); as

un homme *heureux*
une femme *heureuse*
sont-elles *heureuses*?

a happy man
a happy woman
are they happy?

272 When two or more substantives or pronouns occur in a sentence, the adjective referring to them is put in the *plural*; and if the substantives or pronouns are of different genders, it remains in the *masculine*; as

le roi et le berger sont *égaux*
après la mort
sa mère et sa sœur sont *heureuses*
mon père et ma mère sont *Fran-*
çais

the king and the shepherd are equal
after death
his mother and sister are happy
my father and mother are French

EXCEPTIONS TO THE PRECEDING RULES.

273 An adjective placed after two or more substantives agrees with the last:—

1 When the substantives are synonymous, or convey nearly the same meaning; as

Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un *travail*, qu'une *occupation continue*lle.

MASSILLON.

2 When the substantives are united by the conjunction *ou*; as

Un *courage* ou une *prudence* *étonnante*.

La *mort* ou la *captivité* paraissait *inévitable*.—VOLTAIRE.

3 When the substantives form a gradation; as

Le *fer*, le *bandeau*, la *flamme* est toute *prête*.—RACINE.

274 The adjectives *nu* bare, *demi* half, the participles *supposé*, *excepté*, are invariable when placed before substan-

tives; the adjective *feu*, late, is also invariable before **an** article or a pronoun; as

Invariable.

il est *nu*-pieds
une *demi*-heure
supposé ces projets
excepté vos sœurs
feu la reine
feu ma mère

Variable.

il va les pieds *nus*
une heure et *demie*
ces projets *supposés*
vos sœurs *exceptées*
la *feue* reine
m^a. *feue* mère

275 The adjective *franc* is invariable in *franc de port* when it precedes the substantive, and variable when it comes after; as

j'ai reçu FRANC DE PORT *toutes ses lettres* *toutes ses lettres sont* FRANCHES *de port*

276 The compound words *ci-joint*, *ci-inclus*, are invariable at the beginning of a sentence, or when joined to a substantive used without an article, but they agree with the substantive if it is preceded by the article; as

ci-joint (or *ci-inclus*) *la copie du jugement*
vous trouverez CI-JOINT (or CI-INCLUS) *copie du traité*
vous trouverez CI-JOINTE (or CI-INCLUSE) *la copie du traité*

277 Adjectives used adverbially, that is, to qualify verbs, are always invariable; as

ces livres coûtent *cher*
ces fleurs sentent *bon*
elle chante *faux*

these books cost dear
these flowers smell nice
she sings out of tune

Read, translate, and write.

Milton était *aveugle* et *tourmenté* de la goutte. Une vie *étroite* et pauvre, de *nombreux* ennemis, le sentiment *amer* de ses illusions *démenties*, le poids *humiliant* de la disgrâce *publique*, la tristesse de l'âme et les souffrances du corps, tout accablait Milton. Les femmes et les enfants furent *massacrés* dans les maisons. Je tâche de rendre *heureux* ma femme, mon enfant, et même mon chien. Ma mère et ma sœur sont *parties* ce matin. Il s'exprime avec une grâce, une politesse *parfaite*. Il aura le mépris ou la confiance *publique*, selon qu'il agira bien ou mal. Diogène marchait *nu-pieds* et couchait dans un tonneau. Les *demi*-dieux des anciens n'étaient que des hommes remarquables par leur valeur et leur vertu. Il y a une *demi*-heure qu'il est sorti, et il ne reviendra qu'à dix heures et *demie* du soir. Les bourgeois vinrent pieds *nus* lui remettre les clés de la ville. Vous recevrez *franc de*

port toutes les lettres que je vous enverrai. Je vous envoie *ci-incluse* la lettre de mon correspondant. Cette huile coûte-t-elle *cher* ? Je ne l'aime pas, elle sent *fort*.

Exercise on the Adjective.

Our minister has profound judgment¹, invariable industry², and a very extensive³ knowledge⁴ of the interests of foreign⁵ courts⁶. The victory which Cæsar⁷ obtained⁸ on the plains of Pharsalia⁹ was pernicious¹⁰ to his country¹¹, and dismal¹² (to human nature¹³). French literature had a great influence under Louis the Fourteenth. Modesty and disinterestedness¹⁴ deserve¹⁵ to be praised¹⁶ and admired. That young man renders¹⁷ his father and mother happy. My sister and daughter will be (very glad¹⁸) to see you. The troops fought¹⁹ with wonderful²⁰ courage and intrepidity. The soldiers of the army (were walking²¹) bare-footed. I want half²² a pound²³ of tea, and a pound and a half of sugar. I sent²⁴ all my letters post paid²⁵. The enclosed²⁶ letter is a copy of that which I received yesterday. Was not the late Duke²⁷ of Wellington the greatest man of his age²⁸? Do these books cost²⁹ dear? These boys speak³⁰ too loud³¹. Does not the meat³² which the butcher has given you smell³³ bad³⁴?

¹ un jugement ² industrie *f.* ³ étendu ⁴ connaissance *f.* ⁵ étranger ⁶ cour *f.*
⁷ Cæsar ⁸ gagner ⁹ Pharsale ¹⁰ pernicieux ¹¹ pays *m.* ¹² désastreux ¹³ pour le
 genre humain ¹⁴ désintéressement *m.* ¹⁵ mériter ¹⁶ louer ¹⁷ rendre ¹⁸ bien aise
¹⁹ combattre ²⁰ étonnant ²¹ marcher ²² demi ²³ livre *f.* ²⁴ envoyer ²⁵ franc de
 port ²⁶ ci-inclus ²⁷ duc *m.* ²⁸ siècle *m.* ²⁹ coûter ³⁰ parler ³¹ haut ³² viande *f.*
³³ sentir ³⁴ mauvais.

Position of Adjectives.

We have seen (p. 27, No. 56) that adjectives in French are usually placed *after* the substantives; but this cannot be given as a rule, since a great number of adjectives precede or follow, just as taste or sound directs.

278 Those adjectives that must precede the substantive (58) require to be repeated when there are several in the sentence; as

les Arabes ont de <i>belles</i> armes et	<i>the Arabs have beautiful arms and</i>
de <i>beaux</i> chevaux	<i>horses</i>

279 Adjectives expressing *shape, colour*, flavour, nationality*, in short, any physical or accidental quality, follow their substantives; as

un chapeau <i>ron</i> d	<i>a round hat</i>
un habit <i>no</i> ir	<i>a black coat</i>
des amandes <i>do</i> nces	<i>sweet almonds</i>
un brick <i>fran</i> çais	<i>a French brig</i>

* NOTE.—When the colour is expressed by a compound adjective, such as *bleu-clair*, *bleu-foncé*, the two words remain invariable: *une robe bleu-vert*; *des habits bleu-foncé*; *des cheveux blond-crêné*, *châtain-clair*, &c.

280 But we say : *les vertes prairies, les blonds épis, la blanche aubépine, les noirs soucis, &c.*, because the adjective precedes its substantive whenever it expresses an habitual or inherent quality. Thus we say : *un fidèle ami*, but not *un fidèle homme* ; *une basse intrigue*, but not *une basse action*.

281 When two or more adjectives have relation to the same substantive, they generally follow it, the last being preceded by *et* ; as

<i>une mère bonne et sensible</i>	<i>a good and sensible mother</i>
<i>une femme jeune, belle, et vertueuse</i>	<i>a young, beautiful, and virtuous woman</i>

282 However, we see sometimes a noun between two adjectives, or the two adjectives before the noun, in sentences like the following :—

<i>un grand homme sec</i>	<i>a tall thin man</i>
<i>un petit chapeau bleu</i>	<i>a little blue bonnet</i>
<i>un bon petit diner</i>	<i>a nice little dinner</i>

283 The participles past of verbs, when used adjectively, are placed after their substantives ; as

<i>un homme instruit</i>	<i>a learned man</i>
<i>une action défendue</i>	<i>a forbidden action</i>

284 OBSERVE.—The meaning of some adjectives differs according to their position, *before* or *after* the substantive, as the following examples will show :—

<i>Before.</i>	<i>After.</i>
<i>ancien ami, old friend</i>	<i>Rome ancienne, ancient Rome</i>
<i>brave* homme, honest man</i>	<i>homme brave, brave man</i>
<i>digne homme, worthy man</i>	<i>air digne, dignified air</i>
<i>franc coquin, downright rogue</i>	<i>cœur franc, open heart</i>
<i>grand homme, great man</i>	<i>homme grand†, tall man</i>
<i>honnête homme, honest man</i>	<i>homme honnête, polite man</i>
<i>maigre diner, poor dinner</i>	<i>cheval maigre, lean horse</i>
<i>pauvre poète, sorry poet</i>	<i>poète pauvre, needy poet</i>
<i>propres mains, own hands</i>	<i>mains propres, clean hands</i>
<i>simple soldat, common soldier</i>	<i>homme simple, artless man</i>

Read, translate, and write.

Pourquoi as-tu quitté cet *heureux* nid, et tes *petits* enfants, et ta *vieille* mère, et cette *vallée charmante* ? Sur le penchant de quel-

* With the exception of *homme, femme, garçon, fille, &c.*, the adjective *brave*, "courageous," always precedes ; as *braves camarades, braves soldats, &c.*

† This applies to *homme* only ; with any other noun, *grand* must always precede ; as, *une grande femme, un grand cheval, &c.*

que *agréable* colline bien *ombragée*, j'aurais une *petite* maison *rustique*, une maison *blanche* avec des contrevents *verts*. Il vint à passer un *petit* monsieur *poudré*, *sec*, *vif*, et à qui Antoine adressa son memento *criard*. Que^o de types *divers* et *touchants* ! La figure *vénérable* du soldat, la physionomie si *bonne* et si *tendre* de ma mère *adoptive*, et le *frais* et *charmant* visage d'Angèle souriant à son *petit* enfant, la *douce* mélancolie de la *Mayeux*, appuyant de temps à autre ses lèvres sur la tête *blonde* et *rieuse* du fils *aîné* d'Agricole. La différence entre un *pauvre* auteur et un auteur *pauvre* est que le premier est sans mérite et le second sans fortune.

Exercise.

You have sold¹ me a bad² (58) horse. A good king often loses³, by the ill-conduct⁴ of his ministers, the affection of his subjects. A little child is the emblem⁵ of innocence. I have seen⁶ pretty ribbons and flowers in that shop. That gentleman has always very fine horses and dogs. Had he not a blue coat⁷ (embroidered with⁸) gold? Napoleon I. often wore⁹ a grey coat¹⁰, buttoned over the chest¹¹, and a round hat (with broad brim¹²). You sent me bitter¹³ beer, and I like mild¹⁴ ale¹⁵. We had two grey horses and a yellow carriage¹⁶. There were two French brigs and three English frigates. The queen had a fine blue dress and a long white shawl. A plain¹⁷, simple, and natural style. Great and extensive¹⁸ projects, conducted¹⁹ with wisdom, constitute²⁰ the great minister. A tall²¹ man is not always a great²² man. I expect²³ from you a written exercise²⁴. I (do not like²⁵) spoiled²⁶ children. They sent²⁷ a large²⁸ army to the succour of the besieged²⁹ town. I live³⁰ in a pretty little cottage situated on the hill. Has he not a new hat? When you go to town, bring³¹ me some new books to read. There is a great difference between a polite (*honnête*) man and an honest man.

¹ vendre ² mauvais ³ perdre ⁴ conduite *f.* ⁵ emblème ⁶ voir ⁷ habit *m.* ⁸ brodé
de ⁹ porter ¹⁰ redingote *f.* ¹¹ poitrine *f.* ¹² à larges bords ¹³ amer ¹⁴ doux ¹⁵ ale *f.*
¹⁶ voiture *f.* ¹⁷ uni ¹⁸ vaste ¹⁹ conduit ²⁰ faire ²¹ grand ²² grand ²³ attendre
²⁴ thème *m.* ²⁵ n'aimer pas ²⁶ gâté ²⁷ envoyer ²⁸ grand ²⁹ assiégé ³⁰ demeurer
³¹ apporter.

Government of Adjectives.

285 The *government* or *object* of adjectives is a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb preceded by a preposition, such as *à*, *de*, *dans*, *en*, *envers*, *sur*, *pour*, &c. ; as

digne *de* récompense
propre *à* la guerre
il est bon *envers* moi
il est prêt *à* partir

worthy *of* reward
fit *for* war
he is kind *to* me
he is ready *to* start

286 Some adjectives have no government, having of

themselves a complete meaning, such as *inviolable*, *vertueux*, *honnête*, &c.

les droits sacrés de l'amitié sont *the sacred rights of friendship*
inviolables *are inviolable*

287 Some adjectives, as *prêt*, *utile*, *fier*, *heureux*, &c., are occasionally used with prepositions, and others, like *enclin*, *comblé*, *doué*, &c., are indispensably combined with them; as

l'ignorance toujours est *prête* à s'admirer
 lorsque vous viendrez, je serai *prêt*
 il est *enclin* à la paresse

Adjectives governing the Preposition DE.

288 Adjectives which denote *plenty*, *scarcity*, or *want*, and in general all those followed in English by the prepositions *of*, *from*, or *with*, require the preposition *de* before the noun which they govern; as

il est *comblé* d'honneurs *he is loaded with honours*
 je suis *privé* de tout *I am deprived of everything*

Adjectives requiring DE.

absent <i>absent</i>	fou <i>mad</i>
accusé <i>accused</i>	furieux <i>furious</i>
avide <i>greedy</i>	glorieux <i>glorious</i>
capable <i>capable</i>	heureux <i>happy</i>
chéri <i>cherished</i>	honteux <i>ashamed</i>
comblé <i>loaded</i>	ivre <i>intoxicated</i>
content <i>happy, satisfied</i>	jaloux <i>jealous</i>
connu <i>known</i>	joyeux <i>joyful</i>
couvert <i>covered</i>	
dénué <i>destitute</i>	orgueilleux <i>proud</i>
désireux <i>desirous</i>	plein <i>full</i>
digne <i>worthy</i>	ravi <i>delighted</i>
enchanté <i>delighted</i>	rempli <i>filled</i>
envieux <i>envious</i>	satisfait <i>satisfied</i>
exempt <i>free</i>	soigneux <i>careful</i>
fier <i>proud</i>	sûr <i>sure</i>
fort <i>strong</i>	triste <i>sad</i>

NOTE.—After the impersonal verb *il est*, *il était*, or *c'est*, *c'était*, all adjectives take *de*; as *il est difficile de le contenter* it is difficult to please him.

289 Adjectives which denote *aptness*, *fitness*, *necessity*, *inclination*, *readiness*, or any *habit*, require the preposition *à* before the noun which they govern; as

cet officier est *utile* à son pays *this officer is useful to his country*
 il est *attentif* à sa leçon *he is attentive to his lesson*

Adjectives requiring À.

accessible <i>accessible</i>	nuisible <i>hurtful</i>
accoutumé <i>accustomed</i>	odieux <i>odious</i>
agréable <i>agreeable</i>	opposé <i>contrary</i>
attentif <i>attentive</i>	pareil <i>similar</i>
cher <i>dear</i>	porté <i>inclined</i>
contraire <i>contrary</i>	préférable <i>preferable</i>
convenable <i>suitable</i>	préjudiciable <i>injurious</i>
difficile <i>difficult</i>	prêt <i>ready</i>
égal <i>equal</i>	prompt <i>ready, quick</i>
enclin <i>inclined</i>	propice <i>propitious</i>
exact <i>punctual</i>	propre <i>fit</i>
facile <i>easy</i>	sensible <i>sensible</i>
favorable <i>favourable</i>	sourd <i>deaf</i>
funeste <i>fatal</i>	sujet <i>liable</i>
habile <i>clever</i>	utile <i>useful</i>

290 Some adjectives govern sometimes one preposition, sometimes another; as *affable à* or *envers tout le monde*. Others change the preposition they govern, according as they are followed by a noun of person or thing, by a substantive or a verb; as *reconnaissant** **ENVERS** *une personne*—*reconnaissant d'un bienfait*—*habile DANS la* or *EN peinture*—*habile à se déguiser*.

affable <i>à</i> or <i>envers</i>	inquiet <i>de</i> or <i>sur</i>
ardent <i>à</i> or <i>pour</i>	nécessaire <i>à</i> or <i>pour</i>
assidu <i>à</i> or <i>auprès de</i>	reconnaissant <i>de</i> or <i>envers</i>
coupable <i>de</i> or <i>envers</i>	redevable <i>à</i> or <i>de</i>
fidèle <i>à, en, or dans</i>	redoutable <i>à</i> or <i>dans</i>
inférieur <i>à</i> or <i>en</i>	responsable <i>à</i> or <i>envers</i>
injurieux <i>à</i> or <i>pour</i>	sévère <i>envers, à, or pour</i>

Read, translate, and write.

Ceux qui sont *avides* de louanges sont *prodigues* d'argent. *Fier* de sa noblesse, *jalous* de sa beauté, le cygne semble faire parade de tous ses avantages. Après une si longue absence, êtes-vous *fâché* de vous revoir dans votre royaume? Je ne suis pas *fâché* contre vous. Nos soldats sont revenus d'Italie *couverts* de gloire. Ceux qui ne sont *contents* de personne sont ceux même dont personne n'est *content*. Ce peuple belliqueux *accoutumé* à des conquêtes, *accoutumé* au travail, à la peine et au mépris de la vie. La respiration est *nécessaire* à la vie. St. Louis, roi de France, était *affable* *envers* tous et *bienveillant* *pour* chacun. Les riches sont *portés* à croire qu'ils sont supérieurs *aux* autres hommes. Ce

* Adjectives expressing behaviour towards others require the preposition *envers*; as, do not be *cruel* to animals *ne soyez pas CRUEL ENVERS les animaux*.

passage n'est pas facile à comprendre. Il est facile de se tromper. Ce jeune homme est assidu à son devoir et très-assidu auprès du prince. Ne soyez pas sourds à la voix de la religion.

Exercise on the Government of Adjectives.

I am tired¹ with running². Human life is never free³ from trouble. Most⁴ men are dissatisfied⁵ with their condition. It is sweet⁶ to observe the laws of friendship. That young man⁷ is esteemed by all⁸ who know⁹ him. The trees of my garden are loaded¹⁰ with fruit. Is it not glorious to be useful to one's fellow-creatures¹¹? Gustavus the Great was hid¹² in a waggon¹³ filled¹⁴ with straw. Voltaire was very greedy¹⁵ of praise, and insatiable of glory. Are you not uneasy¹⁶ about that affair? He is slow¹⁷ to punish and prompt in rewarding¹⁸. This is contrary to all the rules of good breeding¹⁹. Is your father angry²⁰ with you? Louis IX. was liberal, just, and affable to everybody²¹. Are these apples fit²² for eating? He is very clever²³ in drawing²⁴. A Christian ought²⁵ to be ready²⁶ to die (rather than²⁷) to deny²⁸ his faith. Most children are inclined²⁹ to idleness. That is easy³⁰ to say. His daughter is subject³¹ to frequent headaches³².

¹ fatigué ² courir ³ exempt ⁴ La plupart des ⁵ mécontent ⁶ doux ⁷ jeune homme ⁸ tous ceux ⁹ connaître ¹⁰ chargé ¹¹ semblables ¹² caché ¹³ chariot ¹⁴ rempli ¹⁵ avide ¹⁶ inquiet ¹⁷ lent ¹⁸ récompenser ¹⁹ savoir-vivre ²⁰ fâché ²¹ tout le monde ²² bon ²³ habile ²⁴ dessin ²⁵ devoir ²⁶ prêt ²⁷ plutôt que ²⁸ renier ²⁹ enclin ³⁰ facile ³¹ sujet ³² mal de tête.

Adjectives of Dimension.

291 Adjectives relating to the dimensions of objects are expressed in French in different ways. The English generally use adjectives with the verb *to be*, whereas the French use *avoir* (to have) and nouns preceded by *de*; as

*Avoir** instead of *to be*.

that river is six hundred feet wide { cette rivière a six cents pieds de largeur or de large
cette rivière est large de six cents pieds

Without the Verb.

a tower a hundred feet high { une tour de cent pieds de hauteur or le haut
une tour haute de cent pieds

a table ten feet long { une table de dix pieds de longueur or de long
une table longue de dix pieds

292 *By* or *and*, denoting comparative dimensions, or relative proportions, is rendered in French by *sur*, as follows:—

a drawing-room thirty feet long by (or and) sixteen wide un salon de trente pieds de longueur sur seize de largeur

* In speaking of age, the French use *avoir* instead of *être*; as *Quel âge avez-vous?* *J'ai dix-huit ans.* How old are you? I am eighteen. (*An* is never understood.)

Comparatives and Superlatives.

293 *By* after a comparative and before a noun of measure, weight, or number, is always expressed by *de*; as

<i>I am taller than you by the whole head</i>	<i>je suis plus grand que vous de toute la tête</i>
<i>he is heavier than I by ten pounds</i>	<i>il est plus lourd que moi de dix livres</i>

294 *Than* after *more* or *less* is always expressed by *de* when followed by a numeral; as

<i>he has more than ten horses</i>	<i>il a plus de dix chevaux</i>

295 *Than* after a comparative is expressed by *que de* before an infinitive mood, and by *que ne* before any tense of the indicative or conditional mood; as

<i>it is more noble to forgive than to revenge</i>	<i>il est plus noble de pardonner que de se venger</i>
<i>he is richer than I thought</i>	<i>il est plus riche que je ne pensais</i>

296 The *ne* is omitted when the first part of the sentence is either interrogative or negative, or when there is a conjunction or an adverb between *que* and the verb; as*

<i>is he richer than he was?</i>	<i>est-il plus riche qu'il l'était?</i>
<i>he is not richer than he was</i>	<i>il n'est pas plus riche qu'il l'était</i>
<i>he is better than when he was in India</i>	<i>il se porte mieux que quand il était aux Indes</i>

297 *The more* or *the less*, when repeated in comparatives of proportion, is expressed in French by *plus*, or *moins*, without an article. *The* is also omitted in French before any comparative when repeated; as

<i>the more I study this language,</i>	<i>plus j'étudie cette langue, plus je</i>
<i>the more I like it</i>	<i>l'aime</i>
<i>the longer the day, the shorter the night</i>	<i>plus le jour est long, plus la nuit est courte</i>

298 *So much the more* and *so much the less* are expressed in French by *d'autant plus*, *d'autant moins*; as

<i>he is so much the more guilty</i>	<i>il est d'autant plus coupable</i>
<i>he is so much the less to be pitied</i>	<i>il est d'autant moins à plaindre</i>

* However, if the subordinate proposition be intended to convey a negative meaning, *ne* must be used before the verb; as *He is not better to-day than he was yesterday.* *Il n'est pas mieux aujourd'hui qu'il ne l'était hier.*

299 *The more or the less...* *for it*, is expressed by *en* before the verb, and *plus, davantage, or moins* after it; as

he is only the more guilty for it
he is not the less happy for it

il n'en est que plus coupable
il n'en est pas moins heureux

300 *More and less* are rendered in French by *de plus* and *de moins*, in sentences like the following :—

a day more or less
give him one pound more

un jour de plus ou de moins
donnez-lui une livre de plus

301 *In*, after a superlative, is expressed by *de*; as

England is one of the richest
countries in Europe

l'Angleterre est un des plus riches
pays de l'Europe

302 If the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the article *le, la, les*; if not, the superlative alone takes the article; as

the most powerful navy in the world
la marine la plus puissante du monde
la plus puissante marine du monde

Read, translate, and write.

La tour de la cathédrale de Strasbourg a 149 mètres de hauteur. Ce chêne a 90 pieds de hauteur sur 18 de circonférence. Les fossés de la ville ont 45 pieds de largeur sur 10 pieds 6 pouces de profondeur. La rue de Rivoli à Paris a environ un mille et demi de longueur sur soixante pieds de largeur. La ville est entourée d'un mur de 20 pieds de hauteur sur 6 pieds d'épaisseur. Vous êtes plus petit que moi de 3 pouces. Il y avait plus de 400 mille hommes engagés à la bataille de Solferino. L'Impératrice Eugénie est plus jeune que l'Empereur Napoléon de dix-huit ans. Elle est plus âgée que je ne pensais. Elle n'est pas plus heureuse qu'elle l'était. Un homme peut-il être plus heureux que vous l'êtes? Plus un peuple est malheureux, plus il est à craindre. Il ressent d'autant plus cette insulte, qu'il la méritait moins. Il n'en est que plus estimable. Qu'importe un mois de plus ou de moins? La France est la plus ancienne monarchie de l'Europe.

Exercise on Adjectives of Dimension.

The Monument of London¹ is a round pillar of the Doric² order, two hundred feet³ high. The walls of Algiers⁴ are sixteen feet thick, and thirty high. London bridge⁵ is nine hundred and twenty feet long, fifty-five high, and fifty-six wide. The hall⁶ of the palace⁷ is sixty-

¹ Londres ² Dorique ³ pied ⁴ Alger ⁵ Le pont de Londres ⁶ salle f. ⁷ palais m.

two feet long, by forty-four wide. The (Crystal Palace⁸) is one thousand six hundred and eight feet long, by three hundred and eighty-four feet wide, and one hundred and sixty-eight feet high. I am (older than⁹) you by two years¹⁰; yet¹¹ you are taller¹² than I¹³ by two inches¹⁴. The lion¹⁵ is bigger than the dog¹⁶ by much¹⁷. Louis the Fourteenth, in¹⁸ 1681, had sixty thousand sailors¹⁹, and more than a hundred men²⁰ of war²¹. The Duke of Wellington was²² more than eighty years²³ old when he died²⁴.

Do (175) you not think that it²⁵ is greater to overcome²⁶ one's²⁷ passions than to conquer²⁸ whole²⁹ nations? It is easier³⁰ to command³¹ than to obey³². You make³³ greater progress³⁴ than I should have thought³⁵, and you behave³⁶ better³⁷ than when you were young. Is your son³⁸ more obedient³⁹ than he was last⁴⁰ year⁴¹? The more a man is adorned⁴² with moderation, temperance, and justice, the more valuable⁴³ he is. The more attentive⁴⁴ you are, the less trouble⁴⁵ you will have. Your action is so much the more laudable⁴⁶. She is so much the less happy⁴⁷. I thank⁴⁸ you the more for it. He will not be the less admired⁴⁹ for it. A few pounds more or less make no difference. Peking, the capital of China⁵⁰, is the most populous⁵¹ in the world. Lyons⁵² is the most commercial⁵³ city⁵⁴ in France.

⁸ palais de cristal *m.* ⁹ plus âgé que ¹⁰ ans ¹¹ cependant ¹² plus grand ¹³ moi
¹⁴ pouce *pl.* ¹⁵ lion *m.* ¹⁶ chien *m.* ¹⁷ beaucoup ¹⁸ en ¹⁹ matelot *pl.* ²⁰ vaisseau *pl.*
²¹ guerre ²² avoir ²³ ans ²⁴ mourir ²⁵ il ²⁶ vaincre ²⁷ ses ²⁸ conquérir ²⁹ entières
³⁰ facile ³¹ commander ³² obéir ³³ faire ³⁴ progrès *m.* ³⁵ croire ³⁶ se conduire
³⁷ mieux ³⁸ fils *m.* ³⁹ obéissant ⁴⁰ dernier ⁴¹ année *f.* ⁴² doué ⁴³ estimable
⁴⁴ attentif ⁴⁵ peine ⁴⁶ louable ⁴⁷ heureux ⁴⁸ remercier ⁴⁹ admiré ⁵⁰ Chine *f.*
⁵¹ peuplé ⁵² Lyon ⁵³ commerçante ⁵⁴ ville *f.*

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

303 The possessive adjectives (page 30) are repeated in French before every noun to which they relate, and agree with it in gender and number; as

mon père, ma mère, et mes sœurs *my father, mother, and sisters are*
sont à Paris *in Paris*

304 In addressing relations, the French use the possessive adjectives *mon, ma, mes*, before the names of relationship, though they are not used in English; as

<i>où êtes-vous, mon père?</i>	<i>where are you, father?</i>
<i>me voici, ma mère</i>	<i>here I am, mother</i>
<i>ma sœur, viens avec moi</i>	<i>sister, come with me</i>
<i>bonjour, mon oncle</i>	<i>good morning, uncle</i>

305 In addressing a person, and inquiring about his relations, it is generally the custom in France to use, as a

mark of respect, one of the qualifications, *monsieur, messieurs, madame, mesdames, mademoiselle, mesdemoiselles*; as

comment se porte <i>monsieur</i> votre père ?	<i>how is your father?</i>
<i>madame</i> votre mère est-elle ici ?	<i>is your mother here?</i>
où sont <i>mesdemoiselles</i> vos sœurs ?	<i>where are your sisters?</i>

OBSERVE.—*Monsieur* and *messieurs* are used as substantives, and may be preceded by an article or another pronoun; as *le monsieur* que j'ai vu; *ces messieurs* sont arrivés. But the possessive adjective is always left out before *dame* and *demoiselle* used substantively; as *cette dame, cette demoiselle*, and not *cette madame, &c.*

Le, la, les, USED INSTEAD OF mon, ton, son, &c.

306 The French generally use the article *le, la, les*, instead of the possessive adjective *mon, ton, son, &c.*, before the parts of the body, whenever the sense clearly shows the possessor; as

ouvrez <i>la</i> bouche	<i>open your mouth</i>
il avait <i>les</i> yeux ouverts	<i>he had his eyes open</i>
il a perdu <i>le</i> bras	<i>he has lost his arm</i>

307 In speaking of an action over any part of the body or intellectual faculty, we use the reflective form of the verb, if we express a thing *done to ourselves*, and by *ourselves*, and then no possessive adjective, but the article, is used before the noun; as

il s'est coupé <i>le</i> doigt	<i>he has cut his finger</i>
je <i>me</i> lave <i>les</i> mains	<i>I wash my hands</i>
elle <i>se</i> chauffe <i>les</i> pieds	<i>she warms her feet</i>

308 If we express a thing *done to another*, we use a conjunctive personal pronoun in the dative case (87), before the verb, and no possessive adjective appears before the part of the body mentioned; as

je <i>lui</i> tâtai <i>le</i> pouls	<i>I felt his pulse</i>
il <i>m'</i> a blessé à <i>la</i> main	<i>he has hurt my hand</i>
vous <i>lui</i> tournez <i>l'</i> esprit	<i>you turn his mind</i>

309 But we use *mon, ton, son, &c.*, before the parts of the body, when the possessor is not clearly indicated; as

je vois que <i>mon</i> pied enfle	<i>I see that my foot swells</i>
<i>sa</i> jambe se guérit	<i>his leg heals</i>

310 Observe the following expressions :—

j'ai mal à la tête
 elle a mal aux dents
 avez-vous froid aux pieds ?
 il a mal aux yeux
 vous m'avez coupé au² doigt

my head aches
 her teeth ache
 are your feet cold ?
 he has sore eyes
 you have cut my finger

* NOTE.—*Couper à*, as *couper au doigt*, means to cut slightly, but *couper* without the preposition *à*, as *couper le doigt*, would mean to cut off.

Its, their, EXPRESSED BY *son*, &C., OR BY *en* AND *le*, *la*, *les*.

311 When the possessive adjectives *its* and *their* relate to things, they are expressed by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, *leurs*, only when they refer to a subject mentioned in the same proposition, or when they are preceded by a preposition ; as

the country has its pleasures
 I admire the beauty of its trees

la campagne a ses agréments
 j'admire la beauté de ses arbres

312 But when *its* or *their* can be turned into *of it* or *of them*, it is expressed by *en* before the verb, and *le*, *la*, *les*, before the substantive ; as

I live in the country, its pleasures
 are innumerable
 the Louvre is a magnificent building,
 I admire its architecture

j'habite la campagne, les agréments
 en sont sans nombre
 le Louvre est un édifice magnifique,
 j'en admire l'architecture

Read, translate, and write.

Apportez-moi mon chapeau, ma cravate et mes gants. Bonjour, mon oncle, comment vous portez-vous ? Je connais monsieur votre père depuis bien longtemps. Mademoiselle votre sœur viendra-t-elle au bal ? Messieurs vos frères sont-ils de retour ? La dame qui est au piano est la femme de l'ambassadeur. En disant ces mots, les larmes me vinrent aux yeux. Le sang lui sortait par le nez et par la bouche. L'amiral Nelson perdit le bras à l'expédition de Santa-Cruz. Il a le corps trop gros et la tête trop petite. Lavez-vous les mains avant le dîner. Épaminondas tomba percé d'un javelot qui lui resta dans la poitrine. Ils vont me couper la tête et peut-être te faire roi. Ces ouvrages ont leur mérite et leurs défauts. Le temps fuit, la perte en est irréparable.

Exercise on Possessive Adjectives.

His uncle, aunt, and cousin are dead¹. My father and brother are ill. I thank² you, mother, for the fine dress³ you have given⁴ me. Sister, I bring⁵ you some⁶ pretty flowers. Is your father at home⁷ ? How is⁸ your mother to-day ? Will⁹ you present¹⁰ my compliments to your

¹ mort ² remercier ³ robe f. ⁴ donner ⁵ apporter ⁶ de ⁷ chez lui ⁸ se porter ⁹ vouloir ¹⁰ faire

sisters? His fever left him yesterday. A cannon-ball¹¹ took off¹² his arm. Will you wash¹³ your hands before¹⁴ dinner? Mind¹⁵, you will break¹⁶ your neck. Do not tread¹⁷ upon my foot. Her father lost¹⁸ his sight¹⁹ last year. Can²⁰ you cut²¹ my hair immediately? My carriage ran²² over his body, and broke²³ his leg and his right arm²⁴. He took my hand and put²⁵ a gold ring on my little finger. That town is very small, but it has its pleasures and advantages. London²⁶ is a great commercial²⁷ city; its ships bring²⁸ (to it²⁹) the riches of all countries³⁰. Paris is a delightful³¹ town, though³² its streets are too narrow³³, and its houses too high³⁴. His illness³⁵ is dangerous; I know³⁶ its origin and effects. The Rhine³⁷ is a magnificent river; its banks³⁸ are delightful.

¹¹ boulet de canon *m.* ¹² emporter ¹³ laver ¹⁴ avant ¹⁵ prendre garde ¹⁶ casser
¹⁷ marcher ¹⁸ perdre ¹⁹ vue *f.* ²⁰ pouvoir ²¹ couper ²² passer ²³ casser ²⁴ bras *m.*
²⁵ mettre ²⁶ Londres ²⁷ de commerce ²⁸ apporter ²⁹ lui ³⁰ pays *m.* ³¹ charmant
³² quoique ³³ étroit ³⁴ haut ³⁵ maladie *f.* ³⁶ connaître ³⁷ Rhin *m.* ³⁸ bord *m.*

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

313 The demonstrative adjectives *ce, cet, cette, ces*, always precede a substantive; they must be repeated before every noun, and agree with it in gender and number; as

ce jardin, *cette* maison, et *ces* champs sont à vendre *this* garden, *this* house, and *these* fields are to be sold

OBSERVE.—*Ce*, when used as an adjective, must not be confounded with the pronoun demonstrative *ce*; the latter is always joined to a verb, or followed by *qui* or *que*; as, *c'est moi*; *ce que j'aime*.

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

314 *Aucun* or *nul*, signifying *pas un*, requires *ne** before the verb, and admits of no plural; as

il n'a *aucun* ami *he has no friend*
nul homme n'est parfait *no man is perfect*

315 *Aucun* and *nul* admit of a plural, when the sense requires it, and particularly when they relate to a noun that has no singular; as

l'ennemi n'avait fait *aucuns* préparatifs *the enemy had made no preparations*
nulles troupes ne se battent mieux *no troops fight better*
ce serviteur ne reçoit *aucuns* gages *that servant receives no wages*

* However, in interrogations or in sentences expressing doubt, *aucun* and *nul* do not take *ne*; as, *AUCUN* homme fut-il jamais plus favorisé de la fortune? *Je doute qu'aucun* d'eux le fasse.

OBSERVE.—*Nul* and *aucun* may be used without a substantive:—

<i>nul</i> n'est satisfait de sa fortune	no one <i>is</i> satisfied with his fortune
<i>aucun</i> n'est prophète chez soi	no one <i>is</i> a prophet in his own country

316 *Quelque*, *some*, *a few*, being an adjective, agrees in gender and number with the noun which it precedes ; as

lisez <i>quelques</i> bons livres	read some good books
j'aurai <i>quelques</i> amis demain	I shall have a few friends to-morrow

Quelque, meaning *whatever*, *whoever*, or *however*, is used in three ways:—

317 When followed by a verb, it is written in two words, *quel que*, and then *quel*, being an adjective, agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb ; as

<i>quel que</i> soit son talent	whatever may be his talent
<i>quelle que</i> soit la loi	whatever may be the law
<i>quels que</i> soient ses amis	whoever may be his friends
<i>quelles que</i> soient ses richesses	whatever may be his riches

318 When followed by a substantive, it is written as one word, *quelque*, and agrees with it in number ; as

<i>quelques</i> protections <i>que</i> vous ayez	whatever protections you may have
<i>quelque</i> grande fortune <i>qu'il</i> ait	whatever great fortune he may have

319 When followed by an adjective or an adverb, it is written as one word, and remains invariable ; as

<i>quelque</i> puissants <i>qu'ils</i> soient	however powerful they may be
<i>quelque</i> bravement <i>qu'ils</i> se battent	however bravely they may fight

320 *Chaque*, *every*, *each*, is always followed by a noun to which it relates. It is of both genders, and without plural ; as

<i>chaque</i> pays a ses coutumes	every country has its customs
<i>chaque</i> âge a ses plaisirs	every age has its pleasures

But when repetition of an action is meant, instead of *chaque*, we use *tous les*, *m.*, or *toutes les*, *f.*, for *every* ; as

il va à Paris <i>tous les</i> ans	he goes to Paris every year
je lis <i>tous les</i> soirs	I read every evening

321 *Tout*, *all*, *whole*, as an adjective, agrees in gender

and number with the substantive to which it relates, and is followed by the article ; as

*tous les livres que j'ai
toute la flotte fut anéantie
toutes les dames sont ici*

*all the books I have
the whole fleet was destroyed
all the ladies are here*

322 *Tout* is also used in the sense of *every, any*, and then it is not followed by the article in the singular ; as

*tout homme est sujet à la mort
toute peine mérite salaire
toute autre personne le ferait*

*every man is liable to death
all labour deserves remuneration
any other person would do it*

323 *Tout* is an adverb when placed before an adjective, and signifies *quite, entirely, however, although, as*, and then is invariable ; as

*tout savants qu'ils sont
elle est tout alarmée
ces souliers sont tout neufs*

*learned as they are
she is quite alarmed
these shoes are quite new*

324 But *tout*, although an adverb, is variable before an adjective feminine beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirated, for the sake of euphony ; as

*votre sœur fut toute surprise
toute hardie qu'elle est*

*your sister was quite surprised
bold as she is*

325 *Tout* may be used as a substantive ; as

le tout est plus grand que la partie

the whole is greater than the part

326 *Même*, meaning *same, alike, self, very*, is an adjective, and as such agrees with the word to which it refers ; as

*ce sont les mêmes hommes que j'ai
vus hier
du berger et du roi les cendres
sont les mêmes
nous y avons été nous-mêmes
ce sont ses paroles mêmes*

*they are the same men I saw yesterday
of the shepherd and the king the
ashes are alike
we went there ourselves
those are his very* words*

327 *Même*, meaning *even, also, or likewise*, is an adverb, and as such remains invariable ; as

*les plus sages même sont quelque-
fois trompés
les animaux et même les plantes
sont sensibles*

*even the wisest are sometimes de-
ceived
animals, and even plants, are sen-
sible*

* The adjective *very*, which in English precedes the substantive, is expressed in French by *même* after the substantive ; as *the very day of his death le jour même de sa mort*.

328 *Tel, such*, is either an adjective or a pronoun. As an adjective, it agrees with the noun, and is always preceded, and not followed, by the article *un* or *une*, as is the case in English, though the article is often omitted; as

<i>un tel homme, une telle femme</i>	such a man, such a woman
<i>tel rit aujourd'hui qui pleurera demain</i>	such as laugh to-day will cry to-morrow

Read, translate, and write.

Ce champ, ces moutons et ces vaches m'appartiennent. Cette horloge n'est-elle pas en retard? Aucun chemin de fleurs ne conduit à la gloire. Il n'y a nuls vices extérieurs et nuls défauts qui ne soient aperçus des enfants. Quelques écrivains ont traité ce sujet. Envoyez-moi les quelques livres que j'ai laissés chez vous. Quelles que soient vos qualités n'en soyez pas orgueilleux. Quelques efforts que vous fassiez, vous ne réussirez pas. Quelque méchants que soient les hommes, ils n'oseraient paraître ennemis de la vertu. Chaque condition a ses dégoûts, et à chaque état sont attachées des amertumes. Nous déjeunons tous les jours à huit heures. Tous les habitants de la ville étaient consternés. Toutes ses pensées, toute sa gloire, était de plaire à Dieu. Tout Rome le sait. Du haut des collines de Montmartre on peut voir tout Paris. Ces hardes sont tout usées, mais tout usées qu'elles sont elles peuvent servir. Toute faible qu'est sa santé, elle fait beaucoup de bien aux pauvres. Les souverains ont partout les mêmes devoirs à remplir. Les animaux les plus sauvages même nous offrent des exemples de la reconnaissance. Nous avons dîné dans la salle même où il fut assassiné. Telle femme se croit belle qui souvent ne l'est pas. Un tel homme mérite d'être puni.

Exercise on Demonstrative and Indefinite Adjectives.

This house, those fields¹, that windmill², and that tree belong³ to his father. Who has painted⁴ that portrait and that hunt⁵? That star⁶ is very bright⁷. Those children want⁸ their dinner. No one likes (to see himself⁹) as¹⁰ he is. We have no poor in that parish¹¹. I had many¹² friends; but not one has relieved¹³ me. Of all the nations of the earth, there is¹⁴ none but¹⁵ has¹⁶ an idea of God. Not one among¹⁷ them (escaped from¹⁸) death. Whatever your talents (may be¹⁹), you will not succeed²⁰ without application. Whatever your birth²¹ may be, despise²² nobody. Whatever faults he has committed²³, I forgive²⁴ him. If you behave²⁵ honestly, you will be esteemed by²⁶ all (good men²⁷), in whatever country²⁸ you live. However powerful²⁹ the enemies may be, we do not

¹ champs *m.* ² moulin à vent *m.* ³ appartenir ⁴ peindre ⁵ chasse *f.* ⁶ étoile *f.* ⁷ brillant ⁸ avoir besoin de ⁹ se voir ¹⁰ comme ¹¹ paroisse *f.* ¹² beaucoup de ¹³ secourir ¹⁴ il n'y en a ¹⁵ qui ¹⁶ ait ¹⁷ de ¹⁸ échapper à ¹⁹ soient ²⁰ réussir ²¹ naissance *f.* ²² mépriser ²³ commettre ²⁴ pardonner ²⁵ se conduire ²⁶ de ²⁷ gens de bien ²⁸ pays *m.* ²⁹ puissant

fear³⁰ them³¹. However learned³² you may be, do not make a vain show³³ of your knowledge³⁴.

Each house has a garden. Every animal, save³⁵ man, knows³⁶ how to choose his proper food³⁷. There is in every plant a certain quality which renders³⁸ it either wholesome³⁹ or hurtful. We take⁴⁰ a walk in the park every morning. We must⁴¹ (struggle against⁴²) our passions every day. The whole earth announces⁴³ the glory of God. Every honest man will censure⁴⁴ (such a⁴⁵) conduct. In everything we must⁴⁶ consider the end. The whole army crossed⁴⁷ the river. (Do you occupy⁴⁸) the whole house? Wounded⁴⁹ as he was, he fought⁵⁰ till the last moment. My aunt was quite astonished to see her. Handsome as she is, she is very modest. Those⁵¹ are the same ladies I met⁵² (last night⁵³). The same things do not please⁵⁴ at⁵⁵ all times. The ashes⁵⁶ of a shepherd and of a king are alike. They will write⁵⁷ themselves to your father. We saw⁵⁸ him the very day of your arrival. (Many are⁵⁹) rewarded that deserve⁶⁰ to be punished. I never saw such a crowd⁶¹.

³⁰ craindre ³¹ les ³² savant ³³ étalage *m.* ³⁴ science ³⁵ excepté ³⁶ savoir
³⁷ nourriture *f.* ³⁸ rendre ³⁹ salutaire ⁴⁰ faire ⁴¹ devoir ⁴² combattre ⁴³ annoncer
⁴⁴ blâmer ⁴⁵ une telle ⁴⁶ devoir ⁴⁷ traverser ⁴⁸ occuper ⁴⁹ blesser ⁵⁰ combattre
⁵¹ Ce ⁵² rencontrer ⁵³ hier soir ⁵⁴ plaire ⁵⁵ en ⁵⁶ cendres ⁵⁷ écrire ⁵⁸ voir ⁵⁹ Tout
 est ⁶⁰ mériterait ⁶¹ foule *f.*

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

VINGT and CENT are the only numeral adjectives of the cardinal kind that may be pluralised.

329 *vingt* and *cent* take an *s* when they are multiplied by another number (79); as

l'homme vit quatre-vingts ans
 il avait trois cents hommes

man lives eighty years
he had three hundred men

330 EXCEPTION. — Although multiplied as above, *vingt* and *cent* do not take an *s* when immediately followed by another number, nor when used in the sense of *vingtième*, *centième*; as

quatre-vingt-cinq soldats
 trois cent dix chevaux
 numéro quatre-vingt
 page trois cent

eighty-five soldiers
three hundred and ten horses
number eighty
page three hundred

331 *mille*, a *thousand*, never takes an *s* in the plural;
 as

dix mille hommes
 six mille francs

ten thousand men
six thousand francs

332 *Mille*, when speaking of dates, becomes *mil*; as

l'an mil-huit-cent-douze

the year 1812

NOTE.—*Mille*, as a substantive, signifying a mille, takes an *s* in the plural: *dix mille milles* ten thousand miles.

333 The *cardinal* numbers, instead of the ordinal, are used in French when speaking of sovereigns, and of the day of the month, except in mentioning the *first*, and sometimes the *second*, when speaking of sovereigns; as

Henry quatre
le huit mai or de mai
François premier
Charles deux or second
le premier mai or de mai

Henry the Fourth
the 8th of May
Francis the First
Charles the Second
the 1st of May

Exercise on Numeral Adjectives.

There were¹ two hundred and eighty men killed², and two thousand wounded³ in that battle. Leonidas, with three hundred Spartans⁴, stopped⁵ the whole army of the Persians⁶ at the pass⁷ of the Thermopylæ⁸. Voltaire died⁹ at the age of eighty-four years. Napoleon was born¹⁰ on the fifteenth of August¹¹, one thousand seven hundred and sixty-nine. Charles the Twelfth, king of Sweden¹², died in his thirty-sixth year. The Duke of Bordeaux, grandson¹³ of Charles the Tenth, king of France, was born on the fifteenth of July¹⁴, one thousand eight hundred and twenty. Louis-Philippe the First lost¹⁵ his throne in¹⁶ one thousand eight hundred and forty-eight, and died in England¹⁷ the twenty-sixth of August, one thousand eight hundred and fifty. Your letter of the first of January¹⁸, antedated¹⁹ December the nineteenth, reached²⁰ me on the eleventh of February²¹.

¹ Il y avoir ² tuer ³ blesser ⁴ Spartiates ⁵ arrêter ⁶ Perses ⁷ défilé m. ⁸ Thermopyles ⁹ mourir ¹⁰ naquit ¹¹ août ¹² Suède ¹³ petit-fils ¹⁴ juillet ¹⁵ perdra ¹⁶ en ¹⁷ en Angleterre ¹⁸ janvier ¹⁹ antidaté ²⁰ parvenir ²¹ février.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

Position of the Personal Pronouns.

334 The *conjunctive* personal pronouns *je*, *tu*, *il*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elles*, (page 37), used as **subjects** (112), precede the verb (88): *je* lis, *vous* écrivez; except—1. In questions—2. In some exclamations—3. In quotations—4. After the subjunctive when no conjunction precedes it—5. Most

frequently after *aussi*, *peut-être*, *encore*, *toujours* (still), *en vain*, *à peine*, *du moins*, *au moins*, &c. ; as

1 parlez-vous français ?	1 do you speak French ?
2 que viens-je d'entendre !	2 what have I heard !
3 venez, dit-il, partons	3 come, said he, let us go
4 puissiez-vous être heureux !	4 may you be happy !
5 à peine fut-il parti	5 he was scarcely gone

Position of Conjunctive Objective Pronouns.

Conjunctive personal pronouns, when used as **objects** (113) to the verb, are placed before it (89), except when it is in the Imperative used *affirmatively*. (See No. 90.) These objective pronouns are *me*, *te*, *le*, *la*, *vous*, *nous*, *les*, *lui*, *leur*.

335 When a verb requires two pronouns before it, the *indirect* (116) comes before the *direct* (115) object ; as

je vous le promets	I promise it to you
il me les donnera	he will give them to me

336 But when the two pronouns are in the third person, the *direct* comes first, as in English ; as

je le lui prêterai	I will lend it to him
nous la leur enverrons	we shall send her to them

On the Imperative Mood.

337 When there are two imperatives affirmative joined by one of the conjunctions *et*, *ou*, the pronoun object of the second imperative may precede it ; as

lisez-le sans cesse et le relisez	read it incessantly and read it again

338 When the verb in the Imperative *affirmative* governs two pronouns, the one in the accusative comes first, except *y-moi*, *y-toi*, *y-le*, *y-la* ; and *m'en*, *t'en* (see 90-92) ; as

donnez-le-moi	give it me
envoyez-y-le	send him thither
menez-y-moi	take me thither
prêtez-m'en	lend me some

But it is better, for the sake of euphony, to say : *envoyez-le là* ; *voulez-vous m'y mener* ?

NOTE.—An *s* is added to the imperative mood in the singular, when joined to the pronouns *en* and *y*, for euphony's sake ; as, *cherchez-en* ; *donnez-y les soins*.

339 TABLE

Showing the order in which the Personal Pronouns appear, when there are two or three governed by the same verb, and intended also to show not only the relative position of the personal conjunctive pronouns with regard to each other, but also with regard to the verb and other words connected with them in a sentence.

je	ne	me	le	lui	y	en	auxiliary	pas	adverb	particip.
tu	...	te	la	legr	...	...	or verb	...	...	...
il	...	se	les	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
elle	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
nous	...	nous	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
vous	...	vous	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
ils	...	se	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
elles	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...

Examples.

je ne me le rappelle pas*
 je ne le lui ai pas encore dit
 nous leur en avons envoyé
 ils ne vous en ont pas donné
 je lui y en ai envoyé
 vous les leur porterez
 il la leur y portera
 le lui avez-vous dit ?
 ne le lui a-t-il pas encore dit ?

I do not remember it
I have not yet said it to him
we have sent them some
they have not given you any
I have sent some to him thither
you shall bring them to them
he will bring it to them thither
have you said it to him ?
has he not said it to him yet ?

Read, translate, and write.

Quand *vous* avez prié, ne sentez-*vous* pas votre cœur plus léger, et votre âme plus contente ? Que faites-*vous* sur la terre, et n'avez-*vous* rien à demander à celui qui *vous y* a mis ? N'avez-*vous* rien entendu cette nuit ? lui demanda-t-il. La joie brilla dans les yeux de Charles : "A la bonne heure," dit-il, "*ils* deviennent donc plus traitables." Puissé-je de mes yeux *y* voir tomber la foudre ! A peine étions-*nous* sortis que la foudre éclata et mit le toit en feu. A peine le soleil avait-il paru sur l'horizon, nous marchâmes à l'ennemi. Un homme *vous* flatte-t-il ? ne *vous y* fiez pas, il veut *vous* tromper. Je *vous* le montrerais demain. Il ne *me* le pardonnera jamais. Si *vous* avez des lettres pour votre sœur, je *les* lui porterai ; donnez-*les* moi. Ecrivez-*le* lui et *le* lui envoyez. Ne *lui y en* avez-*vous* pas déjà envoyé ? Ne *le* lui avez-*vous* pas encore dit ? Si *vous* avez de l'argent, donnez-*m'en*.

* These examples will show that, whether a sentence be affirmative, interrogative, or negative, the conjunctive pronouns and other words invariably preserve the same relative position, except in interrogations, when the pronoun subject comes after the verb. As to personal pronouns with verbs in the imperative mood, see 338.

Exercise on the Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.

I will go¹ and see you, and we will speak² of that affair. Will he be ready³ at ten o'clock? Does she speak Italian⁴? I think⁵ not. Have you written⁶ to your parents? I wrote last⁷ week. May⁸ you succeed⁹ in your enterprise! I have¹⁰ (on my side¹¹), he said, a good cause and a merciful¹² God. They were scarcely¹³ gone¹⁴ when the fire broke out¹⁵. If you cannot¹⁶ come, perhaps you will send¹⁷ (a) word by your servant¹⁸. God is a¹⁹ father to²⁰ those who love Him, and a protector to those who fear²¹ Him. Vice often deceives²² us under the form²³ of virtue. I have seen²⁴ you several times²⁵ at²⁶ my uncle's. If you would²⁷ obtain²⁸ a friend, you must²⁹ first prove³⁰ him, and be not too hasty³¹ to trust³² him. Bring³³ me my gloves, and do not make³⁴ me wait³⁵ for half an hour. If you write³⁶ to them, tell³⁷ them I am much better³⁸. If he offers³⁹ you money, do not take⁴⁰ it. It is your brother's hat, give⁴¹ it to him, if you please⁴². I am sorry⁴³ I cannot give it to you. Then⁴⁴ lend⁴⁵ it to me. I have not said⁴⁶ it to him. If you have some French books, bring them to them. Accompany⁴⁷ me there with your brother.

¹ aller ² parler ³ prêt ⁴ Italien ⁵ croire ⁶ écrire ⁷ dernier ⁸ Puis-je ⁹ réussir
¹⁰ avoir ¹¹ pour moi ¹² clément ¹³ A peine ¹⁴ partir ¹⁵ éclater ¹⁶ ne pouvoir
pas ¹⁷ envoyer ¹⁸ domestique ¹⁹ le ²⁰ de ²¹ craindre ²² tromper ²³ masque ²⁴ voir
²⁵ fois ²⁶ chez ²⁷ vouloir ²⁸ avoir ²⁹ il faut ³⁰ éprouver ³¹ prompt ³² à vous fier
à ³³ apporter ³⁴ faire ³⁵ attendre ³⁶ écrire ³⁷ dire ³⁸ mieux ³⁹ offrir ⁴⁰ prendre
⁴¹ donner ⁴² plaire ⁴³ fâché que ⁴⁴ Alors ⁴⁵ prêter ⁴⁶ dire ⁴⁷ accompagner

Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

The *disjunctive* personal pronouns, *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles* (page 39), are used as *subjects* and *objects* in the following cases: —

340 After the verb *c'est* in all its tenses; and generally¹ when alone, or separated from the verb; as

c'est moi qui l'ai dit
est-ce *lui* qui l'a fait?
ce sont *eux* qui lisent
qui parle?—*moi*
qui a fait cela?—*lui*

it is I who said so
is it he who has done it?
it is they who read
who speaks?—I
who has done that?—he

341 In comparisons after *que*; also after and before *et* and, *ou* or, *comme* as, *ni* nor; as

il lit mieux *que moi*
lui et *elle*
c'est *elle* ou *lui*
faites *comme eux*
ni lui *ni toi*

he reads better than I
he and she
it is she or he
do as they do
neither he nor thou

342 For the sake of emphasis or contrast ; as

moi, vous abandonner!
toi, oser le dire!
lui, il a raison
eux, ils ont tort

I, abandon you!
 thou, dare to say so!
 he is right
 they are wrong

343 After a preposition ; as

il a parlé *de moi*
 il s'adresse *à eux*
 faites-le pour *lui*

he has spoken of me
he applies to them
do it for him

344 Before relative pronouns (103) ; as

moi, qui vous parle
lui, que vous accusez

I who speak to you
he whom you accuse

345 Before *seul*, or before a present participle ; as

lui seul peut le faire
eux, voyant le danger, &c.

he alone can do it
they, seeing the danger, &c.

Read, translate, and write.

Qui a cassé ce verre ? Ce n'est pas *moi*, c'est *lui*. Qui veut venir au palais ? *Moi*. Mon avocat et *lui* sont de cet avis. Si ce n'est *toi*, c'est donc ton frère. *Elle* et *moi* nous apprenons la musique. Il *me* verra *moi* et mon domestique. On dira ce qu'on voudra contre *lui* ; quant à *moi*, je suis sûr de sa probité. Adressez-vous à *eux*, et non pas à *lui*. *Moi*, je pourrais trahir le Dieu que j'aime ! *Moi*, déprécier le commerce ! *moi*, fille et femme de fabricant ! *moi* qui trouve que c'est l'état le plus utile au pays ! Ses sœurs portaient un panier et *lui* un paquet. *Lui* seul aux yeux d'un Juif découvrit le dessein de deux traîtres tout prêts à vous percer le sein. Comme *eux* nous marchons vers la tombe. Il vous aime autant qu'*eux*. *Lui*, il va tous les jours à Londres ; *moi*, rarement.

Exercise on the Disjunctive Pronouns.

Who (is making¹) that noise ? It² is not I ; it is he. It³ is they who (say so⁴). He alone has done⁵ it⁶. He is taller⁷ than I ; but I am stronger⁸ than he. Who will get⁹ the prize ? is it you or he ? Neither he nor I have heard¹⁰ of your brother. He abandon¹¹ you ! Never. Those children are afraid¹² of me. Some one¹³ advising¹⁴ Philip to expel¹⁵ from his dominions¹⁶ a man who had spoken ill¹⁷ of

¹ faire ² Ce ³ Ce ⁴ le dire ⁵ fait ⁶ le ⁷ grand ⁸ fort ⁹ avoir ¹⁰ entendu parler
¹¹ abandonner ¹² avoir peur ¹³ Quelqu'un ¹⁴ conseiller à ¹⁵ chasser ¹⁶ états
¹⁷ mal

him ; (I will take care not¹⁸ to) do it, replied he ; for he would go¹⁹ everywhere and speak ill of me. Your brother and I are very good friends. I, who have seen the horrors of the revolution. Thou alone art my treasure. He has sold²⁰ them to me. Has he sold them to you ? 'They will not bring²¹ it to us. You must²² tell²³ it to him. Have you not given²⁴ it to her ? I will show²⁵ it to you, if you bring it to me here. I will carry²⁶ you some²⁷ thither.

¹⁸ se garder bien de ¹⁹ aller ²⁰ vendre ²¹ apporter ²² Il faut ²³ dire ²⁴ donner
²⁵ montrer ²⁶ porter ²⁷ en

Repetition of the Personal Pronoun.

346 A personal pronoun in the *nominative* is repeated in French before every verb, if those verbs be of different tenses. When the verbs are in the same tense, the pronoun may be repeated or not, as taste may direct* ; as

<i>j'étudie et j'étudierai toujours</i>	<i>I study, and will always study</i>
<i>il dessine et chante très-bien</i>	<i>he draws and sings very well</i>

347 It is also repeated in interrogative sentences ; as

écrivez-vous et lisez-vous toujours ? *do you still write and read ?*

348 When there are two or more pronouns, or a noun and a pronoun, in the *nominative* case, and of different persons, a resuming pronoun, such as *nous*, *vous*, is generally used before the following verb as its subject (**409**) ; as

<i>vous et moi nous marcherons</i>	<i>you and I will walk</i>
<i>vous et lui vous irez le voir</i>	<i>you and he will go and see him</i>
<i>ma sœur et moi nous peignons</i>	<i>my sister and I paint</i>

But when *ni* occurs between the subjects, the resuming pronoun is not required ; as

<i>ni vous ni lui ne l'aurez</i>	<i>neither you nor he shall have it</i>
<i>ni ma sœur ni moi ne l'aimons</i>	<i>neither my sister nor I like it</i>

349 The personal pronouns are always repeated in French before every verb by which they are governed ; as

<i>il vous flatte et vous loue</i>	<i>he flatters and praises you</i>
<i>je l'aime et je le respecte</i>	<i>I love and respect him</i>

350 When a verb has two direct (**115**) or two indirect (**116**) objects, one of which is a personal pronoun, and

* In the repetition of personal pronouns, *taste* or the necessity of clearness must often direct the choice. The repetition gives more energy and gravity to the sentence.

the other a substantive, the pronoun is repeated both before and after the verb, the second being *disjunctive*; as

il *me* recevra, moi et mon père he will receive me and my father
je *lui* écrirai, à lui et à sa sœur I will write to him and his sister

Read, translate, and write.

Peignez-vous et dessinez-vous tous les jours? *Nous* lisons et *nous* traduisons depuis dix heures jusqu'à midi. Prenez garde, vous gagnez peu et vous dépensez beaucoup. Vous et moi *nous* ne sommes pas heureux. *Il* était aimé parce qu'*il* était bon envers tous. *Il* (Polichinelle) s'élance en riant, *il* tombe, *il* se relève, *il* se promène, *il* gambade, *il* saute, *il* se débat, *il* gesticule et retombe démantibulé contre le châssis qui résonne de sa chute. *Je* crains Dieu, cher Abner, et n'ai point d'autre crainte. Albert et lui sont d'accord. *Il* mange et boit bien. Ni mon père ni moi ne le pouvons. Un auteur qui *nous* flatte et *nous* loue, est sûr de *nous* plaire. Je veux *le* voir, *le* prier, *le* presser, *l'*importuner, *le* fléchir. *Il me* recevra moi et mon domestique. *Il nous* doit cette somme, à *nous* et à nos associés.

Exercise on the Repetition of Pronouns.

I maintain¹ and will always maintain, that we cannot² be happy without practising³ virtue. We have spoken⁴, and will speak again⁵ in⁶ your favour. What⁷! you know⁸ the beauties of that poem⁹, and you do not read¹⁰ it! He says¹¹ so¹², but he does not think it. Do you read and translate French every day? You and I will go¹³ to¹⁴ the country. You and they will stay¹⁵ here till to-morrow. You, he, and she should¹⁶ sing¹⁷ that piece¹⁸ of opera. My sister and I went to the concert. Neither I nor my brother sing. I respect, honour¹⁹, and love her. The most beautiful flowers (last but²⁰) a short²¹ time; the least²² rain tarnishes²³ them, the wind withers²⁴ them, and the sun scorches²⁵ them. God hears²⁶ and sees us everywhere. I will speak to him and his brother. He struck²⁷ me and my son. They will reward²⁸ you and your kind friend. I lend²⁹ that book to you and your sister.

¹ soutenir ² pouvoir ³ pratiquer ⁴ parler ⁵ encore ⁶ en ⁷ Quoi! ⁸ connaître
⁹ poème m. ¹⁰ lire ¹¹ dire ¹² le ¹³ aller ¹⁴ à ¹⁵ rester ¹⁶ devriez ¹⁷ chanter
¹⁸ morceau ¹⁹ honorer ²⁰ ne durer que ²¹ peu de ²² la moindre ²³ ternir ²⁴ flétrir
²⁵ brûler ²⁶ entendre ²⁷ frapper ²⁸ récompenser ²⁹ prêter.

USE OF THE PRONOUN *le, la, les*.

351 When the pronoun, *le, la, les* has reference to a substantive, or to an adjective used substantively, it agrees with it in gender and number; as

êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant? are you the mother of that child?—
—oui, je *la* suis yes, I am

êtes-vous les sœurs de mon ami ?

—oui, nous *les* sommes

êtes-vous la malade?—oui, je *la*
suis

are you my friend's sisters?—yes,

we are

are you the sick person?—yes, I
am

352 When the pronoun *le, la, les* has reference either to an adjective, to a substantive used adjectively, to a verb, or to a sentence, it is invariable ; as

êtes-vous malade, madame?—oui,

monsieur, je *le* suis

vos frères sont-ils riches?—non,

ils *ne le* sont pas

êtes-vous mère?—oui, je *le* suis

il faut lire autant qu'on *le* peut

are you ill, madam?—yes, sir, I

am

are your brothers rich?—no, they

are not

are you a mother?—yes, I am

we must read as much as we can

USE OF *soi*.

353 The personal pronoun *soi* generally refers to the singular number ; it is used relatively to persons as well as to things ; when it relates to persons, it is generally used with indefinite pronouns, such as *on, chacun, personne, quiconque, &c.* ; as

on pense trop à *soi*

chacun agit pour *soi*

l'aimant attire le fer à *soi*

we think too much about ourselves

every one acts for himself

loadstone attracts iron to itself

Read, translate, and write.

Êtes-vous le fils de mon jardinier?—Oui, je *le* suis. Êtes-vous la fille du concierge?—Oui, je *la* suis. Messieurs, êtes-vous les officiers de ce régiment?—Oui, nous *les* sommes. Messieurs, êtes-vous officiers?—Nous *le* sommes. Êtes-vous les trois Romains qu'on a choisis pour le combat?—Nous *les* sommes. Ces enfants ne sont-ils pas malades?—Non, ils *ne le* sont pas. Êtes-vous indisposée, mademoiselle?—Non, je *ne le* suis pas. Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous Anglaises?—Oui, nous *le* sommes. Mesdames, êtes-vous les Anglaises qu'on m'a recommandées?—Nous *les* sommes. Votre frère est-il plus heureux qu'il l'était?—Oui, mais il n'est pas si riche que vous *le* pensez. Est-ce là son fils?—Oui, ce l'est. Sont-ce là vos enfants?—Non, ce *ne les* sont pas. Êtes-vous la maîtresse de la maison?—Oui, je *la* suis. Dans ce monde, chacun *ne pense qu'à soi*. Quiconque rapporte tout à *soi* n'a pas beaucoup d'amis. Aucun n'est prophète chez *soi*. Un bienfait porte sa récompense avec *soi*. Le vice est odieux en *soi*. On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que *soi*. La franchise est bonne de *soi*, mais elle a ses excès. En remplissant les volontés de son père, ce jeune homme travaille pour *soi*.

Exercise.

Are you my friend's sister? «No', I am not. Are you the ministers of the king? Yes, we are. Are you the captain² of that vessel³? No, I am not. (Are those⁴) your horses? Yes, they are. Young ladies, are you the pupils of Mrs. B.? Yes, we are. Are you the mistress of the house? No, I am not. Are his brothers learned⁵? No, they are not. Are your sisters married⁶? Yes, sir; they are. Are they happy? Yes, they are. Are you soldiers? Yes, sir; we are. Madam, are you a milliner⁷? Yes, I am. Are you an English-woman? I am. Ladies, are you French? No, we are not; those ladies are. They have been rich, but are not so at present. (We must⁸) oblige others as much as we⁹ can. Is this your hat? Yes, it is. Are those your sister's gloves? No, they are not. When (a man loves nobody but¹⁰) himself, he is not (fit for¹¹) society. A thing good in¹² itself is not always approved of¹³. It always depends¹⁴ upon¹⁵ ourselves to act honourably. Virtue has something attractive in itself.

¹ Non ² capitaine m. ³ vaisseau m. ⁴ Sont-ce là ⁵ savant ⁶ marié ⁷ modiste
⁸ Il faut ⁹ on ¹⁰ on n'aime que ¹¹ propre à ¹² en ¹³ approuvé ¹⁴ dépendre ¹⁵ de

USE OF EN AND Y.

354 *En* is used instead of *lui, elle, leur, eux, elles*, in speaking of animals, things, and especially of places, when the verb governs *de*. It is often understood in English; but when expressed, it may mean *of* or *from it*; *of* or *from them*; and also *some, any, or none of it*; as

ce cheval est très-méchant; n'en
 approchez pas
 avez-vous besoin de mon canif?—
 oui, j'en ai besoin
 avez-vous été à la ville?—oui,
 j'en viens
 voulez-vous du pain?—oui, don-
 nez-m'en
 avez-vous du papier?—non, je
 n'en ai pas

this horse is very vicious; do not go
 near it
 do you want my penknife?—yes,
 I do
 have you been to town?—yes, I
 have just returned
 will you have some bread?—yes,
 give me some
 have you any paper?—no, I have
 none

355 *Y* is used in speaking of animals, things, and especially of places, when the verb governs *à, en, dans* or *sur*; as

voilà un bon tableau; mettez-y un
 cadre
 allez-vous en Écosse?—non, je
 n'y vais pas
 mon livre est-il sur la table?—
 oui, il y est

here is a good picture; put a frame
 to it
 are you going to Scotland?—no. I
 am not
 is my book upon the table?—yes,
 it is

356 *En* and *Y* are also used in speaking vaguely of persons; as

c'est un honnête homme, fiez-vous *y**

he is an honest man, trust him

pensez-vous à votre fils?—oui, j'*y* pense

do you think of your son?—yes, I do

parle-t-il de moi?—oui, il *en* parle souvent

does he speak of me?—yes, he often does

sont-ils contents de lui?—oui, ils *en* sont très-contents

are they pleased with him?—yes, they are very much pleased

OBSERVATIONS ON *le, la, les, en, y*,

Used in answering Questions.

In answers, the French language is far less elliptical than the English. In the former, it is generally necessary to repeat the verb employed in the interrogation, to supply the place of the noun by some pronoun, and sometimes to repeat the principal words of the question, as will be seen by the following illustrations.

357 When a question is asked with a verb followed by a direct object, that object is represented in the reply by the pronoun *le, la, l'*, or *les*, according to gender and number, and the verb of the question must be repeated in the answer, and preceded by the pronoun; as

is Henry taking his German lesson?—yes, he is
have you read his letter?—yes, I have

Henri prend-il sa leçon d'allemand?—oui, il *la* prend
avez-vous lu sa lettre?—oui, je *l'ai* lue

358 The English expressions *it is, they are, &c.*, relating to a substantive used *definitely* in the question, are expressed by *ce l'est, ce les sont*; as

is that the book you are looking for?—yes, it is
are those the works of Racine?—yes, they are

est-ce là le livre que vous cherchez?—oui, *ce l'est*
sont-ce les œuvres de Racine?—oui, *ce les sont*

359 When a question is asked with a verb followed by the partitive article *du, de la, des*, or by *de* used in a partitive sense (**28**), and also before a noun or a pronoun, *en* is required in the answer; as

avez-vous des gants?—oui, j'*en* ai
a-t-il de l'argent?—oui, il *en* a
parliez-vous de lui?—non, nous n'*en* parlions pas
venez-vous de la ville?—oui, j'*en* viens

have you any gloves?—yes, I have
has he any money?—yes, he has
were you speaking of him?—no, we were not
are you coming from town?—yes, I am

* Fiez-vous à *lui* would be more energetic.

360 *En* is also used in reply to a question formed with a verb having for its direct object a substantive preceded by the indefinite article *un* or *une*, which is repeated in the answer; as

avez-vous une montre anglaise?	have you an English watch?—yes,
—oui, j'en ai une	I have
est-ce un chien anglais que vous	is it an English dog you have?—
avez?—oui, c'en est un	yes, it is

361 But if the reply is negative, *en* is used without *un* or *une*, except when the verb *être* intervenes; as

avez-vous un dictionnaire?—non,	have you a dictionary?—no, I have
je n'en ai pas	not
est-ce une montre de Genève?—	is it a Geneva watch?—no, it is
non, ce n'en est pas une	not

362 When a question is asked with a verb followed by an indirect object preceded by *à*, the pronoun *lui* or *leur* is used before the verb of the answer; as

avez-vous écrit à votre père?—	have you written to your father?—
oui, je lui ai écrit	yes, I have
a-t-il envoyé de l'argent à son	has he sent money to his son?—
fil?—oui, il lui en a envoyé	yes, he has
donnez-vous des prix à vos élè-	do you give prizes to your pupils?
ves?—oui, je leur en donne	—yes, I do

363 *Y* is used before the verb of the answer with reference to places; as

avez-vous été à Rome?—oui, j'y	have you been to Rome?—yes, I
ai été	have
vos sœurs sont-elles à Paris?—	are your sisters in Paris?—no,
non, elles n'y sont pas	they are not
ma lettre est-elle à la poste?—	is my letter in the post-office?—
oui, elle y est	yes, it is

364 The English auxiliary verbs *do*, *does*, *did*, *shall*, *will*, *should*, *would*, &c., when used to ask questions, are repeated in the answer; but the French, having no equivalent for these words, repeat the verb of the question; as

do you dance?—no, I do not; but	dansez-vous?—non, je ne danse
my brother does	pas; mais mon frère danse
will he sing?—yes, he will	chantera-t-il?—oui, il chantera

365 Interrogative exclamations, such as the following :—

I am going to Paris.—ARE YOU!
his son sings beautifully.—DOES HE!
I can tell you who did it.—CAN YOU!

are frequently used in English familiar conversation; but they have no

literal equivalent in French, and must be rendered by a different exclamation, such as *ah! vraiment!*

366 The interrogation in French is always expressed by *n'est-ce pas* in sentences like the following :—

il vient, <i>n'est-ce pas?</i>	<i>he is coming, is he not?</i>
vous avez écrit, <i>n'est-ce pas?</i>	<i>you have written, have you not?</i>
il pleut, <i>n'est-ce pas?</i>	<i>it rains, does it not?</i>

But we use *n'est-ce pas que*, if we wish to ascertain the object of the question by another person's testimony; as, "Charles ne veut pas croire qu'il y avait de la neige ce matin, *n'est-ce pas qu'il y en avait?*"

Idiomatic Expressions used in Answers.

Avez-vous diné?—Oui, j'ai <i>diné</i>	<i>Have you dined?—Yes, I have</i>
Viendra-t-il?—Oui, il <i>viendra</i>	<i>Will he come?—Yes, he will</i>
Amènera-t-il son fils?—Oui, il <i>l'amènera</i>	<i>Will he bring his son?—Yes, he will</i>
Lui prêterez-vous votre cheval?—Oui, <i>je le lui prêterai</i>	<i>Will you lend him your horse?—Yes, I will</i>
N'est-ce pas vous qui avez cassé ce verre?—Si, <i>c'est moi</i>	<i>Is it not you who have broken that glass?—Yes, it is</i>
N'est-ce pas votre cocher qui m'a apporté la lettre?—Si, <i>c'est lui</i>	<i>Was it not your coachman who brought me the letter?—Yes, it was</i>
N'êtes-vous pas fâché qu'il est parti?—Si, <i>j'en suis fâché</i>	<i>Are you not sorry he is gone?—Yes, I am</i>
Votre père est-il Anglais?—Non, il ne <i>l'est pas</i>	<i>Is your father an Englishman?—No, he is not</i>
Est-il difficile de parler allemand?—Oui, <i>c'est difficile</i>	<i>Is it difficult to speak German?—Yes, it is</i>
Voulez-vous venir vous promener?—Oui, <i>je veux bien</i>	<i>Will you come and take a walk?—Yes, I will</i>

Read, translate, and write.

Votre père est pour moi un véritable ami; je n'oublierai jamais les services que j'en ai reçus. Cette maison menace ruine, n'en approchez pas. Avez-vous des chevaux? Non, je n'en ai pas. Votre sœur a-t-elle un piano? Oui, elle en a un. Pour avoir des amis, il faut être capable d'en faire et digne d'en avoir. Celui qui est dans la prospérité doit craindre d'en abuser. Combien d'enfants avez-vous? J'en ai deux. C'est un homme équivoque, ne vous y fiez pas. Les choses de la terre ne valent pas qu'on s'y attache. J'ai reçu sa lettre ce matin, j'y répondrai ce soir. Ce cheval est méchant, n'y touchez pas. Cette affaire est importante, donnez-y vos soins. Avez-vous été à la ville? Non, j'y vais. Pensez-vous aux pauvres qui souffrent? Oui, nous y pensons tous les jours. Quoique je parle beaucoup de vous, ma fille, j'y

pense encore davantage jour et nuit. Irez-vous en Écosse l'été prochain? Oui, nous irons.* Iriez-vous à Naples si j'allais avec vous? Non, je n'irais* pas. Est-ce là la voiture du duc? Oui, ce l'est. Sont-ce là les chevaux qui ont coûté si cher? Oui, ce les sont. Êtes-vous plus fort que vous l'étiez? Marie chante, mais Albert ne chante pas. J'ai vu la princesse de Galles à l'opéra. Ah! vraiment. Vous l'avez vue avec le prince, n'est-ce pas?

Exercise on EN and Y.

(How many¹) dogs have you? I have two. (Are you going²) to town? No, I have just returned³. Have you any brothers? No, I have none. If I have offended you, I am very sorry for it. If you have bread, give some to that poor woman. Do not speak of it to my father. Is my letter in the post-office? Yes, it is. Is not your wife in⁴ Paris? No, she is not. Have you been there? Yes, I have. There is a deep ditch, (take care not⁵ to) fall into it. My house is too small, I shall add⁶ a wing⁷ to it. Is my horse in the stable? Yes, he is. (Are you thinking⁸) of my friend? Yes, I am. Is your friend rich? No, he is not, but he is not the less happy for it. Has he a house? No, he has not. It is a very unfortunate business, do not speak of it. Does not tea come from China? Yes, it does. Are you going to Switzerland? Yes, we are. Do you work much at your music? No, I do not. You should (205) apply yourself (*s'appliquer*) to it.

Has his uncle sold his house? No, he has not. Have you sent⁹ my letters? Yes, I have. Do you read the newspapers? Yes, I do. Do you read French novels¹⁰? No, I do not. Is this your great coat? No, it is not. Are those the queen's jewels? Yes, they are. Was it not your carriage that I saw in the park yesterday? Yes, it was. Is not that your house? It was, but I have sold it. Have you any children? Yes, I have two. Do you remember (*se souvenir*) the queen's marriage? Yes, I do. Have you any French wine? Yes, I have, and I drink some every day. Has your mother any birds? No, she has none. When shall you have horses? I shall never have any. Have you ever been to Scotland? No, I have not. When shall we go there? I think I shall go next year. Have you an umbrella¹¹? Yes, I have. Is it a gold watch you have? Yes, it is. Has he a rifle¹²? No, he has not. Is this an English dog? No, it is not. Have they spoken to your brother? Yes, they have. Has he sent any clothes¹³ to his children? Yes, he has. Do you draw¹⁴? No, I do not. Does your sister sing¹⁵? Yes, she does. My son is going to Marseilles by the (steam-boat¹⁶). Is he! I have been to India, China, and Persia. Have you! The climate of those countries¹⁷ is very warm¹⁸, is it not? You will come with us, will you not? I told you so, did I not?

¹ Combien de ² aller ³ venir ⁴ à ⁵ prendre garde de ⁶ ajouter ⁷ aile f. ⁸ penser
⁹ envoyer ¹⁰ romans ¹¹ parapluie m. ¹² carabine f. ¹³ habits ¹⁴ dessiner ¹⁵ chanter
¹⁶ bateau à vapeur m. ¹⁷ pays ¹⁸ chaud

* For euphony's sake, *y* is omitted before the future and conditional of *aller*.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

367 The possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, &c.* (page 40), are expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles*, when they come after the verb *être*, "to be," in the sense of *appartenir*, "to belong;" as

ce cheval est à moi
ce livre est à lui
il n'est pas à vous

this horse is mine
that book is his
it is not yours

368 *Le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.*, are used more especially to distinguish a person's property from another's; as

lequel de ces chiens est le vôtre?
voici le mien, et voilà le sien

which of these dogs is yours?
this is mine, and that is his

369 The English possessive, expressed by 's, is rendered as follows:—

this is my mother's carriage
this gun is my brother's
this is my watch, and that is my
sister's

voici la voiture de ma mère
ce fusil est à mon frère
voici ma montre, et voilà celle de
ma sœur

370 When *mine, thine, his, &c.*, are used with *of* after a substantive, they are expressed in French by *mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs*; thus:—

a friend of mine
a sister of yours
a brother of his

un de mes amis
une de vos sœurs
un de ses frères

371 Should the substantive be preceded by *this, that, these, or those*, we simply turn the sentence thus:—

THAT horse of YOURS is shy*
THAT dog of HIS is excellent
where are THOSE gloves of MINE?

votre cheval est ombrageux
son chien est excellent
où sont mes gants?

372 *My own, thy own, his own, &c.*, are generally expressed by the adjective *propre*, or by the personal pronoun *à moi, à toi, à lui, &c.*; thus:—

he did it with HIS OWN hand
I have a house of MY OWN

il l'a fait de sa propre main
j'ai une maison à moi

* This could also be translated, *vous avez là un cheval ombrageux.*

Read, translate, and write.

Ce chapeau est à *moi* et ce paletot est à *lui*. Ce n'est pas votre avis, mais c'est *le mien*. J'attends sa résolution pour prendre *la mienne*. Notre maison et *la sienne* se touchent. *A qui* sont ces deux cannes? Voici *la mienne* et voilà *la sienne*. Ce champ est à *mon père*. Les exploits de son père sont effacés par *les siens*. Ces gants sont à *moi*, où sont *les vôtres*? Ecoutez mes raisons, j'écouterai *les vôtres* après. Vos intérêts sont *les nôtres*. Je viens d'apprendre la mort d'un de *mes amis*. Un de *mes élèves* est très-malade. Lamartine est un de *nos* meilleurs poètes, et Guizot un de *nos* meilleurs historiens. Cette jeune personne est la fille d'un de *mes associés*. Voici ma chambre et voilà *celle de ma sœur*. Je l'ai vu de *mes propres* yeux. Je prétends vous traiter comme mon *propre* fils. C'est une voiture à *moi*. Il demeure dans une maison à *lui*.

Exercise on Possessive Pronouns.

Is that¹ your house? No; it is not mine, (it is²) my brother's. I thought³ it was yours. This horse⁴ is mine, and that⁵ is his. This is mine and that is his. Whose⁶ is that farm? It was my uncle's: it is no longer⁷ his now; it is ours. Are all these beautiful meadows⁸ yours? No; they are theirs. I wish⁹ they were mine. That gun¹⁰ is my father's. A brother of mine arrived¹¹ from Paris yesterday, and he says that several¹² friends of his are totally ruined¹³ by the last revolution. I have found¹⁴ a book of yours among¹⁵ mine. A relation¹⁶ of ours came to see us last night¹⁷, and he spoke¹⁸ to us about¹⁹ one of your brothers. Is that young lady²⁰ a pupil²¹ of yours? Yes, madam; she is the daughter of a cousin of mine. That horse of yours is very old. She bought²² her horse with her own money. His sister has a carriage of her own. If you have lost your money, it is your own fault. Has your brother a house of his own? Yes, he has. This is my room, and that is my cousin's. Have you a room of your own? No, I have not.

¹ Est-ce là ² elle est à ³ croire ⁴ cheval-ci ⁵ celui-là ⁶ À qui ⁷ plus ⁸ prairie *f.*
⁹ Je voudrais ¹⁰ fusil *m.* ¹¹ est arrivé ¹² plusieurs ¹³ ruiner ¹⁴ trouver ¹⁵ parmi
¹⁶ parent ¹⁷ hier au soir ¹⁸ parler ¹⁹ de ²⁰ demoiselle *f.* ²¹ élève *f.* ²² acheter

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Ce INSTEAD OF *il, elle, ils, elles*.

373 *Ce* is frequently used before *être*, instead of *il, elle, ils, elles*, with reference to persons and things previously

mentioned. *Ce*, and not *il*, &c., is used before the verb *être*, when followed by a substantive preceded by any determinative expression, such as *un*, *le*, &c., or one of the personal pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles* ; as

c'est un de mes amis
c'est la vérité
est-ce vous ?

he is a friend of mine
it is the truth
is it you ?

C'est COMPARED WITH il est.

374 *Ce* is used for *it*, when *être* is followed by an adjective only ; as *c'est impossible*, *c'est admirable* ; but *il* only can be used if anything follows the adjective ; as

est-il possible d'être heureux sans
la vertu?—non, c'est impossible

is it possible to be happy without
virtue?—no, it is impossible

375 In speaking of the hour, *it* is expressed by *il* ; as

quelle heure est-il ?
il est dix heures

what o'clock is it ?
it is ten o'clock

But when we hear the clock striking, we must use *ce* ; as *quelle heure est-ce qui sonne ?—c'est dix heures*

376 *Ce* is used with the relative pronoun *qui*, *que*, &c. (103), to express the English pronouns *what*, *that* *which*, &c. ; as

voici ce qui est arrivé
voilà ce que j'aime
ce dont je parle

this is what has happened
this is (102) what I like
that which I am speaking of

377 *Ce* must be used before the verb *être*, when a sentence is the nominative of this verb ; as

ce qu'il craint le plus, c'est de
mourir sans vous revoir
vivre content de peu, c'est être
riche

what he fears most is to die with-
out seeing you again
to be content with little is to be
rich

378 *Ce* is also generally used before the verb *être* in sentences like the following :—

la véritable noblesse c'est la vertu *virtue is true nobility*

NOTE.—*Ce* is not used before *être*, if this verb be followed by an adjective ; as *ce que je dis est vrai*,—not *c'est vrai*.

Read, translate, and write.

Est-ce le bateau de Douvres qui vient d'arriver ? Non, c'est celui de Folkstone. Qui vous l'a dit ? C'est mon domestique. C'était lui qui conduisait les chevaux. Vous avez beaucoup écrit, c'est vrai ; mais que d'erreurs dans vos ouvrages ! Il est bien plus aisé de conquérir des provinces que de dompter une passion. Il est difficile de devenir savant sans travailler beaucoup. C'est vrai, c'est difficile. Quelle heure est-il ? Il est sept heures. Quelle heure est-ce qui sonne ? C'est trois heures. *Ce* qui fait le héros dégrade souvent l'homme. Je sais *ce* que vous voulez dire. *Ce* qui est certain, c'est *que* le monde est de travers. Le plus beau présent qui ait été fait aux hommes après la sagesse, c'est l'amitié. *Ce* que j'aime dans une jeune personne c'est la modestie. *Ce* qu'il y a de vrai, c'est *que* l'agriculture était extrêmement honorée chez les anciens Romains.

Exercise on Demonstrative Pronouns.

Is it a hare that¹ we have seen²? No; it is a rabbit. Is it a boy or a girl? I think³ it is a girl. It is he who (told me so⁴). Who⁵ is there? Is it you, brother? Yes, it is I. It is we who have paid⁶ for his education. Can⁷ you jump⁸ over⁹ that wall? No; it is too difficult. It is difficult to please¹⁰ everybody¹¹. Can you (let me have¹²) my coat¹³ for next Sunday? No; it is impossible. It is impossible for me to go¹⁴ with you to-morrow. Is it true¹⁵ that¹⁶ war is declared¹⁷ between¹⁸ those two nations? No; it is not true; it (is only¹⁹) a rumour. It is not easy²⁰ to conquer²¹ one's²² passions. Do you think it is²³ easy? What o'clock is it? It is two o'clock. I hear²⁴ a clock striking²⁵, what o'clock is it? It is twelve.

Education is to the mind²⁶ what cleanliness²⁷ is to the body. What is agreeable to the taste²⁸ is often prejudicial²⁹ to the health. I do not know³⁰ of what his servant is accused. You see to what you (engage yourself³¹). Give me that which you (do not like³²). What pleases me most³³ is solitude. What I ask³⁴ from you is, a reciprocal³⁵ friendship. What I wish³⁶ for most is that peace (may be made³⁷). What he fears³⁸ is to be discovered. What I dislike³⁹ in⁴⁰ him is his pride. What (costs little⁴¹) is too dear when it (is of no use⁴²). What I have seen was very beautiful. What I have eaten⁴³ with you yesterday was delicious. What your brother told⁴⁴ you is very true.

¹ que ² voir ³ croire ⁴ me le dire ⁵ Qui ⁶ payer ⁷ pouvoir ⁸ sauter ⁹ par dessus
¹⁰ plaire à ¹¹ tout le monde ¹² me donner ¹³ habit m. ¹⁴ aller ¹⁵ vrai ¹⁶ que
¹⁷ déclarer ¹⁸ entre ¹⁹ n'être que ²⁰ facile ²¹ vaincre ²² ses ²³ soit ²⁴ entendre
²⁵ qui sonne ²⁶ esprit ²⁷ propreté f. ²⁸ goût m. ²⁹ contraire ³⁰ savoir ³¹ s'engager
³² n'aimer pas ³³ le plus ³⁴ demander ³⁵ réciproque ³⁶ désirer ³⁷ on fasse
³⁸ craindre ³⁹ détester ⁴⁰ en ⁴¹ coûter peu ⁴² n'être d'aucun usage ⁴³ manger

ce sont.

379. *Ce* before the verb *être* requires this verb in the

singular number, except when it is followed by a substantive or a pronoun in the *third person plural*; as

<i>c'est moi</i>	<i>it is I</i>
<i>c'était elle</i>	<i>it was she</i>
<i>ce fut nous</i>	<i>it was we</i>
<i>ce sera vous</i>	<i>it will be you</i>
<i>ce sont eux (or elles)</i>	<i>it is they</i>
<i>ce sont mes amis</i>	<i>these are my friends</i>
<i>sont-ce là vos livres?</i>	<i>are those your books?</i>

Celui, celui-ci, celui-là, ceci, cela.

380 *Celui, celle, ceux, celles*, are generally used with the relative pronoun *qui, que, dont* (99), or the preposition *de*, and are applied to both persons and things; as

<i>celui qui parle</i>	<i>he who speaks</i>
<i>celle que je vois</i>	<i>she whom I see</i>
<i>ceux qui écoutent</i>	<i>they who listen</i>
<i>celles dont je parle</i>	<i>those of which I speak</i>
<i>celui de ma sœur</i>	<i>that of my sister</i>

381 *Celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci, ceci*, refer to the objects nearest, or last spoken of; and *celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, celles-là, cela*, have reference to the most distant objects, or those first spoken of; as

<i>voici deux livres; lequel voulez-vous, celui-ci ou celui-là?</i>	<i>here are two books; which will you have, this or that?</i>
<i>le corps périt, l'âme est immortelle; cependant on néglige celle-ci, et on sacrifie tout pour celui-là</i>	<i>the body perishes, the soul is immortal; nevertheless, we neglect this, and sacrifice everything for that</i>
<i>ceci vaut mieux que cela</i>	<i>this is better than that</i>

Read, translate, and write.

Ce n'est pas moi qui l'ai dit, c'est elle. Chez les anciens *c'étaient* les vieillards qui gouvernaient; chez vous *ce sont* les jeunes gens. *Ce furent* les Phéniciens qui inventèrent l'écriture. Nos vrais biens sont ceux de la nature, *c'est* le ciel, *c'est* la terre, *ce sont* ces campagnes, ces plaines, ces forêts, dont elle nous offre la jouissance inépuisable. Quelles sont les trois vertus théologiques? *Ce sont* la foi, l'espérance, et la charité. *Sont-ce là* les chiens dont vous m'avez parlé? *C'était* nous qui étions dans la voiture, et *c'étaient* eux qui étaient à cheval. *Celui qui* compte dix amis, n'en a pas un. Malheur à *ceux qui* remuent le fond d'une nation! L'ambassadeur de France et *celui d'Angleterre*. La chambre de ma

mère et *celle* de ma sœur sont au premier étage. *Celui-ci* meurt dans les prospérités et dans les richesses, *celui-là* dans la misère et dans l'amertume de son âme. Héraclite et Démocrite étaient d'un caractère bien différent : *celui-ci* riait toujours, et *celui-là* pleurait sans cesse. *Ceux-ci* font bien, *ceux-là* font mal.

C'est, ce sont.

Is it we who ought¹ to do² it ? No ; it is they. It will be you, gentlemen³, who will be called⁴ first⁵. It is they who will carry⁶ it to you. It was we who were talking⁷ in the next⁸ room. What are the principal towns in France ? They are Paris, which is the finest, Lyons, Marseilles, Bordeaux, Lille, Nantes, Rouen, which are the most important for commerce. He who cannot⁹ keep¹⁰ a secret is incapable of governing. They who never (were acquainted with¹¹) adversity, have seen¹² the world (but on¹³) one side. He who (speaks ill¹⁴) of his fellow-creatures¹⁵ deserves to be despised. Whose¹⁶ is that book ? It is my brother's. Our house is not larger than that of our neighbour¹⁷. The disorders¹⁸ of the mind¹⁹ are more difficult (to be cured²⁰) than those of the body. Virtue and vice have contrary effects : this causes²¹ the misery of men ; that makes²² them happy. I do not like this ; give me that. Which²³ of these two carriages do you advise²⁴ me to buy²⁵ ? This will cost²⁶ me eighty pounds ; and that, ninety. I bring²⁷ you some dahlias ; these are red, and those are yellow.

¹ devoir ² faire ³ messieurs ⁴ appelés ⁵ les premiers ⁶ porter ⁷ parler ⁸ voisin
⁹ ne pouvoir ¹⁰ garder ¹¹ ont éprouvé ¹² ne voir ¹³ que d' ¹⁴ médire ¹⁵ prochain *m. s.*
¹⁶ À qui ¹⁷ voisin ¹⁸ maladie *f.* ¹⁹ esprit ²⁰ à guérir ²¹ causer ²² rendre ²³ Laquelle ²⁴ conseiller ²⁵ d'acheter ²⁶ coûter ²⁷ apporter.

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Qui, que. (See page 43.)

382 The *relative pronoun* always takes the gender, number, and person of its antecedent, that is, of the word which precedes it ; as

moi *qui suis Français*
 toi *qui es Italien*
 elle *qui est Allemande*

vos sœurs *qui sont Anglaises*
 les plantes *auxquelles* je donnais
 mes soins ont été gelées

383 The *relative pronoun* must always be as near its antecedent as possible. Thus, instead of saying :—

Il a donné une montre d'or à son fils, *qui* a coûté trois cents francs,

we must say :—

Il a donné à son fils une montre d'or *qui* a coûté trois cents francs

384 *Qui* is sometimes used in an *absolute* manner, that is, without antecedent, and then applies to persons only; as

qui vous a dit cela ?
qui croirai-je ?

who told you that ?
whom shall I believe ?

NOTE.—The above examples show that *qui* used as a pronoun absolute may be the *subject* or *object* of the verb.

385 *Que*, without antecedent, is used in an interrogation formed with a verb which governs a direct object, and refers to things only; as

que dites-vous ?
que fait-il ?

what do you say ?
what is he doing ?

Quoi—*what*.

386 *Quoi*, without antecedent, is used in an interrogation formed by a verb which governs an indirect object; it applies to things only, and always depends on a preposition; as

de quoi parlez-vous ?
à quoi pensez-vous ?

what are you speaking of ?
what are you thinking of ?

387 *What*, meaning *that which*, is expressed by *ce dont* if the preposition *of* is used, and by *ce à quoi* if *to* is used; as

what you speak of is true
what I work at is amusing

ce dont vous parlez est vrai
ce à quoi je travaille est amusant

388 *Quoi* is also used in exclamations; thus:—

quoi de plus beau que la vertu ! *what is more beautiful than virtue !*

Dont, de qui, duquel.

389 *Dont* is used for both genders and numbers, and is applied to both persons and things. But if the relative pronoun be separated from its *antecedent* by another substantive, then instead of *dont*, we use *de qui* (applied to persons only), or *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, &c., according to the gender and number of the antecedent:—

l'homme dont je parle
la maison dont vous parlez
l'homme à la probité duquel je
me fie, est très-estimé

the man of whom I speak
the house of which you speak
the man to whose probity I trust
is much esteemed

A qui, auquel, &c.

390 *A qui* is generally used when speaking of persons or personified things; and *auquel*, *à laquelle*, *auxquels*, *auxquelles*, when speaking of animals and things, and sometimes of persons, when clearness or euphony requires it; as

<i>l'homme à qui je parle</i>	<i>the man to whom I speak</i>
<i>le cheval auquel il donne du foin</i>	<i>the horse to which he gives hay</i>
<i>l'étude à laquelle je me consacre</i>	<i>the study to which I am devoted</i>

Où, d'où, par où.

391 The pronouns *où*, *d'où*, *par où*, always refer to inanimate objects, and are often used for *auquel*, *dans lequel*, *par lequel*, &c.; as

<i>le but où (auquel) il tend</i>	<i>the end he aims at</i>
<i>le siècle où nous vivons</i>	<i>the age in which we live</i>
<i>le lieu d'où* il sort</i>	<i>the place whence he comes</i>
<i>le lieu par où j'ai passé</i>	<i>the place through which I passed</i>

392 Relative pronouns must always be expressed in French, though omitted in English; as

<i>le livre que je lis</i>	<i>the book I read</i>
<i>la maison que je vois</i>	<i>the house I see</i>

Read, translate, and write.

Gloire à la main *qui* sème, honte à la main *qui* nuit. Défiez-vous des belles paroles des gens *qui* se vantent d'être vertueux. Le livre *que* vous m'avez prêté est très-intéressant. *Qui* vous a traité de la sorte? *Qui* demandez-vous? *A qui* pensez-vous parler? *Que* ferez-vous s'il ne vous paie pas? Il n'y a rien sur *quoi* l'on ait tant disputé. De *quoi* n'est pas capable un cœur que la jalousie noircit et envénime? *A quoi* vous occupez-vous pendant la matinée? *Quoi* de plus consolant, à l'heure de la mort, que d'avoir fait des bonnes œuvres! Un plaisir *dont* on est assuré de se repentir, ne peut jamais être tranquille. Le sénat attachait à Rome des rois *dont* elle avait peu à craindre. Je sais *ce dont* vous voulez me parler. Le cheval sur *lequel* le roi était monté venait d'Espagne. Heureux *qui*, satisfait de son humble fortune, vit dans l'état *où* les dieux l'ont caché. *D'où* lui vient tant d'orgueil?

* But *dont*, instead of *d'où*, is used when extraction, birth, or any moral relation is expressed; as *la maison dont il sort est illustre*.

Exercise on Relative Pronouns.

Who is in the drawing-room? It is the lady who spoke to you this morning in the street. What does she want (*vouloir*)? I do not know. It is I who speak to you. You, who are an Italian, must find this country very cold. The gentleman² who spoke to you yesterday is a distinguished³ officer. The lady⁴ whom we shall see this evening is a very good musician⁵. The persons⁶ who have said⁷ it are here. Who has fallen⁸? Whom do you expect⁹? Who will observe¹⁰ the commandments of God shall be saved¹¹. What do you think¹² of that man? What does he eat¹³ for his dinner? What has he written¹⁴ to you? What shall we do¹⁵ if he does not come? What have they given to you for your trouble¹⁶? Of what does he complain¹⁷? In what have I offended¹⁸ you? To what do you impute¹⁹ the fault? It is what you (are mistaken²⁰) in. On what will you interrogate²¹ him? What is more²² beautiful than²³ to forgive²⁴ one's²⁵ enemies? What you apply²⁶ yourself to is useful. What is the name of the gentleman from whom you (have) received a letter? It is a name which is very difficult to pronounce. With what did you open²⁷ the door of my room? With a key which I found in the kitchen.

¹ devoir ² monsieur m. ³ distingué ⁴ dame f. ⁵ musicienne f. ⁶ personne f.
⁷ dire ⁸ tomber ⁹ attendre ¹⁰ observer ¹¹ sauver ¹² penser ¹³ manger ¹⁴ écrire
¹⁵ faire ¹⁶ peine ¹⁷ se plaindre ¹⁸ offenser ¹⁹ imputer ²⁰ se tromper ²¹ interroger
²² de plus ²³ que ²⁴ pardonner à ²⁵ ses ²⁶ s'appliquer ²⁷ ouvrir.

Dont, de qui, duquel — à qui, auquel, &c.

The young man of whom I have spoken to you deserves¹ to be encouraged. The castle, of which we perceive² the towers, belongs³ to the Duke d'Aumale. The clemency of which men make⁴ a virtue is often practised⁵ (out of⁶) policy⁷. Alexander⁸, to whose courage they give (so much⁹) praise¹⁰, died¹¹ at thirty-three years (of age¹²). Of whom do you speak? From whom do you expect a letter? It¹³ is evident that (there is¹⁴) a God whom all men must¹⁵ obey. The glory to which heroes sacrifice¹⁶ is often a false glory. To whom has he sold¹⁷ his last picture¹⁸? To which of these two pupils¹⁹ (must we²⁰) give the prize? Obedience is a virtue to which (we must²¹) accustom²² children. (This is²³) the place²⁴ in which the general of the army was killed²⁵. Many (learned people²⁶) do not adopt²⁷ the principles from which the system²⁸ of Descartes is derived²⁹. This is the door through which the king passed³⁰. The house from which I come³¹ is (to be let³²). The house from which the great Condé sprung³³ was illustrious. The man you saw³⁴ (at my house³⁵) is dead. I will never forget³⁶ the favour you have done³⁷ me. He thinks³⁸ it will rain³⁹ to-morrow.

¹ mériter de ² apercevoir ³ appartenir ⁴ faire ⁵ pratiquer ⁶ par ⁷ politique
⁸ Alexandre ⁹ tant de ¹⁰ louange ¹¹ mourir ¹² l'âge de ¹³ il ¹⁴ il y a ¹⁵ devoir
¹⁶ sacrifier ¹⁷ vendre ¹⁸ tableau ¹⁹ élève ²⁰ faut-il ²¹ il faut ²² accoutumer
²³ Voici ²⁴ lieu m. ²⁵ tuer ²⁶ sav. nt ²⁷ adopter ²⁸ système ²⁹ dériver ³⁰ passer
³¹ sortir ³² à louer ³³ sortir ³⁴ voir ³⁵ chez moi ³⁶ oublier ³⁷ faire ³⁸ croire
³⁹ pleuvor.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

On — *one, people, they, we, &c.*

393 The indefinite terms in English, *one, they, we, people, it is, &c.*, are rendered in French by *on*, with the verb in the third person singular, and it is often employed to avoid the passive form of the verb, which is seldom used in French; as

on trouve des amis partout
on croit qu'il a tort
on parle de guerre
 ici *on* parle Anglais

one finds friends everywhere
they think he is wrong
people talk of war
English is spoken here

394 Though *on* is generally masculine and singular, it becomes *feminine* when it refers personally to a woman; and *plural* when it very distinctly represents several persons; as

ON n'est pas toujours JEUNE et BELLE
ON est ÉGAUX quand on s'aime

395 *L'on* is generally used instead of *on*, after *si, et, où*, and sometimes after *que, quoi*, for the sake of euphony; as

si l'on est sage, on sera récompensé
on estime et l'on respecte l'homme juste
on aime toujours à revoir le lieu où l'on a reçu le jour
jamais on est grand qu'autant que l'on est juste

But *on* never takes an *l'* if it is followed by *le, la, les, lui, leur*, or other words beginning with *l'*; as *si on le voit; et on le verra; not si l'on le voit, &c.*, which would produce a disagreeable cacophony.

Quiconque, qui que, &c.—*whoever.*

396 *Quiconque* signifies *toute personne qui*, "every one who," and therefore has no plural, and refers to persons only; as

quiconque n'obéira pas à la loi
 sera puni

whoever shall not obey the law
will be punished

397 *Whoever*, followed by *I am, thou art, we are, you are*, is expressed by *qui que*; as

whoever you are

qui que vous soyez

398 *Qui que ce soit qui* (whoever) refers to persons; and *quoi que or quoi que ce soit que* (whatever) refers to things; as

qui que ce soit qui l'ait fait
quoi que ce soit qu'il fasse

whoever has done it
whatever he does

Chacun — *every one, each.*

399 *Every one*, meaning "each in particular," is expressed by *chacun*; but if it means "all," it is expressed by *tous*, *m.*, *toutes*, *f.*; as

every one lives after his own way
every one of them was killed

chacun vit à sa façon
ils furent tous tués

Chacun (fem. *chacune*) is always singular. When preceded by a substantive in the plural, it is sometimes followed by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, and sometimes by *leur*, *leurs*.

400 *Chacun* requires *son*, *sa*, *ses*, when it comes after the direct object to the verb, or when the verb has no such direct object; as

il faut remettre ces livres, chacun
à sa place
les juges ont opiné, chacun selon
ses vues

you must put these books each in
its place
the judges gave their opinion, each
according to his own view

But we can use also *leur*, *leurs*, by putting *chacun* between two commas; as

ils ont opiné, CHACUN, selon LEURS vues

401 *Chacun* requires *leur*, *leurs*, whenever it precedes the direct object to the verb, because in this case *leur* does not refer to *chacun*, but to the nominative of the preceding verb; as

ils ont donné, chacun, leur avis
ils ont apporté, chacun, leurs
offrandes

each one has given his opinion
they have each of them brought
their offerings

Autrui — *others.*

402 *Autrui* is always used substantively, has no plural, and is generally preceded by a preposition; as

il ne faut point désirer le bien
d'autrui

we must not covet other men's
goods

Personne — nobody, no one.

403 *Personne*, as an indefinite pronoun, is always masculine singular, and means *no one*, *qui que ce soit*. In this sense it requires *ne* before the verb; as

<i>personne n'est assez sot pour croire</i>	<i>no one is silly enough to believe</i>
<i>un tel conte</i>	<i>such a story</i>
<i>la fierté ne convient à personne</i>	<i>pride becomes nobody</i>

404 *Personne* is also used in the sense of *quelqu'un*, "anybody," "any one," chiefly in sentences implying doubt or interrogation, and then it takes no negation; as

<i>je doute que personne vienne</i>	<i>I doubt whether anybody will come</i>
<i>personne oserait-il le nier?</i>	<i>would any one dare deny it?</i>

405 *Personne* as a substantive is feminine; as

<i>quelle est la personne assez sotte</i>	<i>who is the person foolish enough</i>
<i>pour le croire?</i>	<i>to believe it?</i>

L'un l'autre* — one another. **L'un et l'autre** — both.

406 *L'un et l'autre*, *les uns et les autres*, simply suggest an idea of plurality, and mean *both*; whilst *l'un l'autre*, *les uns les autres*, add an idea of *reciprocity* to that of plurality; as

<i>j'aime Racine et Boileau, l'un et</i>	<i>I like Racine and Boileau, both</i>
<i>l'autre furent de grands poètes</i>	<i>were great poets</i>
<i>ils s'estimaient l'un l'autre</i>	<i>they esteemed each other</i>

407 *Ni l'un ni l'autre*, in English *neither*, requires *ne* before the verb, which may be used in the *plural* or in the *singular*; as

<i>ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendront</i>	<i>they will not come, either of them</i>
<i>ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra</i>	<i>neither of them will come</i>

Read, translate, and write.

On peut être honnête homme et faire mal des vers. *A-t-on* jamais pleuré d'avoir fait son devoir? *On* s'était cru amis, et *l'on* s'est trouvé rivaux. Quand *on* est belle *on* ne l'ignore pas. *Qui-conque* n'a pas de caractère, n'est pas un homme, c'est une chose.

* *Some*, repeated in a sentence, is expressed by *les uns* and *les autres*; as *les uns riaient, les autres pleuraient* some were laughing, some were crying.

Passant, *qui que* tu sois, ne m'envie pas ce peu de terre qui recouvre ma cendre. *Qui que ce soit* qui vous l'ait dit, il s'est trompé. *Chacun* prend son plaisir où il le trouve. *Quoi que* dise cet auteur, je prétends qu'il a tort. *Chacun* de nous a ses peines. Ils s'en allèrent *chacun* de leur côté. Que faites-vous *tous* les matins? Ils apportèrent des offrandes au temple, chacun selon *ses* moyens. Ils ont apporté, *chacun*, *leurs* offrandes. Ne faites pas à *autrui* ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit. *Qui ne* plaint *personne* ne mérite pas qu'on le plaigne. Je *ne* connais *personne* d'aussi aimable que votre sœur. *Personne* oserait-il me contredire? Il faut toujours fréquenter les *personnes* bien élevées. Tous deux s'aidaient *l'un l'autre* à porter leurs douleurs. Ils sont arrivés *l'un et l'autre* en même temps. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* n'a fait son devoir. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* n'ont réussi.

Exercise on Indefinite Pronouns.

People imagine¹ that when they are rich they are happy; but they are very often mistaken². One is not always master of one's³ passions. We attribute⁴ the invention of gunpowder⁵ to Berthold Schwartz of Friburg⁶. They say that the cholera is raging⁷ in Russia. If people say that he (is wrong⁸), they are mistaken. Whoever is modest seldom fails⁹ to gain¹⁰ the esteem of those (he converses with¹¹). Whoever does not do¹² his duty¹³ will be punished¹⁴. I say so¹⁵ to whoever will¹⁶ hear me. Whoever we are, (let us not forget¹⁷) that we are mortal. Whoever has written that pamphlet is a clever¹⁸ man. Whatever you (may do¹⁹) you will not persuade him. Whatever he (may say²⁰) (he is wrong²¹). Every one thinks²² (after his own way²³). Every one of them was saved²⁴. Every one lives²⁵ after his own way. God will reward²⁶ everybody (according to²⁷) his works²⁸.

These poor people (*gens*) have brought offerings, every one according to his means. These two poems²⁹ have each their merit; both are full of beauties. Bear³⁰ the imperfections of others with patience. (We must³¹) never speak ill³² of others. Nobody becomes³³ vicious or virtuous (on a sudden³⁴). I know³⁵ nobody so learned³⁶ as your father. Is there³⁷ any one bold³⁸ enough to³⁹ do it? I know a person who will do it. Fire and water destroy⁴⁰ one another. The happiness of the people⁴¹ makes⁴² that of the prince; their true interests are connected⁴³ with each other. Turenne and Condé were two great captains⁴⁴; both obtained⁴⁵ the esteem and admiration of their contemporaries⁴⁶. I have read these two historians, both relate the same event. Where are your cousins (*f.*)? I expected them both, but neither will come.

¹ s'imaginer ² se tromper ³ ses ⁴ attribuer ⁵ poudre à canon ⁶ Fribourg ⁷ sévir
⁸ avoir tort ⁹ manquer ¹⁰ gagner ¹¹ avec qui il converse ¹² faire ¹³ devoir
¹⁴ punir ¹⁵ le ¹⁶ vouloir ¹⁷ n'oublier pas ¹⁸ habile ¹⁹ faire ²⁰ dire ²¹ avoir tort
²² penser ²³ à sa manière ²⁴ sauver ²⁵ vivre ²⁶ récompenser ²⁷ selon ²⁸ œuvre *f.*
²⁹ poème *m.* ³⁰ souffrir ³¹ On ne doit ³² mal ³³ devenir ³⁴ tout-à-coup ³⁵ connaître
³⁶ savant ³⁷ Y a-t-il ³⁸ hardi ³⁹ pour ⁴⁰ se détruire ⁴¹ peuple *m.* ⁴² faire ⁴³ lier
⁴⁴ capitaines ⁴⁵ obtenir ⁴⁶ contemporain.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Agreement of the Verb with its Subject.

408 The verb agrees in number and person with its subject, whether expressed or understood ; as

si vous le voyez, dites-lui que je l'attends
la vie est le chemin de la mort
les hommes passent comme les fleurs

409 When a verb has several subjects, it is put in the plural number ; and if the subjects are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first in preference to the other two, and with the second in preference to the third. In this case the resuming pronoun, *nous* or *vous*, generally precedes the verb (**348**) ; as

Homère et Virgile *sont* les princes
 des poètes

vous et moi *nous* sortirons
 vous et votre frère *vous* lirez
 c'est *vous* ou lui qui l'avez

Homer and Virgil are the princes
of poets

you and I will go out
you and your brother will read
it is you or he who have it

410 NOTE.—The resuming pronoun (**348**) *nous* or *vous* is not repeated when the conjunction *ni* occurs between the nominatives ; as *ni vous ni moi ne sommes contents*.

But the verb agrees with the *last* noun, its subject —

411—1 When the different nouns are synonymous, or nearly so, or when they form a climax or gradation ; as

son courage, son intrépidité ÉTONNE les plus braves
ce sacrifice, votre intérêt, votre honneur, Dieu L'EXIGE

412—2 When the verb comes after *rien*, *tout*, *chacun*, *personne*, or any expression that recapitulates the preceding nouns acting as subject to that verb ; as

le temps, les biens, la vie, tout EST à la patrie
voisins, amis, parents, chacun L'AIME

413—3 When the words forming the subject are separated by *ou* ; as

la mort ou la captivité PARAÎSSAIT inévitable
choisisses : l'un ou l'autre ACHÈVERA mes peines

414 But if the words separated by *ou* are in different

persons, the verb is put in the plural, and agrees with the person that has the priority ; as

lui ou moi nous PARLERONS
vous ou votre frère vous VIENDREZ

415 When the two subjects are united by one of the conjunctions *comme, de même que, ainsi que, &c.*, the verb agrees only with the first subject ; as

la vertu, ainsi que le savoir, a son ⁶virtue, as well as learning, has
prix its value

416 But the verb is put in the plural when any of the foregoing conjunctions express connection, plurality, or simultaneous effects between the nouns, rather than comparison ; as

Dans l'Égypte, Bacchus ainsi qu'Hercule étaient reconnus comme demi-dieux.—VOLTAIRE.

417 When the subjects to the verb are joined by *ni* repeated, that verb is put in the plural ; as

ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous ^{neither gold nor grandeur makes}
rendent heureux us happy

418 However, when the act or state expressed by the verb can only have reference to *one* subject at a time, the verb is in the singular ; as

ni l'un ni l'autre n'obtiendra le ^{neither the one nor the other will}
prix de français obtain the French prize

Read, translate, and write.

Nous existons sans savoir comment, et nous pensons sans savoir pourquoi. La religion est une chaîne d'or qui suspend la terre au trône de l'Eternel. Souvent les richesses attirent les amis ; et la pauvreté les éloigne. Le riche et le pauvre sont égaux devant la loi. Narbal et moi nous admirions la bonté des dieux. Penses-y bien, jeune homme, que sont dix, vingt, trente ans pour un être immortel ? Voisins, amis, parents, chacun préfère son intérêt à celui de tout autre. La faiblesse ou l'inexpérience nous fait commettre bien des fautes. Sa fureur, sa rage n'a plus de bornes. C'est vous ou lui qui l'avez dit. L'enfer, comme le ciel, prouve un Dieu juste et bon. L'histoire, ainsi que la physique, n'a commencé à se débrouiller que sur la fin du XVI^e siècle. La santé, comme la fortune, retirent leurs faveurs à ceux qui en abusent.

Exercise on the Verbs.

We are all mortal. He speaks too fast¹. You work² too much. Virtue and vice have different³ consequences³. My son and daughter will sing⁴ this evening. You and they were of the same opinion⁵. You and your brother will go⁶ (on horseback⁷); your father and I will walk⁸. He, she, and I will go to the play⁹. You and he know¹⁰ the state of their affairs. Neither he nor I have ever said so¹¹. Neither you nor your friend can¹² oblige me. Men, women, children, everything was consumed by the flames. Threats, entreaties¹³, tears, nothing could soften¹⁴ him. (Either) fear or misery has made¹⁵ him guilty. Neither speaks English. Neither he nor your brother will obtain the situation. Envy, like ambition, is a blind passion. Pride¹⁶ (as well as¹⁷) anger, lowers¹⁸ the character of man. The fear of death, or rather, the love of life, began to revive¹⁹ in her bosom. Neither your sister nor mine will be invited to the ball. Neither (of them) likes it.

¹ vite ² travailler ³ effet *m.* ⁴ chanter ⁵ avis *m.* ⁶ aller ⁷ à cheval ⁸ marcher
⁹ spectacle *m.* ¹⁰ connaître ¹¹ le ¹² ne ¹³ pouvoir ¹⁴ supplications ¹⁵ attendre
¹⁶ rendre ¹⁷ orgueil ¹⁸ ainsi que ¹⁹ rabaisser ²⁰ se réveiller

Government or Object of Verbs.

(See page 47.)

419 Some verbs may have two governments, or objects; one *direct* (115), the other *indirect* (116); as

j'ai donné une montre à mon fils *I have given a watch to my son*

420 But a verb cannot have two *direct*, or two *indirect* objects; we must therefore say:—

c'est de lui que (not *dont*) *je parle* *it is of him that I speak*
c'est à lui que (not *à qui*) *je parle* *it is to him that I speak*

421 When two verbs, in the same sentence, do not govern the same case, each verb must have its distinct object; as

he attacked and took the city *il attaqua la ville et s'en empara*

But we cannot say: *il attaqua et s'empara de la ville.*

Position of the Object of the Verb.

422 When a verb has two objects of equal length, or nearly so, the *direct* is placed before the *indirect* object; as

les Français vainquirent les Autrichiens à Solferino

423 But when the two objects differ in length, the shorter comes first, unless the sense requires the contrary ; as

Les Crétois donnèrent à Télémaque toutes les marques d'une amitié sincère.

In placing the objects, we should carefully attend to the sense ; thus, we could not say :—

croyez-vous ramener ces esprits égarés par la douceur ?

But : *croyez-vous ramener, par la douceur, 'ces esprits égarés ?*

Government of Passive Verbs.

424 The object of passive verbs is expressed by *de* or *par* : by *de* when we express a feeling of the heart, a passion, or an operation of the soul ; and by *par* when we express an action referring exclusively to the mind or the body ; as

<i>l'honnête homme est estimé de</i>	<i>the honest man is esteemed by</i>
<i>tout le monde</i>	<i>everybody</i>
<i>Henri IV fut assassiné par un</i>	<i>Henry IV. was murdered by a</i>
<i>fanatique</i>	<i>fanatic</i>

425 There are often English verbs which require a *direct object*, whilst the corresponding verb in French requires an *indirect object*, and vice versâ. The prepositions used in such cases are generally *à* or *de* :—

<i>j'ai répondu à sa lettre</i>	<i>I answered his letter</i>
<i>il jouit d'une bonne santé</i>	<i>he enjoys good health</i>
<i>je vous attends</i>	<i>I am waiting for you</i>

426 The present Infinitive of a verb may be the object to another verb, either by the insertion of a preposition, or without any intervening word. The prepositions generally used in such cases are *à* and *de*

EXAMPLES WITHOUT PREPOSITION.

<i>allez voir votre mère</i>	<i>go and see your mother</i>
<i>daignez m'écouter</i>	<i>deign to listen to me</i>
<i>je n'ose me plaindre</i>	<i>I dare not complain</i>
<i>j'aime mieux ne rien dire</i>	<i>I prefer to say nothing</i>

EXAMPLES WITH *à*.

<i>il aime à lire l'histoire</i>	<i>he likes to read history</i>
<i>je vous exhorte à étudier</i>	<i>I exhort you to study</i>
<i>il apprend à écrire</i>	<i>he learns to write</i>
<i>accoutumez-vous à travailler</i>	<i>accustom yourself to work</i>

EXAMPLES WITH *de*.

je vous conseille <i>de</i> rester ici	<i>I advise you to stay here</i>
il mérite <i>d'être</i> récompensé	<i>he deserves to be rewarded</i>
je crains <i>de</i> l'offenser	<i>I fear to offend him</i>
il s'abstient <i>de</i> boire du vin	<i>he abstains from drinking wine</i>

427 Some verbs take both *à* and *de*; such as, *commencer, continuer, contraindre, engager, forcer, obliger, s'occuper, &c.*; as

il commence <i>à</i> bien écrire	<i>he begins to write well</i>
je commence <i>d'écrire</i> mon thème	<i>I begin to write my exercise</i>

REMARK.—*C'est à vous à* (it is your turn) must not be mistaken for *c'est à vous de* (it is your right or duty); as *c'est à vous à parler*, it is your turn to speak; *c'est à vous de parler*, it is for you or your duty to speak.

NOTE.—Being convinced that practice only will enable the student to know when a verb is to be accompanied by a preposition or not, and which preposition is to be then used, no general rules are here given on the subject.

Read, translate, and write.

Mon oncle m'a donné quatre beaux volumes de Molière. Est-ce à vous ou à votre sœur qu'ils étaient destinés? C'est à moi qu'ils les avaient promis. Ce n'est pas de vous que nous parlons. J'ai trouvé un journal sur votre table, et je m'en suis emparé. Les méchants sont détestés de tout le monde. Les Romains furent vaincus par les Carthaginois à la bataille de Cannes. L'imprimerie fut inventée, dit-on, par Gutenberg. Je compte partir samedi prochain. Aimez-vous mieux attendre jusqu'à lundi? La religion nous apprend à respecter nos maîtres, à être affables envers nos inférieurs et à aimer tous les hommes comme nous-mêmes. Nous fûmes obligés de passer la nuit dans la forêt. Avertissez votre ami d'être sur ses gardes, car je connais quelqu'un qui essaie de lui nuire.

Exercise on the Government of Verbs.

Take¹ this letter to your mother. I will give you that book, if you learn² your lesson well. He brought³ a beautiful watch⁴ to his daughter. It⁵ is of your father that we are speaking⁶. It was to his son that I was speaking. It is from him that I have received⁷ that present. I found⁸ this pen, and I used⁹ it. Our troops attacked¹⁰ the city and took¹¹ it. Your father is esteemed by all men of probity. Gaul¹² was conquered¹³ by Cæsar¹⁴. Those children were punished by their master. We were attacked by a troop of highwaymen¹⁵. That thief is well known¹⁶ by all the people¹⁷ of the village. Was it not from

¹ porter ² apprendre ³ apporter ⁴ montre *f.* ⁵ Ce ⁶ parler ⁷ recevoir ⁸ trouver ⁹ se servir de ¹⁰ attaquer ¹¹ s'emparer de ¹² Gaules *f. pl.* ¹³ conquis ¹⁴ César ¹⁵ voleurs de grand chemin ¹⁶ connaître ¹⁷ gens

your stock-broker¹⁸ that you expected a letter yesterday? No; it is from my banker that I expect a cheque of two thousand francs. I was deceived by the man whom I considered my best friend. I respect my tutor, and obey¹⁹ him.

¹⁸ agent de change ¹⁹ obéir à

Who was asking for me? Two gentlemen. Will they wait¹ for me? They said they would look for you at the railway station. That house would suit² your friend. (For) how much have you sold it? I sold it for fifteen hundred pounds. You will never persuade those men that they (are wrong³). Do you approve of his plan? I doubt his success. Let us slander⁴ nobody. What dictionary do you use⁵? Do you remember⁶ the Princess of Wales' arrival in London? Yes, I remember it well. Does she enjoy good health? Yes, she does.

I hope to thank you myself. I wish⁷ to see him. Accustom yourselves⁸ to work a little every day. We come to see you. She seems⁹ to like her French lessons. Do your children learn¹⁰ to dance? No, but they learn to draw. I like to walk¹¹ in the fields. Has he not invited you to go and see him? His mother has consented to sell her house. I advise¹² you to buy it.

I forbid you, said the archbishop, to touch any¹³ of my companions. They¹⁴ accuse him of having revealed the secret. Do you advise¹⁵ me to sell my house? You will do wrong¹⁶ to sell it. He had the misfortune to break his leg. Had he not the audacity to invite me after such (328) conduct? We agreed¹⁷ to speak on the subject one after the other. Do you not fear to excite him? I defy him to prove what¹⁸ he says.

¹ attendre ² convenir à ³ avoir tort ⁴ médire de ⁵ se servir ⁶ se souvenir ⁷ désirer
⁸ s'accoutumer ⁹ paraître ¹⁰ apprendre ¹¹ se promener ¹² engager ¹³ aucun ¹⁴ On
¹⁵ conseiller ¹⁶ avoir tort ¹⁷ convenir ¹⁸ ce que

Use of Avoir and Être with other Verbs.

428 All active verbs are conjugated with *avoir* in their compound tenses; as

j'ai parlé	<i>I have spoken</i>
j'avais écrit	<i>I had written</i>
j'aurai reçu	<i>I shall have received</i>

429 All passive and reflective verbs are conjugated with *être*; as

je suis trompé	<i>I am deceived</i>
je me suis levé	<i>I have risen</i>
je m'étais habillé	<i>I had dressed</i>

430 Neuter verbs are generally conjugated with *avoir*; as

j'ai marché	<i>I have walked</i>
j'avais dormi	<i>I had slept</i>
j'aurai vécu	<i>I shall have lived, &c.</i>

Except some which are conjugated with *être*; as *je suis allé, il est arrivé, je serais mort, nous sommes venus*, &c. (See page 90, No. 187.) .

430* Certain neuter verbs are sometimes conjugated with *avoir* and sometimes with *être*. This entirely depends on the meaning intended to be conveyed: with *avoir* they express an action; with *être*, the state resulting from that action; such as *augmenter, cesser, déborder, demeurer, descendre, disparaître, monter, passer, rester, sortir*, &c. (188).

EXAMPLES.

With AVOIR.

j'ai descendu deux fois
I went down twice

il a monté trop vite
he went up too quickly

le roi a passé ici
the king passed here

ce mot m'a échappé
I have forgotten the word

cette maison lui a convenu
that house has suited him

With ÊTRE.

est-il descendu ?
is he down ?

est-il monté ?
is he gone upstairs ?

la pluie est passée
the rain is over

ce mot m'est échappé
that word has escaped me

il est convenu du prix
he has agreed as to the price

PROPER USE OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

INDICATIVE MOOD (123).

The Present Tense.

431 The *present* of the Indicative is used in French, as in English, to denote a present or habitual action or state; as

je parle de vous
vous écrivez bien
nous sommes ici

I speak of you
you write well
we are here

432 NOTE.—In English the *present* is represented under three forms:—1 *I speak*; 2 *I am speaking*; 3 *I do speak*; which are all expressed in French by *je parle*. The second form, *I am speaking*, may be rendered idiomatically by *je suis à parler*.

433 The *Present* is often used instead of a *Past* tense

to express, in a more lively and emphatical manner, a thing that happened at a time quite past ; as

il se lève, il regarde, il voit de tous côtés
courir des assassins à pas précipités.—VOLTAIRE.

434 The *Present* is familiarly used instead of the *Future*, when the time alluded to is proximate or near ; as

je pars demain pour Paris

I set out to-morrow for Paris

The Imperfect or Descriptive Tense.

435 The *Imperfect* is used to denote an action not concluded, or going on while another took place ; as

j'écrivais quand il entra
il dinait quand je l'ai vu

*I was writing when he came in
he was dining when I saw him*

436 The *Imperfect* is used also to express an action *habitual** or frequently performed ; as

les Grecs cultivaient les arts
j'allais à la chasse quand j'étais
à la campagne
Henri IV était un grand roi, et
il aimait son peuple

*the Greeks cultivated the arts
I went a shooting when I was in
the country
Henry IV. was a great king, and
he loved his people*

437 The *Imperfect* is used after the conjunction *si* "if," to denote a condition or supposition ; as

si j'avais le temps, j'irais le voir
si vous partiez demain

*if I had time, I would go and see him
were you to set out to-morrow*

The Past Definite or Historical Tense.

438 The *Past Definite* is used in French to express a particular fact which has happened but once, or very seldom, at a time specified and entirely elapsed ; as

je traversai le Rhin en 1839
César fut tué dans le sénat
je lui écrivis la semaine dernière
Louis XIV régna 72 ans

*I crossed the Rhine in 1839
Cæsar was killed in the senate
I wrote to him last week
Louis XIV. reigned 72 years*

* The *imperfect* must be used in French when the English past tense can be formed with *used to*, or with *was* or *were* and the present participle ; as, While I *read* (or *was reading*), tandis que je *lisais*.—I *dined* (or *used to dine*) at six, je *dinais* à six heures.

The Imperfect and the Past Definite compared.

439 The *Imperfect* describes persons and things as they were, and the *Past Definite* merely states past facts :—

Imperfect.

La rivière qui *coulait* à mes pieds, tour à tour se *perdait* dans les bois, tour à tour *reparaissait* brillante des constellations de la nuit, qu'elle *répétait* dans son sein.—CHATEAUBRIAND.

Past Definite.

Le roi *monta* en voiture sans mot dire; Cobbett se *présenta* pour y entrer, mais Charles lui *barra* le chemin avec le pied, et *fit* fermer aussitôt la portière.—GUIZOT.

Read, translate, and write.

Pendant que nous *errions* à travers la plaine déserte, une brume épaisse *s'étendait* sur les flots et *commençait* à nous envelopper. Nous *longeâmes* cette île, et le lendemain nous *arrivâmes* en face de sept montagnes de glace.—MARMIER. Le jour *commençait* à bnisser, ils *s'embarquèrent* pour l'île. Déjà le bruit s'y *était* répandu que le roi *arrivait*; beaucoup d'habitants se *portèrent* à sa rencontre: comme il *traversait* les rues de Newport, une jeune femme *s'avança* vers lui, et lui *présenta* une rose rouge, éclosée malgré la rigueur de la saison.—GUIZOT. Nous *allâmes* chez le gouverneur que nous ne *pûmes* voir parce qu'il *était* malade. Si je ne me rappelle pas ses noms c'est qu'il en *avait* dix ou douze.—DE SÉGUR. Le roi *fut* fort troublé de cette apparition subite; sa tête, qui *était* toute faible, en *fut* ébranlée.—DE BARANTE.

Exercise.

Present. I read¹ the history of the French revolution. Are you writing to your mother? They work² nine hours a³ day. He seized⁴ him (by the⁵) collar⁶, threw⁷ him down, and said to him, 'Surrender⁸, or you are dead!' We shall go this evening to the opera, and I shall (set out⁹) for Italy to-morrow. Shall you soon have done? Shall you soon be ready?

Imperfect. Frederick the Great was plain¹⁰ in his dress, and always wore¹¹ a military uniform. I was writing you a letter when I was informed¹² of your arrival. What¹³ did you do when you were in¹⁴ the country¹⁵? I rode¹⁶ every day before breakfast. When my father travelled¹⁷, I always accompanied him. Marshal Saxe was the greatest general of his day¹⁸. If he were rich, he would assist all the poor.

Past Definite. Louis the Fourteenth ascended¹⁹ the throne at five

¹ lire ² travailler ³ par ⁴ saisir ⁵ au ⁶ collet ⁷ terrasser ⁸ se rendre ⁹ partir
¹⁰ simple ¹¹ porter ¹² informer ¹³ que ¹⁴ à ¹⁵ campagne ¹⁶ monter à cheval
¹⁷ voyager ¹⁸ temps m. ¹⁹ monter sur

years (of age²⁰), and died in his seventy-seventh year, on the first of September, 1715. Alexander, with forty thousand men, attacked Darius, who had²¹ six hundred thousand; he gave²² him battle twice, defeated²³ him, and made his mother, wife, and daughters prisoners. The French army landed near Algiers²⁴ on the 14th of June, 1830. invested²⁵ the city, and soon after compelled the Dey to surrender.

Examples of both. Two ladies came to rest²⁶ under the tree which covered us with its foliage. An old (blind man²⁷) knocked²⁸ at the door of the hall where they were dining. Scarcely had we arrived, when we heard²⁹ the sound of a horn.³⁰ We arrived at the foot of the mountain as the sun (was setting³¹), and we slept³² at a small inn which overlooked³³ the whole valley. In the middle of the night we heard the distant noise of a cataract which was falling from a steep rock. We rose at six o'clock, and took a coach which was going to Geneva.

²⁰ l'âge de ²¹ en avoir ²² livrer ²³ défaire ²⁴ Alger ²⁵ investir ²⁶ se reposer
²⁷ aveugle ²⁸ frapper ²⁹ entendre ³⁰ cor ³¹ se coucher ³² coucher ³³ dominer

The Past Indefinite.

440 The *Past Indefinite* is used to express a thing as having taken place, without specifying when, or which has happened at a time not entirely past; as *this day, this week, this month, this year, &c.*; as

il a beaucoup voyagé
je l'ai vu cette semaine
je l'ai rencontré ce matin

he has travelled much
I have seen him *this week*
I met him *this morning*

441 The *Past Indefinite* is used also instead of the *future anterior*, to express what is about to take place; as

attendez, j'ai fini dans un instant wait, I shall soon have done

442 OBSERVE.—The *Definite* and *Indefinite past tenses* are often used indiscriminately in familiar conversation, though the time be specified and entirely elapsed; as *je le vis*, or *je l'ai vu hier*.

443 In English the *Past Indefinite* is used to express an action continued to the present time, in which case the French use the *Present*; as

have you been long in England? * y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes en Angleterre
I have been waiting for two hours il y a deux heures que j'attends

* "*Avez-vous été longtemps en Angleterre?*" would imply that you are no longer in England.

The Pluperfect.

444 The *Pluperfect* expresses an action done before another action. It is used when the action is habitual or repeated, and is generally required after *dès que*, *aussitôt que* (as soon as), *quand* (when), &c. ; as

j'avais fini quand il entra
il sortait tous les jours, dès qu'il
avait dîné

I had done when he came in
he used to go out every day, as soon
as he had dined

445 The *Pluperfect* is also used after *si* "if"; as

si j'avais écrit, il serait venu

if I had written, he would have come

The Past Anterior.

446 The *Past Anterior* is used in speaking of a thing which occurred immediately before an event that is past, and is also generally required after *dès que*, *aussitôt que*, *quand*, &c. ; as

hier, j'eus fini avant lui
il sortit dès qu'il eut dîné

yesterday, I had done before him
he went out as soon as he had dined

The Future.

447 The *Future* simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come ; as

je dînerai avec vous demain
ma sœur viendra lundi prochain

I shall dine with you to-morrow
my sister will come next Monday

448 In English the *present* tense is often used for the *future* after *when*, *as soon as*, *after*, *as* ; this cannot be done in French, and the *future* is always required ; as

come when you like
he will go as soon as he has done

venez quand vous voudrez
il ira dès qu'il aura fini

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

449 The *Conditional* is used much in the same way as the corresponding mood in English ; as

il viendrait si vous l'invitiez
vous devriez lire tous les jours

he would come if you invited him
you should read every day

450 Neither the *conditional* nor the *future* can be used in French after *si*, when it means *suppose that* ; as

you will oblige me very much if you will do it
if you should come, bring your sister with you

vous m'obligerez beaucoup si vous le faites (not ferez)
si vous venez (not viendriez) amenez votre sœur avec vous

451 But when *si* expresses a state of *doubt*, and signifies *whether*, the future and conditional are used after it ; as

I do not know whether he will come *je ne sais s'il viendra*
I do not know whether he would come *je ne sais s'il viendrait*

Exercise.

Past Indefinite. I received this morning three letters from France, and I have sent¹ them to your father. What² did you learn³ to-day? I learned some scenes of Racine's tragedies. How long have you been in Russia? How many years has Queen Victoria reigned? Have you not seen him this week?

Pluperfect. I had breakfasted when your brother came (to ask⁴) me. We (used to go⁵) into his room as soon as we had finished our work. I used to go fishing as soon as I had breakfasted.

Past Anterior. Yesterday, when I had taken tea, I went to the concert. As soon as the rain was over⁶, we started⁷. When we had reached⁸ the top of the mountain, we saw the sun rising⁹ under our feet. As soon as I had crossed the bridge it was carried away.

Future. As soon as his education is finished, he will go to¹⁰ Italy to visit the Roman antiquities. My mother and sister will (wait for¹¹) us at the station. Shall I shut the door, or shall I leave¹² it open? When you are ready, we will go and (take a walk¹³) in the fields. After you have done your work¹⁴, you shall go (to bed¹⁵). Shall I light¹⁶ the candle? As you please.

Conditional. I would go with you, if you would wait for me (a few¹⁷) minutes. I would have lent¹⁸ him fifty pounds, if I had known¹⁹ he wanted²⁰ money. They should²¹ give him more liberty. Do you think that he would be more happy? If I would sell my horse, I could²² have forty pounds (for it²³). If you will study only two hours a²⁴ day, you will make good²⁵ progress. I do not know²⁶ if the weather will be fine to-morrow. I do not know whether²⁷ he would sell his house, if I (were to offer²⁸) him a good price (for it²⁹). Had I known³⁰ that you were here, I would have come sooner.

¹ envoyer ² Que ³ apprendre ⁴ demander ⁵ entrer ⁶ passée ⁷ partir ⁸ atteindre
⁹ se lever ¹⁰ en ¹¹ attendre ¹² laisser ¹³ se promener ¹⁴ ouvrage ¹⁵ se coucher
¹⁶ allumer ¹⁷ quelques ¹⁸ prêter ¹⁹ savoir ²⁰ avoir besoin de ²¹ devoir ²² pouvoir
²³ en avoir ²⁴ par ²⁵ grand ²⁶ savoir ²⁷ si ²⁸ offrir ²⁹ en ³⁰ savoir.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

452 The *Subjunctive Mood* is used after a verb or expression implying any *doubt, wish, regret, command, necessity, fear, ignorance, joy, sorrow, &c.*, or any affection of the mind; as

je doute qu'il vienne	<i>I doubt whether he will come</i>
je souhaite que tu réussisses	<i>I wish you may succeed</i>
je crains qu'il ne soit malade	<i>I fear he is ill</i>

453 However, some verbs, such as *croire, penser, espérer, s'attendre, se douter, s'imaginer, présumer, &c.*, although implying some degree of uncertainty, require the Indicative unless used interrogatively or negatively; as

je pense qu'il a raison	<i>I think he is right</i>
je crois qu'il viendra	<i>I think he will come</i>

454 The *Subjunctive* is required after verbs used *interrogatively or negatively*; as

pensez-vous qu'il ait raison?	<i>do you think he is right?</i>
je ne crois pas qu'il vienne	<i>I do not think that he will come</i>

455 However, when the speaker has no doubt of the fact mentioned in the question, or when the interrogation is only an oratorical turn, which affirms more strongly, the Indicative is used; as

vous ai-je dit que mon père *est* arrivé ?
oubliez-vous donc qu'il *est* votre père ?

456 The *Subjunctive* is used after *Impersonal* verbs, when they imply something uncertain, or when they are used interrogatively or negatively, or preceded by *si*, "if"; as

il faut que j'aille à la ville	<i>I must go to town</i>
il convient que vous le fassiez	<i>it is right that you should do it</i>
est-il vrai qu'il soit mort?	<i>is it true that he is dead?</i>
il ne paraît pas qu'il soit mieux	<i>it does not seem that he is better</i>
s'il vous semble que cela soit	<i>if it appears to you that it is so</i>

457 But the *Indicative* is used after *Impersonal* verbs, when they express something certain, or likely; as

il est certain que vous avez tort
il paraît que vous vous êtes trompé
il me semble que votre présence me fait du bien

458 The *Subjunctive* is used after the relative pronouns, *qui, que, dont, lequel, laquelle, où*, to express something uncertain, and when they are preceded by an adjective, in the superlative degree, or by the words *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier*, when the idea is not *positive*; also after the words *pas un, aucun, rien, peu*, preceded by *il n'y a, il y a; il est, il n'est*; as

je cherche quelqu'un qui *puisse*
parler français
son père est le plus savant homme
que je *connaisse*
c'est le *seul* homme qui *ait* survécu
au naufrage
Néron est le premier empereur qui
ait persécuté l'Eglise
il n'y a rien qui *rafraichisse* le
sang comme une bonne action

*I am seeking some one who may be
able to speak French
his father is the most learned man
I know
he is the only man that has sur-
vived the shipwreck
Nero is the first emperor who per-
secuted the Church
there is nothing that refreshes the
blood so much as a good action*

459 But the *Indicative* is used after the above-men-
tioned expressions when the assertion is *positive* or *absolute*;
as

je cherche quelqu'un qui *peut* m'aider
c'est le moindre secret qu'il *pouvait* nous apprendre.—RACINE.
souviens-toi que je suis le seul qui t'a déplu.—FÉNELON.
le premier qui *fut* roi, fut un soldat heureux.—VOLTAIRE.

460 The *Subjunctive* is required after the words *qui que, quelque, quel que, qui que ce soit qui, quoi que, si . . . que*; as

quelque riche que vous *soyez*
quoi que vous *fassiez*, vous perdrez
si savants qu'ils *soient*

*however rich you may be
whatever you may do, you will lose
however learned they may be*

461 The *Subjunctive* is also used after some conjunctions mentioned at page 125, such as *afin que, à moins que, de peur que, &c. (223)*; as

prêtez-moi votre livre, *afin que* je
le *lise*
je le verrai avant qu'il *parte*

*lend me your book, that I may
read it
I shall see him before he sets out*

462 Some conjunctions, such as *de façon que, de sorte que, de manière que, si ce n'est que, sinon que, &c.*, require, sometimes the *Subjunctive*, and sometimes the *Indicative*; they require the subjunctive when joined to a verb ex-

pressing *doubt*; *wish*, *uncertainty*, &c.; and the indicative when the verb expresses *affirmation*, *certainty*; as

parlez de manière que l'on vous <i>entende</i>	<i>speak so that people may hear you</i>
il a parlé de manière qu'on l'a <i>entendu</i>	<i>he spoke so as to be heard by everybody</i>

463 The conjunction *que*, used in the second part of a sentence to avoid a repetition of *si*, governs the *Subjunctive*; and likewise *quæ* used instead of *à moins que*, *avant que*, *afin que*, &c.; as

si vous venez, et qu'il fasse beau temps, nous irons pêcher	<i>if you come, and if it is fine, we will go a fishing</i>
je ne partirai pas (avant) que je ne vous aie vu	<i>I will not set out before I have seen you</i>
il ne le fera pas (à moins) que vous ne veniez avec lui	<i>he will not do it, unless you come with him</i>

464 Sometimes the governing verb or conjunction is understood, and then the subject generally follows the verb; as

*veuille le ciel entendre mes vœux !
dussiez-vous en perdre la vie, il le faut !
à Dieu ne plaise que j'aie une pareille pensée !*

Concord between the Tenses of the Subjunctive and the preceding Verb.

As the Subjunctive always depends upon a verb expressed or understood, its tenses are regulated by the preceding verb. The following table will show the concord between the two verbs :—

je doute	}	que vous étudiiez
je douterai		
je doute	}	que vous ayez étudié
je douterai		
je doute	}	que vous étudiassiez
je douterai		
je doute	}	que vous eussiez étudié
je douterai		
je doutais	}	que vous étudiassiez
je doutai		
j'ai douté		
j'avais douté		
je douterais		
j'aurais douté		

je doutais	
je doutai	
j'ai douté	} que vous eussiez étudié
j'avais douté	
je douterais	
j'aurais douté	

465 RULE I.—When the first verb is in the *present* or *future* of the indicative, the second must be put in the *present* of the subjunctive to express a present or future time, and in the *imperfect* or *preterit* to express a time past; as

- 1 { je doute que vous puissiez partir demain
je ne croirai pas qu'il vienne ce soir
- 2 { je ne crois pas qu'alors il eût raison sur ce point
je ne dirai pas que vous pussiez le faire alors
- 3 { je doute qu'il ait reçu votre lettre
je ne croirai jamais qu'il ait fait une telle action

466 RULE II.—After the *present* and *future* of the indicative, the *imperfect* of the subjunctive is used instead of the present, and the *pluperfect* instead of the past, when some conditional expression* follows the verb in the subjunctive; as

- 1 { je doute } que vous étudiassiez, si l'on ne vous y contraignait
je douterai
- 2 { je doute } que vous eussiez étudié, si l'on ne vous y eût contraint
je douterai

467 RULE III.—After the *imperfect*, the *past definite*, the *conditional* and their compounds, the *imperfect* of the subjunctive is used to express a present or future time: and the *pluperfect* to express a past time; as

je ne savais pas que vous demeurassiez ici
je ne croyais pas que vous vinssiez si tôt
j'ignorais que vous eussiez obtenu cette place
nous n'avions pas cru qu'il eût si bien réussi

* *Si* is not the only conditional expression used with the imperfect or pluperfect; we sometimes use *sans* followed by a noun or a pronoun, as *sans vous, sans lui, sans cela, sans votre aide, &c.*

Exceptions to Rule XII., No. 467.

468 After the *past indefinite* followed by *afin que, de peur que, quoique, &c.*, the second verb must be put in the present of the subjunctive to express a present or future state or action ; as

il m'a trahi, quoiqu'il soit mon ami
Dieu nous a créés afin que nous le servions

469 After the *past indefinite* it is customary to use the *past* instead of the imperfect of the subjunctive ; as

Je n'ai jamais connu personne qui ait tant travaillé

Read, translate, and write.

Mon père désire que j'apprenne la musique et le dessin. Je m'étonne qu'il ne voie pas le danger où il est. N'attendez pas que je vous réponde pour venir. J'ignorais que vous fussiez de retour. Pensez-vous qu'il dise cela pour me contrarier ? Je ne pense pas qu'il le dise pour cela. Croyez-vous que votre sœur puisse marcher si loin ? Il est possible qu'elle soit fatiguée avant d'arriver. Est-il vrai que l'Impératrice Eugénie soit à Londres, et qu'elle ait pris un fiacre pour se rendre à son hôtel ? Il faut que je parte par le train de sept heures du matin. L'Evangile est le plus beau présent que Dieu ait fait aux hommes. Le meilleur usage qu'on puisse faire de son esprit est de s'en défier. Athalie est une des dernières tragédies que Racine ait écrites. Quelques talents que vous ayez, soyez toujours modeste. Qui que ce soit qui vienne, ne le recevez pas. Le lion n'attaque jamais l'homme, à moins qu'il ne soit provoqué. Comportez-vous de manière que chacun soit content de vous. Il s'est comporté de manière que chacun a été content de lui. Si vous veniez, et que vous pussiez rester deux ou trois jours avec nous, nous irions voir le lac de Genève. Je voudrais que vous vinsiez la semaine prochaine. Je ne partirai pas que je n'en aie reçu l'ordre. Ils lui conseillèrent de partir afin que sa présence contribuât à rétablir l'ordre. Les plus modérés demandèrent qu'on se saisît de lui, et qu'il fût mis dans les prisons du château. Nous ne savions pas qu'il eût été arrêté. Puissez-vous réussir dans vos projets !

Exercise on the Subjunctive.

He is sorry that you have left¹ him. Are you not afraid² that your father will scold³ you (for going⁴) a hunting⁵ without him ? I doubt

¹ quitter ² craindre ³ ne gronder ⁴ d'aller ⁵ à la chasse

whether⁶ you can⁷ finish before next month. My mother wishes⁸ me to learn⁹ music and dancing¹⁰. Do you think that he will write soon¹¹? I do not like you to (*que vous*) (go out¹²) alone so¹³ late in the evening. I did not know¹⁴ that it was so late. Do you think it is necessary to take somebody¹⁵ with me? Do you forget that her anger can ruin you? Have I told you that my sister is ill? It is possible that you may obtain¹⁶ it. It does not seem that you know¹⁷ it. You must¹⁸ make him (an apology¹⁹) before to-morrow. There is no state²⁰ which cannot²¹ be totally ruined by civil wars. It is certain that a nation cannot be happy under a tyrannical government. It is the only thing that can console me. London²² is the largest²³ town I know²⁴. Give me the best cloth²⁵ you have in your shop²⁶. Napoleon is one of the greatest captains that ever²⁷ was. There are few²⁸ men who can support adversity with courage. Choose a retreat where you may be quiet and happy. Do you know²⁹ (any one³⁰) here who can teach³¹ Italian? He must know³² the language well.

⁶ que ⁷ pouvoir ⁸ désirer que ⁹ apprendre ¹⁰ danse f. ¹¹ sortir ¹² si ¹³ savoir
¹⁴ quelqu'un ¹⁵ obtenir ¹⁶ savoir ¹⁷ Il faut que ¹⁸ des excuses ¹⁹ état m. ²⁰ ne pouvoir
²¹ Londres ²² grand ²³ connaître ²⁴ drap m. ²⁵ boutique ²⁶ jamais ²⁷ peu
 de ²⁸ connaître ²⁹ quelqu'un ³⁰ enseigner ³¹ savoir

Whatever difficulties you may have to¹ surmount, I sincerely hope you will persevere in your endeavours². Whatever you may say, they will not believe³ you. Whatever you do⁴, do it well. Whoever may come after five o'clock, do not receive him. He has written to me (in order that⁵) I may depart to-morrow. Although he has paid⁶ the principal, he has still to pay the interest at five per⁷ cent. I hope I shall speak German⁸ before long⁹, though I am convinced¹⁰ that it¹¹ is a very difficult language¹². Employ¹³ all the days of your youth (so that¹⁴) you may fulfil¹⁵ honourably all the duties¹⁶ of your station¹⁷. Your son (conducts himself¹⁸) in¹⁹ (such a manner²⁰) that he gains general esteem. Behave in a manner that you may deserve the esteem of all (good men²¹). If you are industrious²², and²³ do your exercise well, you shall have a holiday²⁴. Before I form a plan, I shall wait²⁵ till²⁶ things have a more tranquil appearance. We will not begin unless²⁷ you are with us.

¹ à ² efforts ³ croire ⁴ faire ⁵ afin que ⁶ payer ⁷ pour ⁸ allemand ⁹ long-temps ¹⁰ convaincre ¹¹ ce ¹² langue f. ¹³ employer ¹⁴ de manière que ¹⁵ remplir
¹⁶ devoir ¹⁷ état ¹⁸ se conduire ¹⁹ de ²⁰ manière ²¹ gens de bien ²² diligent ²³ et
 que vous ²⁴ congé m. ²⁵ attendre ²⁶ que ²⁷ que

I do not believe¹ that my friends will come this evening. Do you hope² they will make peace this year? I doubt whether³ they will do it in⁴ one day. Do you think they have received the money that I sent⁵ to them last week? I do not think that you would have obtained that appointment⁶ (had you not⁷) persevered in your application. I doubt whether he would have come, if he had known⁸ you were here. I do not believe that you could have succeeded without his recommendation. We did not know that you lived⁹ so near¹⁰ us. The Apostles¹¹

¹ croire ² espérer que ³ que ⁴ en ⁵ envoyer ⁶ place ⁷ si vous n'aviez ⁸ savoir
⁹ demeurer ¹⁰ près de ¹¹ Apôtres

received the gift¹² of tongues, that¹³ they might¹⁴ preach the Gospel¹⁵ to all the nations of the earth. We (were not aware¹⁶) that the gallant¹⁷ general had been wounded¹⁸ in that engagement. I had tired¹⁹ your brother, although he is stronger than I am. I have written²⁰ to my agent, in order that he may be here to-morrow morning.

¹² don m. ¹³ afin que ¹⁴ pouvoir ¹⁵ évangile ¹⁶ ignorer ¹⁷ brave ¹⁸ blessés
¹⁹ fatiguer ²⁰ écrire.

SYNTAX OF PARTICIPLES.

The Present Participle and the Verbal Adjective.

470 The Present Participle always ends in *ant*, and is invariable; as

un homme <i>lisant</i> un livre	<i>a man reading a book</i>
une mère <i>aimant</i> son enfant	<i>a mother loving her child</i>
des enfants <i>étudiant</i> leurs leçons	<i>children learning their lessons</i>

471 The Present Participle must not be mistaken for the *Verbal Adjective*, ending also in *ant*. The latter, like any other adjective, agrees in gender and number with the word which it qualifies; as

une mère <i>aimante</i>	<i>a loving mother</i>
des enfants <i>obéissants</i>	<i>obedient children</i>
des dames <i>obligeantes</i>	<i>obliging ladies</i>

472 The Present Participle, generally preceded by *en* (sometimes understood), expresses an action, and is almost always followed by a direct object; it may be replaced by another tense of the verb with *qui* before it; as

ils marchaient à la mort *en chantant* des hymnes
un homme *lisant* (or *qui lit*) un livre
une mère *aimant* (or *qui aime*) son enfant

473 The *Verbal Adjective* denotes the *state* or *manner of being* of the word to which it relates, and is never followed by any object whatever; it may be construed by one of the tenses of *être* preceded by *qui*; as

une mère *aimante* (or *qui est aimante*)
des enfants *obéissants* (or *qui sont obéissants*)

474 OBSERVE.—The participle present can never be pre-

ceded in French by any other preposition than *en*; the present of the infinitive must be used after any other, such as *après, avant, sans, pour, par, de*; whereas the corresponding English prepositions, *after, before, without, for, by, of*, require the present participle; as

<i>après avoir lu</i>	<i>after having read</i>
<i>avant de parler</i>	<i>before speaking</i>
<i>sans hésiter</i>	<i>without hesitating</i>
<i>pour avoir désobéi</i>	<i>for having disobeyed</i>
<i>je suis fatigué de lire</i>	<i>I am tired of reading</i>

475 The English *present participle* is often rendered in French by some personal mood preceded by *que, de ce que, à ce que, &c.*; as

<i>I am sorry at your not having succeeded</i>	<i>je suis fâché que vous n'ayez pas réussi</i>

476 The English *present participle* is often rendered in French by some tense of the indicative; as

<i>I see him coming</i>	<i>je le vois qui vient</i>
<i>I saw two men running</i>	<i>je vis deux hommes qui couraient</i>

477 The English *present participle* is sometimes expressed in French by the *past participle*, and sometimes by the *noun* corresponding to the participle; as

<i>the king was leaning on his sword</i>	<i>le roi était appuyé sur son épée</i>
<i>the ringing of the bells</i>	<i>le son des cloches</i>

The Past Participle.

478 GENERAL RULE.—The *Past Participle*, used without any auxiliary, agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number with the word to which it relates; as

<i>un homme instruit</i>	<i>a learned man</i>
<i>une femme instruite</i>	<i>a learned woman</i>
<i>une colonne brisée</i>	<i>a broken column</i>
<i>des colonnes brisées</i>	<i>broken columns</i>

479 The *Past Participle*, used with the auxiliary verb *être*, agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb; as

<i>le roi est arrivé</i>	<i>the king has arrived</i>
<i>la reine est arrivée</i>	<i>the queen has arrived</i>
<i>ma lettre est écrite</i>	<i>my letter is written</i>
<i>mes lettres sont écrites</i>	<i>my letters are written</i>

Past Participle used with AVOIR.

480 The *Past Participle*, used with the verb *avoir*, agrees in gender and number with its *direct object*, when that object precedes it; as

la lettre que j'ai écrite	<i>the letter which I have written</i>
les livres qu'il a lus	<i>the books which he has read</i>
il les a rendus	<i>he has returned them</i>
madame, il vous a trompée	<i>madam, he has deceived you</i>

481 But the *Past Participle* never agrees with the *subject*, nor does it agree with the *direct object*, when that object comes after it, or when there is no such object at all; as

ma sœur a écrit une lettre	<i>my sister has written a letter</i>
sa sœur a chanté au concert	<i>his sister sang at the concert</i>

482 REMARK.—It will be observed from the preceding rule, that the past participle of all neuter verbs conjugated with *avoir* are always invariable, such verbs having no *direct objects* :—

les dix ans QU'il a VÉCU, il *LES* a VÉCU *heureux*
les deux heures QUE j'ai DORMI m'ont fait du bien
 (c'est-à-dire, pendant lesquelles, &c.)

483 The *Past Participle* of *reflective* verbs agrees with its *direct object*, when the object precedes it; and it remains invariable when the *direct object* comes after, or when there is no such object :—

With Agreement.

les lettres qu'ils se sont écrites
the letters which they have written
to one another

ils se sont blâmés
they blamed each other

Without Agreement.

ils se sont écrit plusieurs lettres
they have written several letters to
one another

ils se sont succédé
they succeeded each other

Remarks on the Use of some Participles.

484 The *Past Participle* of *impersonal* verbs is always invariable; as

les chaleurs qu'il a fait	<i>the heat which we had</i>
la misère qu'il y a eu	<i>the distress which there has been</i>

485 The Past Participle between two *que* is also invariable; as

les embarras *que j'ai su que vous aviez* *the embarrassments that I knew you had*

486 When the Past Participle is immediately followed by an infinitive, the noun which precedes may be the object of the participle or of the infinitive: in the first case, the participle agrees with the object; in the second, it remains invariable:—

With Agreement.

la femme *que j'ai entendue chanter*
the woman whom I heard sing
 I heard—whom? **LA FEMME**
chanter

Without Agreement.

la romance *que j'ai entendu chanter*
the song I heard sing
 I heard—what? **CHANTER la**
romance

487 The participle *fait*, immediately followed by an infinitive, is always invariable, forming, as it were, but one single verbal expression; as

la maison *que j'ai fait bâtir*
elle s'est fait mourir

the house which I have had built
she caused her own death

488 The Past Participle used with *en* is invariable whenever *en* is not preceded by a personal or relative pronoun acting as a direct object; as

j'aime les fleurs, et j'en ai cueilli
il m'a demandé des livres, et je lui
en ai donné

I like flowers, and I gathered some
he asked me for books, and I gave
him some

But we say with agreement:—

cet homme m'a obligé; les services *que j'en ai reçus* sont nombreux

489 When the verb *avoir*, joined to the Past Participle, is preceded by *l'*, this participle is invariable if *l'* has reference to an adjective and stands for *cela*; as

cette langue est plus facile que je ne l'avais cru
that language is easier than I thought

But if *l'* has reference to a noun or to a pronoun, the participle agrees; as

cette ville est telle qu'on l'a représentée
sa maison est telle que nous l'avons vue il y a vingt ans

490 When a Past Participle is preceded by two substantives united by the preposition *de*, it agrees with the noun which most attracts attention; as

une foule de gens s'est présentée
une foule de jeunes gens se sont
enrôlés dans la milice

a crowd of people presented itself
a crowd of young men have en-
listed in the militia

491 *Le peu* with a Past Participle.—*Le peu* signifies *une petite quantité*, and signifies also *le manque*, the want, the lack of.

When *le peu* signifies *une petite quantité*, the participle agrees with the noun that follows it; when it means *le manque*, "the want of," it is with *le peu* that the participle agrees, and is therefore always put in the masculine singular; as

il a profité du peu de leçons qu'il
a reçues
le peu d'instruction qu'il a eu le
découragement

he has profited by the few lessons
he received
the little instruction he had dis-
couraged him

Read, translate, and write.

Les personnes aimant tout le monde, n'aiment ordinairement personne. Les Maures descendant de leurs montagnes parcouraient et pillaient l'Afrique. Les personnes aimantes ont plus de jouissances que les autres. Des aigles, entraînés par le courant d'air, descendent en tournoyant au fond du gouffre. Entourés de toutes parts, les Russes se crurent perdus, et furent forcés de se rendre. Les montagnes sont couvertes de troupeaux qui fournissent des laines fines recherchées de toutes les nations connues. L'ardeur de l'été y est toujours tempérée par des zéphirs rafraîchissants. Chateaubriand et Mme de Staël ont enrichi notre littérature d'une foule d'ouvrages remarquables. Les meilleures harangues sont celles que le cœur a dictées. Si Dieu nous a distingués des autres animaux, c'est surtout par le don de la parole. Bossuet a créé une langue que lui seul a parlée. Plus de soixante princes se sont succédé sur le trône de France. Ces deux corps de troupes se sont rencontrés et se sont battus. Voici les batailles qu'ils se sont livrées.

L'imprimerie est une des inventions les plus utiles qu'il y ait jamais eu. Que de temps, que de réflexions n'a-t-il pas fallu pour connaître les besoins et les ressources de la nature! Les personnes que vous avez entendues chanter, appartiennent à l'opéra. Ces arbres que j'ai vu planter, ont aujourd'hui plus de trente ans. Les bontés que vous m'avez fait sentir me donnent le droit de me

servir d'un nom si tendre. Les généraux de l'empereur s'étaient fait battre sur les frontières. La chose était plus sérieuse que nous ne l'avions pensée d'abord. Le peu de vivres qu'on a conservés a suffi pour sauver la population de la ville

Exercise on the Participles.

Present Participle. (470 to 477.) Brutus saw his two sons expiring¹ by his order. Those brave soldiers, forgetting² the danger, rushed³ on their enemies. That statue represents the queen holding⁴ the sceptre in her hand. The loadstone⁵ has surprising effects. A cooling⁶ breeze calmed the burning heat of the ground. The ruling⁷ passion of Cæsar was ambition. Obedient children are loved by⁸ their parents. I will give you a convincing⁹ proof of the contrary. That young lady, in obliging her friends, has merited their esteem. Nobody can¹⁰ be happy without practising virtue. Peter¹¹ the Great built¹² a fortress on an island at the mouth¹³ of the Neva¹⁴, for protecting his conquests, and opening a new channel of commerce. The artist conceived the design¹⁵ of placing the statue on a rock (instead of¹⁶) a pedestal. I am surprised at his having obtained that situation. I attribute his success to his being the nephew of a nobleman. We could¹⁷ see the horses rearing¹⁸, (pawing¹⁹ the sand), and shaking²⁰ their manes²¹ with fury. I hear her crying²² in her room. I saw a man (hiding himself²³) behind the door. I found my servant sleeping²⁴ under a large oak-tree. We heard the bursting²⁵ of the shells, and the whistling²⁶ of the balls²⁷ on²⁸ all sides. Do you perceive the sailors rowing²⁹ towards³⁰ the coast?

¹ expirer ² oublier ³ s'élançer ⁴ tenir ⁵ aimant ⁶ rafraîchir ⁷ dominer ⁸ des
⁹ convaincre ¹⁰ ne pouvoir ¹¹ Pierre ¹² bâtir ¹³ embouchure ¹⁴ Néva f. ¹⁵ des-
sein m. ¹⁶ au lieu de ¹⁷ pouvoir ¹⁸ se cabrer ¹⁹ plaquer ²⁰ secouer ²¹ crinière
²² pleurer ²³ se cacher ²⁴ endormir ²⁵ explosion ²⁶ siffler ²⁷ boulet m. ²⁸ de
²⁹ ramer ³⁰ vers.

Past Participle. (478 to 479.) Alms¹ given without ostension acquire² a new merit. A noble but confused thought³ is a diamond covered with⁴ dust. These broken⁵ columns ornamented⁶ majestic temples; these crumbled⁷ galleries indicated the public squares⁸. The two ladies appeared astonished to see me. The ambassador has arrived from Spain⁹ this morning. Your mother is afflicted. Are your sisters very busy¹⁰? France is bounded¹¹ (on the¹²) south by the Mediterranean¹³ Sea and Spain. The high mountains of Switzerland¹⁴ are always covered with¹⁵ snow and ice. My sisters were surprised to see you at the queen's ball¹⁶. The king Harold and his two brothers were killed at the battle of Hastings. The town of Moscow was taken¹⁷ by the French, and burnt¹⁸ by the Russians¹⁹ in²⁰ 1812. Were not the Russians beaten²¹ at the battle of the Alma? Yes; and they were also defeated²² at Inkerman.

¹ aumônes f. pl. ² acquérir ³ pensée f. ⁴ de ⁵ briser ⁶ orner ⁷ écrouler ⁸ place f.
⁹ Espagne ¹⁰ occuper ¹¹ borner ¹² au ¹³ Méditerranée ¹⁴ Suisse f. ¹⁵ de ¹⁶ bal m.
¹⁷ prendre ¹⁸ brûler ¹⁹ Russes ²⁰ en ²¹ battre ²² défaire.

(480 to 483.) The faults¹ he has committed² are pardonable. The house which I have bought is new³. Those ladies are gone⁴; I have seen them this morning in their carriage. Do you recollect⁵ all the towns which we have visited? • Yes; I have written their names in my pocket-book⁶. I am very thankful⁷ (for the⁸) services which you have rendered to me. Have you seen the ring⁹ that I have given to my cousin for her birthday¹⁰? Yes, I have seen it. I have sold my two horses and my carriage. Have you sold them dear? I have sold them for eighty pounds. I have received a letter from my son who is in India¹¹. My aunt has given a beautiful dress¹² to my sister. Has she given her a watch? Not yet.

Your daughters have made great progress (in French¹³) this year. Have they read the History of the English Revolution, by Guizot? Yes, they have read it. Have they finished their writing¹⁴? Yes; but they have not learnt¹⁵ their lesson. What lessons have you learnt? Why have you punished this little girl? I have punished her because she deserved it. The promises which they (made to each other¹⁶) are not sincere. Your sister and mine met¹⁷ at¹⁸ my uncle's house, but did not (speak to each other¹⁹). We (wrote to each other²⁰), but we did not (see each other²¹). Mme de Staël has rendered herself famous²² by her writings. Gentlemen, have you washed²³ your hands? Yes, sir; we have washed them in your bedroom.

¹ fautes *f.* ² commettre ³ neuf ⁴ partir ⁵ se rappeler ⁶ porte-feuille ⁷ reconnaître ⁸ des ⁹ bague *f.* ¹⁰ jour de naissance *m.* ¹¹ Inde ¹² robe *f.* ¹³ dans le Français ¹⁴ écriture ¹⁵ apprendre ¹⁶ se faire ¹⁷ se rencontrer ¹⁸ chez ¹⁹ se parler ²⁰ s'écrire ²¹ se voir ²² célèbre ²³ se laver.

(484 to 491.) The rain which we have had has spoiled¹ all the flowers. What heat we have had lately! What advantages have resulted² (from it³)? Nobody knows⁴ the patience which (has been necessary for me⁵) in order to succeed⁶ in my undertaking. They have obtained⁷ the success which you had foretold⁸ they would obtain. Your servant⁹ has arrived at the hour which you had promised he would arrive. The satisfaction which I had foreseen that his children would give him has been realised¹⁰. Are your neighbours gone? No; for I have heard¹¹ them talk¹² this morning. The lady whom we have seen passing (on horseback¹³) is a very good rider¹⁴. What do you think of the song¹⁵ which we have heard sung? His two sisters are very good musicians; have you heard them sing? The actress whom you have heard applauded this evening is very young. I will send¹⁶ you the music which he has forgotten to bring.

I have bought the two houses which he (has built¹⁷). The books I ordered¹⁸ from Paris cost me (a great deal¹⁹) of money. The dress which she (has had made²⁰) is too short. Your son asked me for some pens; I have given him some. Your gardener said that you wanted some rose-trees; I have sent²¹ you a dozen (of them *en*). The result of his undertaking has not answered²² the opinion which he had conceived of it. This house is much larger than I had thought²³. That

¹ gâter ² résulter ³ en a-t-il ⁴ savoir ⁵ me falloir ⁶ réussir ⁷ obtenir ⁸ prédire ⁹ domestique ¹⁰ réaliser ¹¹ entendre ¹² causer ¹³ à cheval ¹⁴ écuyère *f.* ¹⁵ romance *f.* ¹⁶ envoyer ¹⁷ faire bâtir ¹⁸ faire venir ¹⁹ beaucoup ²⁰ faire faire ²¹ envoyer ²² répondre à ²³ croire

actress, such as you have seen her, is more than fifty years old. A flock of sheep was destroyed²⁴ by fire. A great number of women and children have been massacred. The little²⁵ (the lack of) instruction my brother has had, makes him fall²⁶ into many²⁷ errors. (The few²⁸) men he had brought²⁹ with him were killed at their posts. The slight³⁰ affection you have shown him has encouraged him.

²⁴ détruire ²⁵ Le peu de ²⁶ tomber ²⁷ bien des ²⁸ Le peu de ²⁹ amener ³⁰ La peu de.

SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

492 Adverbs (page 119) are usually placed after the verbs in the simple tenses, and after the auxiliary in the compound tenses ; as

il parle *souvent* de vous
je ne l'ai *jamais* vu

he often speaks of you
I have never seen him

Proper Use of Negative Expressions.

493 The two principal negations are **non** and **ne**, the latter completed by **pas**, **point**, &c. **Non** is used without a verb ; as

le courrier est-il arrivé ?—*non*
je crains ses faveurs, et *non* sa colère

494 **Ne** always precedes the verb or its auxiliary, and **pas** or **point**, &c., comes after it ; as

je n'ose — je NE crois PAS — je n'ai POINT cru

495 Besides **pas** and **point**, the negation **ne** is completed by the words *jamais*, *plus*, *rien*, *guère*, *personne*, *nul*, *aucun*, *nullement*, *aucunement*, *ni* (173) ; as

je *ne* chante *plus*
il *ne* fait *rien*
il *ne* vit *personne*

I sing no more
he does nothing
he saw nobody

DISTINCTION BETWEEN **pas** AND **point**.

496 **Point** is more exclusive than **pas**. The first denies absolutely, and signifies *not at all* ; the second is less posi-

tive. So that *point* may be said of something permanent and habitual, and *pas* of something accidental; as

il ne travaille <i>point</i>	•	he never works (at all)
il ne travaille <i>pas</i>		he does not work (now)

497 In an interrogative sentence, *point* is used when we doubt of the thing in question, and *pas* when we are certain of it; as

ne vous l'ai-je <i>point</i> dit?	(je croyais l'avoir dit)
ne vous l'ai-je <i>pas</i> dit?	(que cela arriverait)

OMISSION OF *pas* AND *point*.

498 *Pas* and *point*, which usually follow *ne*, are omitted when there is in the proposition an expression bearing a negative sense; such as *jamais*, *guère*, *nul*, *nullement*, *aucun*, *rien*, *personne*, *ni* repeated, *ne....que*, meaning *seulement*; and also before such expressions as *de ma vie*, *âme qui vive*, *qu'il que ce soit*, *goutte*, *mot*, &c.; as

elle ne sort <i>jamais</i> le soir	she never goes out in the evening
il ne sait ni lire ni écrire	he can neither read nor write
je ne sais <i>que</i> deux fables	I only know two fables
je ne le verrai <i>de ma vie</i>	I shall never see him again
je ne connais <i>âme qui vive</i>	I do not know a single soul
je n'y vois <i>goutte</i>	I do not see at all

499 *Pas* and *point* are generally omitted, for the sake of elegance, with the verbs *oser*, *pouvoir*, *cesser*, and *savoir* used in the sense of *pouvoir*; as

je n'ose le faire	I dare not do it
je ne saurais vous le dire	I cannot tell you

NOTE.—Je n'ose *pas*, je ne puis *pas*, &c., would be more emphatic.

500 *Pas* and *point* are omitted after *il y a* and *depuis que*, if the verb is in a compound tense; as

il y a six mois que je ne l'ai vu	I have not seen him for six months
depuis que je ne lui ai parlé	since I spoke to him

501 But *pas* or *point* must be used when the verb is in a simple tense; as

il y a six mois que nous ne nous voyons <i>pas</i>
depuis que je ne lui parle <i>plus</i>

502 *Ne* is used without *pas* or *point*, after the conjunction *à moins que*, *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, also after the verbs *empêcher*, *prendre garde* ;* as

à moins que vous ne lui parliez	unless you speak to him
partons, de peur qu'il ne pleuve	let us go, for fear it should rain
la pluie empêcha qu'on ne partît	the rain prevented our setting off
prenez garde qu'on ne vous voie	take care that nobody sees you

503 *Ne* is used without *pas* or *point*, after *plus*, *mieux*, *moins*, *meilleur*, *autre*, *autrement*, and after the verbs *craindre*, *avoir peur*, *trembler*, *appréhender*, used affirmatively ; as

il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle	he writes better than he speaks
il parle autrement qu'il n'agit	he speaks otherwise than he acts
je crains qu'il ne vienne	I fear he will come

504 But *ne* is omitted when the verb of the preceding period is accompanied by a negation ; as

il ne parle *pas* autrement qu'il agit ;—je ne crains *pas* qu'il vienne

505 After *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur*, *trembler*, we use *ne....pas*, when the accomplishment of the action expressed by the subsequent verb is desired, and *ne* only when the accomplishment is not desired ; as

je crains qu'il ne réussisse <i>pas</i>	I fear that he will not succeed
je crains qu'il ne réussisse	I fear that he will succeed

506 The verbs *douter*, *nier*, *contester*, *désespérer*, *disconvenir*, are followed by *ne* only, when they are accompanied by a negation, or used interrogatively ; as

je ne doute pas que cela ne soit	I do not doubt that it is so
doutez-vous qu'il ne le ruine ?	do you doubt that he will ruin him ?

507 But *ne* is omitted if the verbs *douter*, *nier*, &c., are affirmative, or if we speak of a thing quite certain ; as *je nie, je doute que cela soit ; personne ne nie qu'il y ait un Dieu.*

* When *prendre garde* means "to notice," "to observe," the indicative is used with *ne...pas* or *ne...point* ; as, *Prenez garde que l'auteur ne dit pas ce que vous pensez, Notice that the author does not say what you think.*

508 In reply to a question, *pas* is frequently used without *ne*, the *ne* and the verb being understood; as

comment allez-vous ?—*pas* très-bien
how are you ?—not very well

509 The use or the omission of *pas* and *point* alters sometimes the sense of a sentence; as

je crains qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne	<i>I fear lest he should come</i>
je crains qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne <i>pas</i>	<i>I fear lest he should not come</i>

REMARKS ON SOME ADVERBS

Plus—davantage — more.

510 *Plus* and *davantage* must not be used indiscriminately: *plus* is followed by *de* or *que*; *davantage* is used alone, and at the end of a sentence; as

il a <i>plus de</i> fortune que moi	<i>he has more fortune than I</i>
je suis <i>plus</i> heureux que lui	<i>I am happier than he</i>
vous avez beaucoup d'argent,	<i>you have much money, but he has</i>
mais il en a <i>davantage</i>	<i>more</i>

REMARK.—*Davantage* may be followed by an object which belongs to a preceding word; as *il est content de vous, mais il l'est bien DAVANTAGE DE votre frère*; i.e. CONTENT DE votre frère.

Si, aussi — tant, autant.

511 In a comparison, *aussi*, *autant*, are used in sentences both affirmative and negative, and *si*, *tant*, only in negative phrases; as

il est <i>aussi</i> riche que vous	<i>he is as rich as you</i>
il n'est pas <i>si</i> (or <i>aussi</i>) sot que lui	<i>he is not so silly as he</i>
j'ai <i>autant</i> de livres que lui	<i>I have as many books as he</i>
voire frère n'a pas <i>tant</i> (or <i>autant</i>)	<i>your brother has not so many</i>
de livres que moi	<i>books as I</i>

Si and *aussi* are used with adjectives and adverbs; *si* *modeste*, *aussi* *éloquemment*; *tant* and *autant* are applied to substantives and verbs; *tant de gloire*, *autant estimé que chéri*, or *estimé autant que chéri*.

Plus tôt—sooner. Plutôt—rather.

512 *Plus tôt*, in two words, refers to time, and signifies *plus vite*, sooner; *plutôt*, in one word, denotes preference and signifies *rather*; as

il est arrivé <i>plus tôt</i> que vous	<i>he has arrived sooner than you</i>
<i>plutôt</i> mourir que de se rendre	<i>rather die than surrender</i>

Tout à coup—tout d'un coup.

513 *Tout à coup* signifie *soudainement*, suddenly; *tout d'un coup* signifie *tout en une fois*, all at once; as

sa maison est tombée <i>tout à coup</i>	<i>his house fell down suddenly</i>
il devint pauvre <i>tout d'un coup</i>	<i>he became poor all at once</i>

Read, translate, and write.

Les bienheureux jouiront *toujours* de la vue de Dieu. Le dogme de l'immortalité de l'âme s'est *toujours* maintenu sur la terre. Contre la médisance il n'est *point* de rempart. Titus ne passait *aucun* jour sans faire une bonne action. Je ne connais *qui que ce soit* dans la ville. Il y avait dix ans que je n'avais vu ma mère. Parlez plus bas, de peur qu'on ne vous entende. Cette langue est *plus* difficile que je ne le croyais. Paris est *plus* peuplé que St. Pétersbourg, mais Londres l'est encore *bien davantage*. La ville de Londres est *beaucoup plus* grande que celle de Paris, mais elle n'est pas *aussi* belle. Êtes-vous *toujours aussi* occupé que vous l'étiez autrefois? *Tout à coup* une noire tempête enveloppa le ciel et irrita toutes les ondes de la mer. Cet homme a fait sa fortune *tout d'un coup*. Nous vous attendions *plus tôt, Plutôt* souffrir que mourir, c'est la devise des hommes.

Exercise on the Adverbs.

(492 to 501.) Never remind¹ any one² of the services you do³ him. We⁴ seldom repent⁵ of talking little, but very often of talking (too much⁶). We always breakfast at eight o'clock. Have you ever⁷ seen Windsor Castle? They certainly showed⁸ a great deal of courage. Have you been to Scotland? No, never. Not far from Tours is the castle of Loches. He works no more. I have said nothing. The blind man does not see. Charles does not work as I should like; but Alfred does not work at all.

Everybody is laughing⁹; have I not said some nonsense¹⁰? Why do you not come? Did you not hear me? We never (get up¹¹) before seven o'clock in winter. I do not know¹² any one more polite than your father. He has eaten¹³ nothing since yesterday. He does¹⁴ nothing but¹⁵ read from morning till evening. I have never¹⁶ seen (so many people¹⁷). He does not say (a word¹⁸). I have only lost five francs. My brother has only two children. Has your mother only one servant? I dare not speak to him. He cannot bear¹⁹ the least noise. You cannot²⁰ believe how much I suffer. I have not seen him since²¹ I have been in France. He has not written to his family (for

¹ rappeler à ² personne ³ rendre ⁴ On ⁵ se repentir ⁶ trop ⁷ jamais ⁸ montrer
⁹ rire ¹⁰ sottise ¹¹ se lever ¹² connaître ¹³ manger ¹⁴ ne faire ¹⁵ que ¹⁶ de ma vie
¹⁷ tant de monde ¹⁸ mot ¹⁹ supporter ²⁰ ne savoir (condit. 556) ²¹ depuis que

five years²³). It is three months since he has spoken to me. I am better, since I do not drink beer.

(502 to 513.) I will not go unless you come with me. Hold²² him by the hand (for fear²⁴) he should fall. I shall prevent²⁵ him from²⁶ going out to-morrow evening. (Take care²⁷) that he does not see you. They²⁸ who speak otherwise than they think are despised²⁹. You translate³⁰ French better than you speak it³¹. I fear³² your father will arrive before you. We tremble lest he should fall into³³ their hands. I do not fear that he will come. I fear he will not pay you. I do not deny³⁴ that I have done it. I doubt whether³⁵ the fleet is gone³⁶. Have you done? Not yet. Do you like that drawing? Not much. How is³⁷ your father? Not very well, sir. We fear lest³⁸ the enemy should come. We fear lest the enemy should not come.

You have more money than I. He has many³⁹ friends, but you have⁴⁰ more. You have had meat enough, you shall have no⁴¹ more. The moon appears⁴² as large⁴³ as the sun, although she is not so large. Paris is not so populous⁴⁴ as London. I have not so much success as he. He spoke so eloquently that (everybody⁴⁵) shed⁴⁶ tears. Your brother came sooner than I expected. A good Christian ought⁴⁷ to die rather than deny⁴⁸ his faith. A terrific storm suddenly (came on⁴⁹). We lost more than twelve thousand pounds all at once.

²³ Il y a cinq ans que ²⁴ tenir ²⁵ de peur que ²⁶ empêcher ²⁷ de ²⁸ prendre garde ²⁹ Ceux ³⁰ mépriser ³¹ traduire ³² le ³³ craindre que ³⁴ entre ³⁵ nier ³⁶ que ³⁷ partir ³⁸ se porter ³⁹ que ⁴⁰ beaucoup de ⁴¹ en avoir ⁴² pas ⁴³ paraître ⁴⁴ grand ⁴⁵ peuplé ⁴⁶ tout le monde ⁴⁷ verser ⁴⁸ devoir ⁴⁹ renier ⁵⁰ survenir.

SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

Remarks on some Prepositions.

514 The preposition *à* is used for *to*, *at*, or *in* before proper names of places, and the preposition *en* is used for *to* or *in* before names of countries and provinces; as

je vais *à* Paris
il demeure *à* Londres
j'irai *en* France
il est *en* Bourgogne

I am going to Paris
he lives in London
I shall go to France
he is in Burgundy

(For the repetition of the Prepositions, see No. 219, page 123.)

To, USED BEFORE AN INFINITIVE.

515 When the Infinitive is the subject of the verb, *to* is not expressed in French; as

to die for one's country is glorious *mourir pour sa patrie est glorieux*

516 *To* is expressed by **de** when it can be turned into *of*;
as

<i>will you have the kindness to give</i>	<i>voulez-vous avoir la bonté de lui</i>
<i>(of giving) him this note ?</i>	<i>donner cette lettre ?</i>

517 *To* is expressed by **pour** when it denotes the end or purpose of the action, or can be rendered by *in order to*;
as

<i>we must eat to live, and not live to</i>	<i>il faut manger pour vivre, et non</i>
<i>eat</i>	<i>pas vivre pour manger</i>

518 We have seen (No. 219) that the prepositions *à, de,* and *en,* are repeated before every word they govern. The other prepositions may also be repeated before each object, provided these objects are not synonymous ; as

Annibal triompha de Rome *par* la force et *par* l'adresse
Sardanapale passait sa vie *dans* la mollesse et l'oisiveté

Avant — devant (*before*).

519 **Avant** refers to *time*, and denotes also *rank* ; **devant** has reference to *place*, and signifies also *in presence of*;
as

<i>avant la fin du mois</i>	<i>before the end of the month</i>
<i>votre frère est avant moi</i>	<i>your brother is before me</i>
<i>regardez devant vous</i>	<i>look before you</i>
<i>il a prêché devant la cour</i>	<i>he preached before the court</i>

Dans — en (*in*).

520 **Dans** is used with nouns taken in a determinate sense, that is, preceded by the article or by any determinative adjective. **En** is used with nouns taken in a vague and indeterminate sense, and is not generally to be followed by any of the above-mentioned determinative words ; it is also used before dates and personal pronouns ;
as

With dans.

<i>elle est dans le jardin</i>	<i>she is in the garden</i>
<i>il est dans sa chambre</i>	<i>he is in his room</i>
<i>son livre est dans ce tiroir</i>	<i>his book is in that drawer</i>

With en.

<i>ma mère est en France</i>	•	<i>my mother is in France</i>
<i>il vit en chambre garnie</i>		<i>he lives in a lodging</i>
<i>en mil huit cent soixante</i>		<i>in 1860</i>
<i>mon espoir est en vous</i>		<i>my hope is in you</i>

521 When speaking of time, **dans** denotes the epoch, and means "at the end of;" **en** denotes the duration; as

<i>il viendra dans un mois</i>	<i>he will come in a month</i>
<i>il a fait le voyage en un mois</i>	<i>he performed the voyage in a month</i>

Dessus — dessous — dedans — dehors.

522 The adverbs *dessus, dessous, dedans, dehors*, must not be mistaken for the prepositions *sur, sous, dans, hors de*. The adverbs are never followed by any object, whereas the prepositions are always so followed; as

<i>votre chapeau est sur (not DESSUS) la table</i>
<i>mon livre est dans (not DEDANS) le tiroir</i>

However, *dessus, dessous, dedans, dehors*, are used as prepositions when they are preceded by one of the prepositions *à, de, par*, or when we wish to express some opposition; as

<i>ôtez cela DE DESSUS (OR DE DESSOUS) la table</i>
<i>il n'est ni DESSUS ni DESSOUS la table</i>

NOTE.—*Dessus, dessous, dedans, dehors*, preceded by *à, de, en, par*, may also be used as adverbs; as *les enfants de cinq ans et AU-DESSOUS*.

Depuis — pendant — pour (for).

523 **Depuis** denotes a point of time, **pendant** denotes the duration, and **pour** expresses the end; as

<i>je ne l'ai pas vu depuis un an</i>	<i>I have not seen him for a year</i>
<i>il a voyagé pendant six mois</i>	<i>he has travelled for six months</i>
<i>ils ont du pain pour trois jours</i>	<i>they have bread for three days</i>

Près de — prêt à.

524 **Près de** denotes proximity of place or time, and **prêt à** signifies *disposé à*, "to be ready;" as

<i>il est près de mourir</i>	<i>he is at the point of death</i>
<i>je suis prêt à partir</i>	<i>I am ready to set off</i>

Entre — parmi.

525 **Entre** refers to two objects only, and is also used with a noun in the plural, to express reciprocity: **parmi** is said of a collection of objects, and requires after it a substantive in the plural, or a noun collective; as

entre vous et moi, il n'y a rien de commun
les Juifs ne se marient qu'entre eux
il n'y a rien de solide parmi les hommes
parmi la foule des courtisans

Au travers — à travers.

526 **Au travers** is always followed by the preposition *de*, **à travers** is not; as

il se fit jour au travers des ennemis
à travers les rochers la peur les précipite.—RACINE.

Quant à — quand.

527 **Quant à**, preposition, signifies *à l'égard de*, "as for;"
 , adverb, signifies *lorsque*, "when;" as

<i>quant à moi, je pars</i>	<i>as for me, I go</i>
<i>quand viendrez-vous ?</i>	<i>when will you come ?</i>

Voici — voilà.

528 **Voici** indicates the nearest place or object; and **voilà** the most distant.—*Voici* refers to what follows; *voilà* to what precedes; as

voici ma maison, et voilà la sienne
voici les Alpes, et voilà les Pyrénées
voici la cause de cet accident; écoutez
soyez sage et laborieux, voilà mon désir

Envers — vers (towards, to).

529 **Envers** is used when speaking of behaviour; **vers** when speaking of *motion* and *time*; as

il est charitable envers les pauvres
comment s'est-il comporté envers vous ?
l'armée s'avança vers la frontière
Marseille fut fondée vers l'an 600 avant J.-C.

Chez.

530 *Chez*, which is so frequently used in French, has no literal equivalent in English, but can generally be expressed by *at, to, in the house of, at home, among*; as

je suis *chez* moi le soir
je l'ai rencontré *chez* vous
il est *chez* un banquier
allez *chez* mon père
chez les Romains

I am at home in the evening
I met him at your house
he is at a banker's
go to my father's
among the Romans

NOTE.—When *chez* is united by a hyphen to a personal pronoun, it forms part of a compound noun; as *un chez-moi* "a home," "a house of my own."

530* OBSERVE.—The English preposition *on*, generally used before the word indicating the day of the week or the date of the month, is never expressed in French; as

I shall see you on Sunday

Je vous verrai dimanche

Read, translate, and write.

Quand Charles ira-t-il à Florence? *Dans* un mois. Restera-t-il longtemps *en* Italie? Il y va *pour* apprendre la langue. Aurez-vous le temps *de* finir votre lettre *avant* le dîner? Non, mais je la finirai *après* le thé. Qui était roi de France *avant* Napoléon III? Louis-Philippe, que j'ai vu passer *devant* ma porte *dans* un simple fiacre, à son arrivée *en* Angleterre. Les soldats, qui avaient marché *pendant* trois semaines, n'avaient rien mangé *depuis* près de deux jours. Il y a plus de morts *parmi* les fuyards que *parmi* les braves. L'homme est placé libre *entre* le vice et la vertu. La haine *entre* les grands se calme rarement. Nous aperçûmes alors *à travers* le brouillard le corps et les vergues d'un grand vaisseau. Nous perçâmes *au travers* des bataillons ennemis. Enfants, ne soyez pas ingrats *envers* vos parents. L'Amérique fut découverte *vers* la fin du XV^e siècle par Christophe Colomb. Je passerai *chez* vous ce soir. Quand votre père est-il *chez* lui? Son fils travaille *chez* un architecte. La condition des comédiens était infâme *chez* les Romains, et honorable *chez* les Grecs. Quand ma sœur aura un *chez-elle*, j'irai la voir.

Exercise on the Prepositions.

Were you not in Paris at the moment of the revolution? No; I was in Italy. We are going to Germany¹. The king is at Richmond. His father is now in Italy, and he will go to Spain² next winter. To forgive is more noble than to revenge. Shall we have the pleasure of dining with you next Tuesday? The ambassador was sent to congrats-

¹ Allemagne

² Espagne

tulate the emperor. I shall be there before you. Put⁸ that screen⁴ before the fire. Do not (place yourself⁵) before me. I have⁶ to appear⁷ before the judges the third of November next. You will find that book in the library⁹. My family lives⁹ in Burgundy¹⁰. I learnt English in ten months, and I intend¹¹ to begin German in a fortnight. Can you go from Boulogne to Dover in two hours? We have not been to France for a year. Is not my purse upon the sofa? No, it is under it. Is not my carpet-bag under the table? No, it is upon it. It is neither upon nor under the table. Take¹² that box from under the bed.

Your brother and I have walked for six hours. The garrison have provisions for six months. Is not Henry going to London? No; he is going to Scotland¹³ for three months. I am ready to hear you. It is nearly eleven o'clock. I sat¹⁴ between the father and daughter. We perceived the prince among the crowd. The river winds¹⁵ through the charming country that surrounds the town. The chamois bounds¹⁶ across the rocks with a wonderful swiftness. As for me, I ask nothing. This is my book, and that is yours. Our examination is on Friday next, and we resume¹⁷ our studies on the first of February. Children, fulfil¹⁸ your duties towards God, your parents, and your country¹⁹. Be grateful²⁰ to (towards) your benefactors. We marched towards the sea. Printing²¹ was invented towards the middle of the 15th century. When will your father be at home? Shall you go to my sister's this evening? It was the custom among the Gauls to plunge their new-born²² children into cold water.

³ mettre ⁴ écran *m.* ⁵ se mettre ⁶ devoir ⁷ paraître ⁸ bibliothèque ⁹ demeurer
¹⁰ Bourgogne ¹¹ avoir dessein ¹² ôter ¹³ Ecosse ¹⁴ s'asseoir ¹⁵ serpenter
¹⁶ bondir ¹⁷ reprendre ¹⁸ remplir ¹⁹ patrie ²⁰ reconnaissant ²¹ L'imprimerie
²² nouveau-né

SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Of all the conjunctions, **que** is that which is the most often used for another; it is applied in several ways:—

531 **Que** is used to unite two verbs together, or the relative members of a comparison; as

je crois que l'âme est immortelle
il est plus brave que prudent

I believe the soul is immortal
he is more brave than prudent

532 **Que** is used in the second part of a sentence to avoid the repetition of such conjunctions as *si*, *quand*, *lorsque*, *quoique*, *puisque*, *comme*, &c.; as

si vous sortez et que vous veniez
me voir
quand on est riche et qu'on est
généreux.

if you go out and if you come to
see me
when people are rich and when
they are generous

533 *Que* is used in the middle of a sentence for *avant que, après que, afin que, pour que, à moins que, de peur que, depuis que*, and many other conjunctions ; as

je ne partirai point <i>que</i> tout ne soit prêt	<i>I shall not set out before every- thing is ready</i>
approchez, <i>que</i> je vous parle	<i>come near, that I may speak to you</i>
ne mangez pas <i>que</i> vous n'ayez faim	<i>do not eat unless you are hungry</i>
il y a deux ans <i>que</i> je ne l'ai vu	<i>it is two years since I have seen him</i>

534 *Que* is used at the beginning of a sentence for *pour-quoi*, "why ;" and also for *comme, combien*, "how," "how much," "how many ;" as

<i>que</i> ne travaillez-vous ?	<i>why do you not work ?</i>
<i>que</i> votre mère est bonne !	<i>how kind your mother is !</i>
<i>que</i> de peine j'ai eue pour réussir dans mon projet !	<i>how much trouble I have had to succeed in my project !</i>
<i>que</i> de malheurs il a éprouvés dans sa vie !	<i>how many misfortunes he has ex- perienced in his life !</i>

Et — ni.

535 The conjunction *et* unites words or members of a sentence having an affirmative sense ; *ni* is used when the sense is negative ; as

l'oisiveté étouffe les talents et engendre les vices
vous ne devez ni le dire ni l'écrire

However, *et* may unite two negative propositions when they are independent of one another ; as

il n'est pas riche et il n'en est pas moins heureux

English and French Conjunctions compared.

536 *Either ... or* is expressed in French by *ou* repeated, though the first *ou* is often left out ; as

<i>either Rome or Carthage</i>	<i>ou Rome ou Carthage</i>
<i>it is either you or he</i>	<i>c'est vous ou lui</i>

537 But before nouns *either* is often expressed by *soit* repeated ; as

<i>either pride or timidity</i>	<i>soit orgueil, soit timidité</i>

538 Neither... nor is expressed in French by **ni** repeated, with **ne** before the verb; as

*she is neither rich nor pretty
he can neither see nor speak*

*elle n'est ni riche ni belle
il ne peut ni voir ni parler*

539 Nor... either is expressed in French by **ni... non plus**; as

I have not dined—nor I either

je n'ai pas diné—ni moi non plus

540 Whether is generally rendered by **si**, but in a sentence of two verbs it is sometimes expressed by **soit que** before the first, and **ou que** before the second, both being in the subjunctive; as

whether he gains or loses

soit qu'il gagne ou qu'il perde

541 Soit is sometimes understood; as

qu'il vienne ou non

whether he comes or not

Read, translate, and write.

Je doute qu'on puisse être heureux lorsqu'on a quelque faute à se reprocher. A quoi vous servira d'avoir de l'esprit, si vous ne l'employez pas, et que vous ne vous appliquiez pas? Quand on ne cherche qu'à faire du bien aux hommes, et qu'on n'offense point le ciel, on ne craint rien ni pendant la vie, ni à la mort. Ne partez pas que je ne vous le dise. Allons, venez tous, que je vous distribue mes ordres. Que le monde est grand! qu'il est magnifique! Que de beaux jours n'ont pas de beaux soirs! Que la religion est terrible et puissante! La fortune, soit bonne ou mauvaise, soit passagère ou constante, ne peut rien sur l'âme du sage. Soit que vous le fassiez ou que vous ne le fassiez pas, vous serez blâmé. Que vous écriviez ou non, il ne viendra pas.

Exercise on the Conjunctions.

I think you will see him to-morrow. Do you wish¹ me to recite² that tragedy? The south of France is much warmer than the north. If you like to read, and if you wish for books, I will send you some³. As you have nothing to do, and as I am very busy⁴, you ought⁵ to help me. Since he is your friend, and you know his kindness, why do you not ask him that favour? When (young people⁶) are inclined⁷ to study⁸, and when they will⁹ study, they make a rapid progress¹⁰. Do

¹ désirer ² réciter ³ en ⁴ occupé ⁵ devoir ⁶ jeunes gens ⁷ avoir des dispositions
⁸ étudier ⁹ vouloir ¹⁰ des progrès

not begin unless (everybody¹¹) is arrived. We shall not (set out¹²) before it is light¹³. It is¹⁴ a long time since I have been (to their house¹⁵). Do not make any¹⁶ noise, for fear they should hear us. Why do you not go with them? Why do you not speak, since you know it? How fortunate¹⁷ you are! How many persons die victims of their own¹⁸ follies! It is either you or your brother. Either through weakness or kindness, he has granted it. She is neither an Italian nor a German. I have never been to Spain. Nor we either. Whether he speaks or writes, he is always interesting. Whether you write or not, he will not come.

¹¹ tout le monde ¹² partir ¹³ jour ¹⁴ Il y a ¹⁵ chez eux ¹⁶ de ¹⁷ heureux
¹⁸ propre.

NOTE.—The conjunctions which govern the verb in the subjunctive mood are given at page 125.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME INTERJECTIONS.

542 Ah! Ha!—Ho! Oh!—O!—Eh! Hé!

(See page 126.)

Ah! expresses joy or grief: *Ah! quel bonheur! Ah! que je souffre!*

Ha! expresses surprise: *Ha! vous voilà! Ha! Ha! je n'en savais rien.*

Ho! serves to call, and expresses surprise: *Ho! venez ici. Ho! que faites-vous là?*

Oh! is used for the other exclamations: *Oh! quel bonheur!*

O! is used in an address: *O mon fils! aimez Dieu.*

Eh! expresses grief: *Eh! qui n'a pas pleuré quelque perte cruelle?*

Hé! is used to call, to warn: *Hé! venez donc. Hé! que dites-vous?*

APPENDIX.

OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

WE have already seen (page 21) that *practice* and *dictionaries* are, as it were, the only means to determine the gender of nouns of inanimate objects. A few general observations are, however, here given, which will be found of great assistance to the student.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

543 Names of **towns** are generally masculine, except those ending in *e* or *es*, which are generally feminine ; as

<i>Masculine</i>		<i>Feminine</i>	
Paris	Strasbourg	Marseille	Nantes
Lyon	Berlin	Rome	Naples
Bordeaux	Madrid, &c.	Vienne	Athènes, &c.

544 The names of **metals, minerals, and colours** are masculine ; as

or	cuivre	bleu
argent	airain	rouge
fer	platine	jaune, &c.

545 The names of **days, months, and seasons** are masculine ; as

lundi	avril	été
jeudi	mai	automne
samedi, &c.	juin, &c.	hiver, &c.

546 The names of **trees and shrubs** are masculine ; as

chêne	peuplier	myrte
hêtre	pommier	grenadier
pin	saule	rosier, &c.

Except : *fbène, épine, aubépine, ronce, vigne,*

547 Adjectives, verbs, and prepositions, used substantively, are masculine; as

l'utile	le boire	le pour
l'agréable	le manger	le contre, &c.

548 All nouns designating a *man* are masculine, and those designating a *woman* are feminine; as

<i>Masculine</i>		<i>Feminine</i>	
père	roi	mère	reine
fil	duc	fil	duchesse
frère	berger	sœur	bergère, &c.

Except : une *sentinelle*, une *vedette*.

549 All nouns designating the male of an animal are masculine, and those designating the female are feminine; as

<i>Masculine</i>		<i>Feminine</i>	
bœuf	chien	vache	chienne
cheval	chat	jument	chatte
âne	lion	ânesse	lionne, &c.

550 Sometimes the same word is used for the male or female, in which case the word is either masculine or feminine, according to its termination; as

<i>Always masculine</i>		<i>Always feminine</i>	
buffle	cigne	girafe	cigogne
castor	geai	hyène	perdrix
chameau	hibou	souris	pie
éléphant	saumon, &c.	tortue	sole, &c.

REMARK.—When, in speaking of these animals, we wish to distinguish their sex, we are obliged to designate it by adding the word *mâle* or *féfelle*; as *le mâle de la girafe*, *la féfelle du chameau*; or, *la girafe mâle*, *le chameau féfelle*.

551 Nouns having the following terminations are feminine; viz.:

- ADE : ambassade, brigade, promenade, &c.
- ANCE, ENCE : constance, diligence, &c. ; except *silence*
- ESSE : adresse, caresse, finesse, vitesse, &c.
- EUR : chaleur, douceur, &c. ; except *honneur*, *bonheur*
- ISE : bêtise, franchise, gourmandise, &c.
- ION : ambition, attention, condition, &c.
- RIE : barbarie, causerie, furie, vanterie, &c.
- TÉ : bonté, beauté, facilité, nécessité, &c.
- UDE : étude, servitude, solitude, &c.
- brûlure, culture, fracture, &c.

552 All nouns ending in one of the eleven letters *b, c, d, g, h, k, l, p, q, y, z*, are masculine, without exception; as *plomb, banc, bord, rang, almanach, carrick, bal, camp, coq, jury, nez, &c.*

553 Substantives of both Genders

WHICH OFFER SOME DIFFICULTY.

Aigle is feminine when it signifies a standard, a constellation, or the hen eagle: *l'aigle ROMAINE*; *l'aigle est REMPLIE de tendresse pour ses petits*. In all other cases it is masculine: *l'aigle est FIER et COURAGEUX*.

Amour, used in the singular number, is invariably masculine: *un VIOLENT amour*. When used in the plural number, in the sense of love between two persons, it is of both genders, but oftener feminine: *de FOLLES amours*.

Couple, denoting only the number *deux* (two), is feminine: *UNE couple d'œufs*; *UNE couple de poulets*. It is masculine when it signifies two persons united by marriage, by bonds of affection, or unity of purpose: *un HEUREUX couple, un couple d'amis*; *un couple de fripons*.

Délice is masculine for the singular, and feminine for the plural: *c'est un GRAND délice*; *ce sont mes plus CHÈRES délices*. But when *un de* precedes *délices*, it is invariably masculine: *un de mes plus GRANDS délices*.

Enfant, referring to a boy, is masculine: *c'est UN BEL enfant*; it is feminine when it refers to a girl: *c'est UNE BELLE enfant*. In the plural it is always masculine.

Foudre, *thunderbolt*, is always feminine: *LA foudre est TOMBÉE*. It is masculine in poetry and in that style which is called the sublime: *être frappé DU foudre VENGEUR*. Speaking figuratively of a renowned warrior or a great orator, it is also masculine: *c'est UN foudre de guerre*; *UN foudre d'éloquence*.

Gens requires in the feminine the adjectives which precede it, and in the masculine those which follow it: *les VIEILLES gens sont SOUPÇONNEUX*; *TOUTES les MÉCHANTES gens*. But *tous, m.*, must be used: 1° When no other adjective precedes *gens*: *tous les gens d'esprit*. 2° When *gens* is preceded by an adjective of both genders, such as *honnête, brave, &c.*: *tous les honnêtes gens*. 3° When *gens* is followed by the preposition *de* and a substantive denoting any profession: *de VRAIS gens de lettres*; *CERTAINS gens d'affaires*.

Hymne, church song or canticle, is feminine: *on a chanté de BELLES hymnes à l'église*. It is masculine in other cases: *un hymne GUERRIER*; *des hymnes NATIONAUX*.

Jujube is feminine when it means the fruit so called; it is masculine when meaning the paste made of the fruit.

Œuvre is generally feminine ; it is masculine when it means a work in elevated style, as *un œuvre de génie*, or the works of a musician or engraver.

Orgue is feminine, except when coupled with the words *mondé, perlé*.

Orgue is masculine for the singular, and feminine for the plural : *un BEL orgue ; de BELLES orgues*. But we say, *un des plus BEAUX orgues*, to avoid the meeting of the two genders.

Période, signifying the *highest pitch, summit*, is masculine : *LE plus HAUT période de gloire*. *In all other cases it is feminine : *LA période solaire ; UNE période OBSCURE et EMBARRASSÉE*.

Quelque chose is masculine when it signifies *une chose : quelque chose de MERVEILLEUX*. It is feminine when it means *quelle que soit la chose : quelque chose qu'il ait DITE, on ne l'a pas cru*.

Régisse is feminine when it means the plant ; it is masculine when it means the juice extracted from the plant.

Distinction in French between Words

WHICH ARE EXPRESSED IN THE SAME MANNER IN ENGLISH.

An — Année — year.

554 The word *year* is expressed by *année* when it is considered as a duration of twelve months ; it is generally rendered by *an* when we mean only to express one or more units of a twelvemonth, and is generally joined to a numeral adjective ; as

il y a deux <i>ans</i> qu'il est mort	<i>it is two years since he died</i>
il va à Paris tous les <i>ans</i>	<i>he goes to Paris every year</i>
cette <i>année</i> a été pluvieuse	<i>this year has been rainy</i>
la dixième <i>année</i> de son règne	<i>the tenth year of his reign</i>

Jour — Journée — day.

Matin — Matinée — morning.

Soir — Soirée — evening.

555 The word *day* is expressed by *jour* ; *morning* by *matin*, and *evening* by *soir*, when we speak of any part of them ; they are expressed by *journée, matinée, and soirée*, when we express the whole duration ; as

il va à Londres tous les <i>jours</i>	<i>he goes to London every day</i>
la <i>journée</i> a été fort belle	<i>the day has been beautiful</i>

je me baigne tous les matins
il a plu toute la matinée

venez demain au soir
il a passé la soirée avec nous

*I bathe every morning
it rained all the morning*

*come to-morrow evening
he spent the evening with us*

NOTE.—*To-night* is rendered in French by *ce soir*, and *last night* by *hier au soir* : as, *Come to-night, venez ce soir* ; I saw him *last night*, je l'ai vu *hier au soir*.

Connaître — Savoir — to know.

556 The verb *to know* is always expressed by *connaître* when it signifies *to be acquainted with* ; and most commonly by *savoir* in all other circumstances ; as

connaissiez-vous ce monsieur ?
savez-vous votre leçon ?

*do you know that gentleman ?
do you know your lesson ?*

NOTE.—*Savoir* is sometimes used in familiar language in the sense of *not to be able* I cannot, but only in the conditional ; as

je ne saurais vous le dire
vous ne sauriez croire

*I cannot tell you
you cannot believe*

Amener — Apporter — to bring.

557 The verb *to bring* is expressed in French by *amener* when it means to *lead*, to *drive*, to *conduct* ; and by *apporter* when it means to *carry* ; as

amenez votre fils avec vous
amenez la voiture
apportez-moi mes livres

*bring your son with you
bring the carriage
bring me my books*

Mener — Porter — to carry.

558 The verb *mener* is used in French in the sense of to *lead*, to *drive*, to *conduct*, to *take* (without carrying) ; and *porter* in the sense of to *carry* ; as

menez mon cheval à l'écurie
où a-t-il porté mes bottes ?

*take my horse to the stable
where has he carried my boots ?*

Marcher — Se promener — to walk.

559 The verb *to walk* is expressed in French by *marcher* when we walk for business, and by *se promener* when we walk for pleasure ; as

j'ai marché beaucoup ce matin
la reine s'est promenée dans le
parc ce matin

*I walked much this morning
the queen has been walking in the
park this morning*

560 *To walk* is also rendered by *aller à pied, venir à pied* ; as

Comment irons-nous au lac ? IRONS-NOUS À PIED ou en voiture ?—
Shall we walk or shall we drive ?

561 *NOTE.*—It must be observed that *se promener* does not mean properly *to walk*, but *to take a diversion* either by walking, or riding, or driving, or in a boat, &c. ; as *se promener à cheval, en voiture, en bateau, &c.*, all expressions which cannot be translated by *to walk*. “*To take a walk*” is *faire une promenade*, and “*to take a drive*” is *faire une promenade en voiture*.

Marier — Épouser — Se marier — to marry.

562 *Marier* means “*to give away in marriage*,” and *épouser* “*to take any one in marriage*.” *Se marier* merely implies that one enters the matrimonial state, without mentioning the person that one takes ; as

ma tante a marié son fils
 elle a épousé un Anglais
 quand se marie-t-il ?

my aunt has married her son
she married an Englishman
when is he to be married ?

Neuf — Nouveau — new.

563 The word *new* is most commonly expressed by *neuf*, m., *neuve*, f., when we speak of something which has been recently made, or has not been used since it has been made ; and by *nouveau*, m., *nouvelle*, f., when we speak of something of a new kind, a new shape, a new fashion, or different from another used before ; as

she has a new dress
elle a une robe neuve (newly made).
elle a une nouvelle robe (another dress).

Pays — Campagne — Patrie — country.

564 *Pays* means “*country*” in general ; *campagne* “*fields*,” and is used in opposition to the town ; *patrie*, “*native country* ;” as

la France est un beau pays
 en Angleterre, la campagne est
 magnifique
 ma mère est à la campagne
 combattre pour sa patrie

France is a fine country
in England, the country is beau-
tiful
my mother is in the country
to fight for one's country

A la campagne — En campagne.

565 *À la campagne* means “*in the country* ;” as

je vais à la campagne

I am going into the country

Être en campagne signifies "to be away from home," "to be stirring;" or "to be in the field," when speaking of troops; as

mon père est *en campagne*
l'armée est *en campagne*

my father is away from home
the army is in the field

À la ville — En ville.

566 *À la ville*, "in town," "to town," signifies that the person is not in the country; as

ma mère est *à la ville*

my mother is in town

En ville signifies that the person is *out* or not at home; as

ma sœur est *en ville*

my sister is not at home

Par terre — À terre.

567 *Par terre* refers to things on the ground, and *à terre* to things above the ground; thus

un arbre tombe *par terre*

les fruits de l'arbre tombent *à terre*

Temps — Fois — time.

568 *Time* is rendered by *temps* when it means part of duration; and by *fois* when it signifies succession, repetition, or quantity of things, generally with the help of a numeral; as

time *passes quickly*
it is the first time
three times a week

le *temps* *passé vite*
c'est la première fois
trois fois par semaine

Avoir l'air.

569 If the adjective which follows *air* refers to that noun rather than to the person, this adjective must be put in the masculine; as

cette femme a l'*air bon*; l'*air spirituel*

But if the adjective refers to the person rather than to the word *air*, this adjective takes the gender and number of the person; as

elle a l'*air toute troublée*

ils ont l'*air fâchés* de partir

In speaking of things, the word *air* must not be immediately followed by an adjective; thus we cannot say: *cette viande a l'air frais*; but we say: *cette viande a l'air d'être fraîche*; *cette pomme a l'air d'être cuite*.

Dormir — Coucher — to sleep.

The verb *to sleep* is expressed in French by *dormir*, when it means *to rest, to be asleep*; and by *coucher* when it means *to lie down or spend the night*; as

avez-vous bien <i>dormi</i> ?	<i>did you sleep well ?</i>
ils <i>couchent</i> sous la même tente	<i>they sleep under the same tent</i>

Read, translate, and write.

Mon père reviendra des Indes dans trois *ans*. Nous allons en France tous les *ans*. Sa femme a été malade toute l'*année*. Nous avons eu une très-bonne *année*. Il a plu toute la *journée*. Les *jours* sont plus longs en été qu'en hiver. Il y a huit *jours* que je ne l'ai vu. Nos amis sont partis à six heures du *matin*. Quelle belle *matinée* ! Il vient me voir tous les *matins*. Les *matinées* sont froides. Êtes-vous invité à la *soirée* de mon oncle ? Oui, mais je ne pourrai y aller, car je pars demain au *soir*. Je travaille tous les *soirs* jusqu'à onze heures. *Connaissez-vous* quelqu'un dans cette ville ? Non ; mais je *sais* où aller. *Savez-vous* si le convoi de Paris est arrivé ? Non, je ne *saurais* vous le dire. *Amènerez-vous* votre cheval ? Non, mais je vous *amènerai* tous mes enfants. *Apportez* du charbon, et vous *porterez* ensuite ces lettres à la poste. Mon père nous *mènera* au spectacle ce *soir*.

Irez-vous à pied ou en voiture ? Je crois que nous *irons en voiture*, parce que nous avons déjà beaucoup *marché* aujourd'hui. Nous nous sommes *promenés* toute la *matinée* dans la forêt. Voulez-vous venir faire une *promenade en bateau* ? J'aime mieux aller me *promener à cheval*. Le prince de Galles a *épousé* une princesse danoise. La reine d'Angleterre a *marié* sa fille aînée au prince Frédéric de Prusse. Ils se sont *mariés* la semaine dernière. Qui les a *mariés* ? L'évêque d'Oxford. Avez-vous vu ma *nouvelle* maison ? Non, pas encore ; est-ce une maison *neuve* ? Oui, elle n'a jamais été habitée. La Suisse est un *pays* très-montagneux, la *campagne* y est fort belle. Votre *patrie*, c'est le ciel. Il est glorieux de mourir pour sa *patrie*. Nous passons ordinairement quatre ou cinq mois à la *campagne*, et le reste de l'année à la *ville*. Madame votre mère est-elle chez elle ? Non, monsieur, elle est *en ville*. Ne perdez pas votre *temps*. Je l'ai vue hier

pour la première fois. Chaque fois qu'il vient il m'apporte quelque chose. Nous avons couché à l'hôtel du Louvre. Avez-vous bien dormi? Je dors toujours bien quand je suis fatigué. Mon frère et moi nous couchons dans la même chambre.

Exercise on the preceding Idioms.

How many years have you been in England? It will be¹ eighteen years next spring. Do you go to France every year? I sometimes go twice a² year. Shall you go next year? No; but I shall go in two years. We take a walk every morning in the gardens of the Crystal Palace. I think (it will be³) a fine morning. Where shall you spend⁴ the day to-morrow? I shall spend the morning with my mother, and the evening with my friends. How many days are there⁵ in a year? There are 365 days. Will you come with us to-night? No; I shall not be able to⁶ go, because I am engaged for⁷ an evening party. Were you not at the opera last night? No; I was there the night before last. Do you know what piece they will play this evening? No; I do not. Do you know the actress who played last night? Yes, I do; she is an Italian. Shall you bring your sister with you? No, she is not well; but I will bring my two cousins. Do not forget to bring your opera-glass⁸. Bring also a good cloak, because it will be⁹ very cold. Shall I take your bonnet to the bedroom? No; take it to the dressing-room. Will you take these two ladies to the drawing-room?

Shall you take a walk in the park this morning? No, I shall not, because I have to walk a great deal to-day on business¹⁰. We walked the whole day without rest and without food. Shall we ride or shall we walk? I think the ladies would prefer driving. Come early¹¹, and we will go and take a drive in the country. The King of Italy married his daughter to Prince Napoleon. Who married them? was it not the bishop? Yes, it was. When is your sister to be married? Next month. She will marry a captain in the navy¹². Have you not a new servant? Yes, I have, and I bought him a new coat and a new hat. England and France are two fine countries. Do you like the country? Yes; I prefer the country to the town. Your country will never forget your services. Does your father dine at home to-day? No; he dines out. How often does he go¹³ to town? Three or four times a week. He would be a thousand times happier if he were alone. Time does not belong¹⁴ to us. Time flies and never returns. Where did you sleep last night? I slept at my grandfather's. Do you sleep well at night? No; I sleep very little. If you occupy¹⁵ that room you will never be able to sleep, on account¹⁶ of the noise.

¹ Il y aura ² par ³ nous aurons ⁴ passer ⁵ y a-t-il ⁶ je ne pourrai pas y ⁷ invité à
⁸ lorgnette ⁹ il fera ¹⁰ pour affaires ¹¹ de bonne heure ¹² capitaine de vaisseau
¹³ Va-t-il souvent ¹⁴ appartenir ¹⁵ coucher ¹⁶ à cause

Modèle d'Analyse Grammaticale.

L'analyse grammaticale est la décomposition d'une phrase et l'examen partiel de tous les mots qui la composent. Elle en indique la nature, l'espèce, les variations de genre, de nombre, de mode, de temps et de personne, et enfin les rapports divers qui existent entre eux. On verra dans la phrase suivante la manière de procéder dans cette analyse :—

Le fleuve Bétis coule dans un pays fertile et sous un ciel doux qui est toujours serein.—FÉNELON.

LE	art. simple, masc. sing., détermine <i>fleuve</i>
FLEUVE	subs. com. masc. sing., sujet du verbe <i>coule</i>
BÉTIS	nom propre de fleuve
COULE	verbe intransitif à l'ind. prés., 3 ^e pers. du sing., 1 ^{re} conj. Temps primitifs : <i>couler, coulant, coulé, je coule, je coulai</i>
DANS	préposition simple, qui établit un rapport entre le verbe <i>couler</i> et le nom <i>pays</i>
UN	art. indéf. masc. sing., détermine <i>pays</i>
PAYS	subs. com. masc. sing., complément de la prép. <i>dans</i> .
FERTILE	adj. qualificatif, masc. sing., qualifie <i>pays</i>
ET	conjonction, qui unit les deux propositions
SOUS	préposition simple
UN	déjà analysé
CIEL	subs. com. masc. sing., complément de la prep. <i>sous</i>
DOUX	adj. qualificatif, masc. sing., qualifie <i>ciel</i>
QUI	pron. relatif, sujet du verbe <i>est</i> , et qui rappelle l'idée de <i>ciel</i>
EST	verbe subs. irrég. au prés. de l'ind., 3 ^e pers. du sing., s'accordant avec son sujet <i>ciel</i> représenté par <i>qui</i> . Temps primitifs : <i>être, étant, été, je suis, je fus</i>
TOUJOURS	adverbe simple
SERAIN	adj. qualificatif, masc. sing., qualifie <i>ciel</i>

A SERIES
OF
CONVERSATIONAL LESSONS
CONTAINING
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS.

INTENDED FOR VIVÂ VOCE PRACTICE, AND TO BE REPEATED,
SOMETIMES IN FRENCH AND SOMETIMES IN ENGLISH

1^{re} Leçon.

1 A quelle heure vous levez-vous en été ?	<i>At what o'clock do you get up in summer ?</i>
Je me lève à sept heures	<i>I get up at seven o'clock</i>
2 Avez-vous déjeuné ?	<i>Have you breakfasted ?</i>
Pas encore ; je vais déjeuner	<i>Not yet ; I am going to breakfast</i>
3 Jean, où est mon habit ?	<i>John, where is my coat ?</i>
Il est dans votre chambre	<i>It is in your room</i>
4 L'avez-vous brossé ?	<i>Have you brushed it ?</i>
Oui, monsieur, et le gilet aussi	<i>Yes, sir, and the waistcoat also</i>
5 Où avez-vous mis mon col ?	<i>Where have you put my collar ?</i>
Il est dans la boîte	<i>It is in the box</i>
6 Où allez-vous ?	<i>Where are you going ?</i>
Je vais à l'école	<i>I am going to school</i>
7 Avez-vous vos livres ?	<i>Have you your books ?</i>
Mon frère les a pris	<i>My brother has taken them</i>
8 Quels livres avez-vous ?	<i>What books have you ?</i>
J'ai César, Virgile et Homère	<i>I have Cæsar, Virgil, and Homer</i>
9 Traduisez-vous déjà le grec ?	<i>Do you already translate Greek ?</i>
Je ne fais que de commencer	<i>I have only just commenced</i>
10 Aimez-vous le latin ?	<i>Do you like Latin ?</i>
Oui ; mais j'aime mieux le grec	<i>Yes ; but I like Greek best</i>

2^e Leçon.

1 Où est votre maître ?	<i>Where is your master ?</i>
Il est dans le jardin	<i>He is in the garden</i>
2 Que fait-il ?	<i>What is he doing ?</i>
Il taille quelques arbres	<i>He is pruning some trees</i>
3 Pourquoi n'y allez-vous pas aussi ?	<i>Why do you not go there too ?</i>
Parce que je n'ai pas fini mon thème	<i>Because I have not finished my exercise</i>
4 Aurez-vous un congé demain, s'il fait beau ?	<i>Shall you have a holiday to-morrow if it is fine ?</i>
Je ne sais pas	<i>I do not know</i>
5 Quel jour sortez-vous ?	<i>What day do you go out ?</i>
Le premier jeudi du mois	<i>The first Thursday in the month</i>
6 Mes bottes sont-elles cirées ?	<i>Are my boots cleaned ?</i>
Oui, monsieur ; les voilà	<i>Yes, sir ; there they are</i>
7 Avez-vous vu ma canne ?	<i>Have you seen my stick ?</i>
Elle est dans le vestibule	<i>It is in the hall</i>
8 Quand reviendrez-vous ?	<i>When will you return ?</i>
Je reviendrai ce soir	<i>I shall return this evening</i>
9 Vous attendrai-je pour dîner ?	<i>Shall I wait dinner for you ?</i>
Non, ne m'attendez pas	<i>No, do not wait for me</i>
10 Où dinerez-vous ?	<i>Where will you dine ?</i>
Je dînerai au restaurant	<i>I shall dine at the restaurant</i>

3^e Leçon.

1 Avez-vous été en Suisse ?	<i>Have you been to Switzerland ?</i>
J'y ai demeuré six ans	<i>I lived there six years</i>
2 Quelle est la plus haute montagne des Alpes ?	<i>Which is the highest mountain of the Alps ?</i>
C'est le Mont-Blanc	<i>Mont-Blanc</i>
3 Pourquoi l'appelle-t-on ainsi ?	<i>Why is it so called ?</i>
Parce qu'il est toujours couvert de neige	<i>Because it is always covered with snow</i>
4 Avez-vous été sur le sommet ?	<i>Have you been on the top ?</i>
Non ; je n'ai jamais essayé	<i>No ; I have never tried</i>
5 Faut-il longtemps pour y monter ?	<i>Does it take long to ascend it ?</i>
Il faut deux jours	<i>It takes two days</i>
6 Quelle en est la hauteur ?	<i>What is its height ?</i>
Il s'élève à 4,800 mètres au-dessus du niveau de la mer	<i>It rises 4,800 metres above the level of the sea</i>
7 Qui a découvert l'Amérique ?	<i>Who discovered America ?</i>
Christophe Colomb	<i>Christopher Columbus</i>
8 Savez-vous où naquit ce grand navigateur ?	<i>Do you know where that great navigator was born ?</i>
Il naquit à Gènes, en 1441	<i>He was born at Genoa in 1441</i>

9	Savez-vous la géographie ? Je l'apprends tous les jours	<i>Do you understand geography ? I learn it every day</i>
10	La trouvez-vous difficile ? Non, je la trouve très-facile	<i>Do you think it difficult ? No, I think it is very easy</i>
11	Parle-t-on français en Suisse ? Oui, dans plusieurs cantons	<i>Do they speak French in Switzer- land ? Yes, in several districts</i>
12	Quelle langue parle-t-on ail- leurs ? L'allemand et l'italien	<i>What language do they speak in other parts ? German and Italian</i>

4^e Leçon.

1	Quand Napoléon III est-il né ? Il est né à Paris, en 1808	<i>When was Napoleon III. born ? He was born in Paris, in 1808</i>
2	Ne fut-il pas fait prisonnier à Boulogne en 1840 ? Si, et il passa six ans en prison à Ham	<i>Was he not taken prisoner at Boulogne in 1840 ? Yes, and he spent six years in pri- son at Ham</i>
3	Quand fut-il élu empereur ? Il fut élu par le peuple, le 2 décembre 1852	<i>When was he elected emperor ? He was elected by the people on the 2nd December, 1852</i>
4	Qui a-t-il épousé ? La comtesse Eugénie de Mon- tijo de Téba	<i>Whom did he marry ? The Countess Eugénie de Montijo, de Téba</i>
5	De quelle nation est-elle ? Elle est espagnole	<i>Of what nation is she ? She is a Spaniard</i>
6	L'avez-vous jamais vue ? Oui ; elle est très-belle	<i>Have you ever seen her ? Yes ; she is very handsome</i>
7	Ont-ils des enfants ? Ils ont un fils, qui est né en 1856	<i>Have they any children ? They have a son, who was born in 1856</i>
8	Comment s'appelle-t-il ? On l'appelle le prince Im- périal	<i>What is his name ? He is called the Prince Imperial</i>
9	Où demeure Napoléon III ? Ordinairement aux Tuileries	<i>Where does Napoleon III. live ? Generally at the Tuileries</i>
10	Quelle est la population de Paris ? Elle est de plus d'un million	<i>What is the population of Paris ? It is more than a million</i>
11	Sur quel fleuve est situé Paris ? Sur la Seine, qui le divise en deux	<i>On what river is Paris situated ? On the Seine, which divides it in two</i>
12	Dans quelle mer se jette la Seine ? Dans l'Océan, au port du Havre	<i>Into what sea does the river Seine fall ? Into the ocean, at the port of Havre</i>

5^e Leçon.

1 Apprenez-vous le français ?	<i>Do you learn French ?</i>
Non ; mais je vais l'apprendre	<i>No ; but I am going to learn it</i>
2 Quand le commencerez-vous ?	<i>When will you begin it ?</i>
Je le commencerai très-probablement le mois prochain	<i>I shall very probably begin it next month</i>
3 L'avez-vous déjà commencé ?	<i>Have you already begun it ?</i>
Je l'ai commencé le mois dernier, avec mon frère	<i>I began it last month, with my brother</i>
4 Le trouvez-vous difficile ?	<i>Do you think it difficult ?</i>
Oui ; mais je l'aime beaucoup	<i>Yes ; but I like it very much</i>
5 Combien de leçons par semaine prenez-vous ?	<i>How many lessons a week do you take ?</i>
J'en prends deux	<i>I take two</i>
6 Qui vous enseigne le français ?	<i>Who teaches you French ?</i>
C'est un professeur de Paris	<i>A professor from Paris</i>
7 Avez-vous une grammaire ?	<i>Have you a grammar ?</i>
J'en ai acheté une hier	<i>I bought one yesterday</i>
8 Avez-vous des livres français ?	<i>Have you any French books ?</i>
J'ai toutes les œuvres de Lamartine et de Victor Hugo	<i>I have all the works of Lamartine and Victor Hugo</i>
9 Parlez-vous déjà français ?	<i>Do you already speak French ?</i>
Je commence à parler un peu	<i>I begin to speak a little</i>
10 Qui parle français avec vous ?	<i>Who speaks French with you ?</i>
Mon maître, et aussi ma mère	<i>My master, and also my mother</i>
11 Madame votre mère est-elle	<i>Is your mother French ?</i>
Non ; mais elle a habité Paris six ans	<i>No ; but she lived in Paris for six years</i>
12 Aimerez-vous aller à Paris ?	<i>Should you like to go to Paris ?</i>
J'espère y aller l'été prochain	<i>I hope to go there next summer</i>

6^e Leçon.

1 Quand serons-nous à Paris ?	<i>When shall we be in Paris ?</i>
Nous y arriverons avant midi	<i>We shall arrive there before twelve</i>
2 Sommes-nous arrivés ?	<i>Have we arrived ?</i>
Nous avons encore une demi-heure	<i>We have half an hour more</i>
3 L'hôtel est-il loin de la gare ?	<i>Is the hotel far from the terminus ?</i>
Il y a dix minutes de marche	<i>It is ten minutes' walk</i>
4 A quelle heure dînerons-nous ?	<i>At what o'clock shall we dine ?</i>
Le dîner est à six heures	<i>The dinner is at six</i>
5 Dinons-nous à table-d'hôte ?	<i>Do we dine at table-d'hôte ?</i>
Comme vous voudrez	<i>As you like</i>
6 Quel est le prix du dîner ?	<i>What is the price of the dinner ?</i>
Je crois que c'est six ou sept francs par tête	<i>I think it is six or seven francs a head</i>
7 Garçon, où est ma chambre ?	<i>Waiter, where is my room ?</i>
Je vais vous y conduire	<i>I will take you to it</i>

8 A quel étage est-elle ? Elle est au troisième étage	<i>On what floor is it ? It is on the third floor</i>
9 Voulez-vous monter ma malle et mon carton à chapeau ? Oui, monsieur, je vais les monter dans un instant	<i>Will you carry up my trunk and hat-box ? Yes, sir, I will take them up in a moment</i>
10 Les fenêtres de ma chambre donnent-elles sur la rue ? Oui, monsieur, et vous avez une vue magnifique	<i>Do the windows of my room open on the street ? Yes, sir, and you have a magnifi- cent view</i>
11 Quel est ce jardin en face ? C'est le jardin des Tuileries	<i>What garden is that opposite ? The garden of the Tuileries</i>
12 Est-il ouvert au public ? Oui, monsieur, tout le monde peut y aller	<i>Is it open to the public ? Yes, sir, everybody may go there</i>

7^e Leçon.

1 A quelle heure se lève-t-on ? Il faut se lever de bonne heure	<i>At what o'clock shall we get up ? We must rise early</i>
2 Que verrons-nous demain ? Nous tâcherons de voir quel- ques monuments	<i>What shall we see to-morrow ? We will try to see some of the pub- lic buildings</i>
3 Quels sont les plus remar- quables ? Le Louvre et les Tuileries	<i>Which are the most remarkable ? The Louvre and the Tuileries</i>
4 N'y a-t-il pas le Palais Royal ? Oui, et bien d'autres encore	<i>Is there not the Palais Royal ? Yes, and many more</i>
5 Quel est ce beau dôme que nous voyons là-bas ? C'est le dôme des Invalides	<i>What fine dome is that we see yonder ? The dome of the Invalides</i>
6 N'est-ce pas aux Invalides que sont les vieux soldats ? Oui ; c'est à Louis XIV que nous le devons	<i>Are not the old soldiers at the Inva- lides ? Yes ; and we owe its foundation to Louis XIV.</i>
7 Avez-vous vu l'église de la Madeleine ? Non, pas encore ; mais j'espère la voir aujourd'hui	<i>Have you seen the Magdalene Church ? No, not yet ; but I hope to see it to-day</i>
8 Voyez-vous ce bel édifice à colonnes ? Oui ; je devine que c'est l'é- glise	<i>Do you see that fine building with columns ? Yes ; I guess it is the church</i>
9 Quelle est cette longue rue devant nous ? C'est le boulevard des Italiens	<i>What is this long street before us ? The boulevard des Italiens</i>
10 Que de monde assis sur les trottoirs ! Ce sont des gens qui prennent leur tasse de café	<i>How many people are sitting along the pavement ! They are persons taking their cup of coffee</i>

11	Quelle est cette colonne ? C'est la colonne Vendôme, avec la statue de Napoléon		<i>What column is that ? The Vendôme Column, with the statue of Napoleon</i>
12	De quoi est-elle faite ? • Elle est de bronze, faite avec des canons		<i>What is it made of ? It is of bronze, made from cannon</i>

8^e Leçon.

1	N'y a-t-il pas d'autres monu- ments à voir ? Il y a encore le Luxembourg, le Panthéon, la Bourse, l'Hôtel-de-Ville, l'Arc de l'Etoile, l'Eglise de Notre- Dame, &c.		<i>Are there not other buildings to be seen ? There are the Luxembourg, the Pantheon, the Exchange, the Town Hall, the Arc de l'E- toile, the Church of Notre- Dame, &c.</i>
2	Quelles sont les plus belles promenades de Paris ? Celles des Champs-Élysées et du Bois de Boulogne		<i>Which are the finest walks in Paris ? Those of the Champs-Élysées and the Bois de Boulogne</i>
3	Irons-nous voir le Bois de Boulogne ? Nous irons demain		<i>Shall we go and see the Bois de Boulogne ? We will go to-morrow</i>
4	Avez-vous vu le lac ? Non ; on dit qu'il est très-beau		<i>Have you seen the lake ? No ; they say it is very beautiful</i>
5	Irons-nous à pied ? Oui ; la promenade est déli- cieuse quand il fait beau		<i>Shall we walk there ? Yes ; the walk is delightful when it is fine weather</i>
6	A quelle heure irons-nous ? Nous partirons après déjeuner		<i>At what o'clock shall we go ? We will go after breakfast</i>
7	Êtes-vous fatigué ? Non, pas le moins du monde		<i>Are you tired ? No, not the least in the world</i>
8	Avez-vous soif ? Je boirais bien un verre de vin, ou de la limonade		<i>Are you thirsty ? I should like to drink a glass of wine, or some lemonade</i>
9	Avez-vous faim ? Je commence d'avoir appetit		<i>Are you hungry ? I begin to have an appetite</i>
10	A quelle heure dinerons-nous ? Nous dînerons à sept heures		<i>At what o'clock shall we dine ? We shall dine at seven o'clock</i>
11	Qui dinera avec nous ? Deux de mes amis		<i>Who will dine with us ? Two friends of mine</i>
12	Sont-ils Français ou Anglais ? L'un est Italien, l'autre est Belge		<i>Are they French or English ? One is an Italian, the other a Belgian</i>

9^e Leçon.

1	Avez-vous été à Versailles ? Non ; mais j'ai l'intention d'y aller après demain		<i>Have you been to Versailles ? No ; but I intend to go there the day after to-morrow</i>

- 2 Par où y va-t-on de Paris ?
On peut y aller par deux chemins de fer
*How do you go there from Paris ?
You can go there by two railways*
- 3 Combien y a-t-il de Paris ?
Il y a vingt kilomètres
*How far is it from Paris ?
It is twenty kilometres*
- 4 Qu'y a-t-il à voir à Versailles ?
Il y a le jardin avec ses eaux, et le château bâti par Louis XIV
*What is to be seen at Versailles ?
There is the garden with its fountains, and the castle built by Louis XIV.*
- 5 Le château est-il habité ?
Non ; c'est aujourd'hui un musée de tableaux
*Is the castle inhabited ?
No ; at present it is a museum for pictures*
- 6 Quels tableaux y remarque-t-on ?
Les plus remarquables sont les batailles peintes par le célèbre Horace Vernet
*What pictures are to be seen there ?
The most remarkable are the battles painted by the celebrated Horace Vernet*
- 7 Voulez-vous venir à la campagne avec nous ?
J'irai avec plaisir s'il fait beau temps
*Will you come into the country with us ?
I will go with pleasure if it is fine weather*
- 8 Où irons-nous demain ?
Je vous mènerai sur les bords de la Seine
*Where shall we go to-morrow ?
I will take you to the banks of the Seine*
- 9 Aimez-vous la pêche ?
Oui, je l'aime assez, mais j'aime mieux la chasse
*Do you like fishing ?
Yes, I like it pretty well, but I like shooting best*
- 10 Votre frère ne viendra-t-il pas avec nous ?
Je crains qu'il n'ait pas le temps de venir demain
*Will not your brother come with us ?
I fear he will not have time to come to-morrow*
- 11 Ne trouvez-vous pas qu'il fait bien chaud ce matin ?
Asseyons-nous sous ce chêne
*Do you not think it is very warm this morning ?
Let us sit under that oak-tree*
- 12 Entendez-vous le tonnerre ?
Oui, je crois qu'il tonne
*Do you hear the thunder ?
Yes, I think it thunders*
- 13 Avez-vous peur de l'orage ?
Je n'aime pas être sous un arbre quand il fait des éclairs
*Are you frightened at a storm ?
I do not like to be under a tree when it lightens*

10^e Leçon.

- 1 Apprenez-vous la géographie à votre école ?
Oui, et j'ai commencé l'histoire la semaine dernière
*Do you learn geography at your school ?
Yes, and I began history last week*
- 2 Quelle histoire apprenez-vous ?
L'histoire d'Angleterre
*What history do you learn ?
The history of England*
- 3 Aimez-vous mieux les mathématiques que l'histoire ?
Non ; je préfère l'histoire
*Do you like mathematics better than history ?
No ; I prefer history*

4 Prenez-vous des leçons de dessin ?	<i>Do you take lessons in drawing ?</i>
J'en prends trois par semaine	<i>I take three a week</i>
5 Quand avez-vous votre examen ?	<i>When shall you have your examination ?</i>
Il commence lundi prochain	<i>It begins next Monday</i>
6 Combien de jours dure-t-il ?	<i>How many days does it last ?</i>
Il dure quinze jours	<i>It lasts a fortnight</i>
7 Quand finira-t-il ?	<i>When will it be finished ?</i>
De samedi prochain en huit	<i>Next Saturday week</i>
8 Quel âge a la reine Victoria ?	<i>How old is Queen Victoria ?</i>
Elle est née en 1819	<i>She was born in 1819</i>
9 Combien a-t-elle d'enfants ?	<i>How many children has she ?</i>
Je crois qu'elle en a neuf	<i>I believe she has nine</i>
10 Quel est l'aîné des fils ?	<i>Who is the eldest son ?</i>
C'est le prince de Galles	<i>The Prince of Wales</i>
11 Quand est-il né ?	<i>When was he born ?</i>
Il est né en 1841	<i>He was born in 1841</i>
12 Quand s'est-il marié ?	<i>When was he married ?</i>
Au mois de mars 1863	<i>In the month of March, 1863</i>
13 Qui a-t-il épousé ?	<i>Whom did he marry ?</i>
La jeune princesse Alexandra de Danemarck	<i>The young Princess Alexandra of Denmark</i>
14 Quand le prince Albert mourut-il ?	<i>When did Prince Albert die ?</i>
Il mourut en 1861	<i>He died in 1861</i>

11^e Leçon.

1 Quels sont les meilleurs vins de France ?	<i>Which are the best French wines ?</i>
Le Bourgogne, le Bordeaux, et le Champagne	<i>Burgundy, Bordeaux, and Champagne</i>
2 Que boit-on en Angleterre ?	<i>What do they drink in England ?</i>
La boisson ordinaire est la bière	<i>The ordinary drink is beer</i>
3 La bière anglaise est-elle bonne ?	<i>Is the English beer good ?</i>
C'est la meilleure que je connaisse	<i>It is the best I know</i>
4 Boit-on de la bière en France ?	<i>Do they drink beer in France ?</i>
Un peu, mais le vin est la boisson ordinaire	<i>A little, but wine is the ordinary drink</i>
5 Quel vin préférez-vous ?	<i>What wine do you prefer ?</i>
Le Bourgogne est mon vin favori	<i>Burgundy is my favourite wine</i>
6 N'aimez-vous pas le Champagne ?	<i>Do you not like Champagne ?</i>
Si ; mais il me monte à la tête	<i>Yes ; but it gets into my head</i>

7	Ce vin-là est-il cher ? Il se vend de 2 à 5 francs la bouteille	<i>Is that wine expensive ? It is sold from two to five francs a bottle</i>
8	Où sommes-nous à présent ? Nous sommes en Angleterre	<i>Where are we now ? We are in England</i>
9	Où demeurez-vous ? Je demeure tout près du Palais de Cristal	<i>Where do you live ? I live quite close to the Crystal Palace</i>
10	Y allez-vous souvent ? J'y vais presque tous les jours	<i>Do you often go there ? I go almost every day</i>
11	Avez-vous un billet de saison ? J'en ai cinq pour ma famille	<i>Have you a season-ticket ? I have five for my family</i>
12	Y a-t-il des concerts ? Il y en a deux par jour	<i>Are there any concerts there ? There are two every day</i>
13	La musique est-elle bonne ? C'est une des meilleures de Londres	<i>Is the band good ? It is one of the best in London</i>
14	Les jardins sont-ils beaux ? Oui, très-beaux ; je m'y pro- mène souvent	<i>Are the gardens pretty ? Yes, very pretty ; I often take a walk there</i>

12. Leçon.

1	N'y a-t-il pas un lac ? Il y en a un très-joli, avec une foule de petits bateaux	<i>Is there not a lake ? There is a very pretty one, with a number of little boats</i>
2	Les eaux jouent-elles souvent ? En été elles jouent presque toutes les semaines	<i>Do the fountains often play ? In summer they play almost every week</i>
3	Y va-t-il beaucoup de monde ? J'y ai vu 93 mille personnes à la fois	<i>Do many people go there ? I have seen 93,000 people there at one time</i>
4	Quel est le prix d'un billet de saison ? Il est d'une guinée par an	<i>What is the price of a season- ticket ? It is a guinea a year</i>
5	Depuis quand le palais est-il ouvert ? Il fut ouvert en 1855 par la reine Victoria	<i>How long has the palace been open ? It was opened in 1855 by Queen Victoria</i>
6	Est-il loin de Londres ? Il en est à six milles	<i>Is it far from London ? It is six miles from it</i>
7	Combien faut-il de temps pour y aller ? Il faut à peu près vingt mi- nutes en chemin de fer	<i>How long does it take to go there ? It takes about twenty minutes by railway</i>
8	A quelle heure partons-nous ? Par le convoi de dix heures	<i>At what o'clock shall we go ? By the ten o'clock train</i>
9	Avez-vous une montre ? J'en ai une dans ma chambre	<i>Have you a watch ? I have one in my room</i>
10	Va-t-elle bien ? Je crois qu'elle avance un peu	<i>Does it go right ? I think it is a little fast</i>

11 La vôtre ne retarde-t-elle pas ?	<i>Is not yours slow ?</i>
Elle retarde de cinq minutes	<i>It is five minutes slow</i>
12 Est-ce une montre de Genève ?	<i>Is it a Geneva watch ?</i>
Non ; c'est une montre anglaise	<i>No ; it is an English watch</i>
13 Combien vous a-t-elle coûté ?	<i>How much did it cost you ?</i>
Elle m'a coûté douze livres	<i>It cost me twelve pounds</i>
14 Où avez-vous acheté la chaîne ?	<i>Where did you buy the chain ?</i>
Je l'ai achetée à Paris	<i>I bought it in Paris</i>

13^e Leçon.

1 Avez-vous vu l'Exposition de 1862 ?	<i>Did you see the Exhibition of 1862 ?</i>
Oui ; j'y suis allé plusieurs fois	<i>Yes ; I went there several times</i>
2 Qu'en pensez-vous ?	<i>What do you think of it ?</i>
C'était une belle exposition	<i>It was a fine exhibition</i>
3 Aimez-vous le bâtiment ?	<i>Do you like the building ?</i>
Je ne l'aime pas du tout	<i>I do not like it at all</i>
4 Sur quel fleuve est Londres ?	<i>On what river is London ?</i>
Sur la Tamise	<i>On the Thames</i>
5 Où la Tamise a-t-elle son embouchure ?	<i>Where has the Thames its mouth ?</i>
Dans la mer du Nord	<i>In the North Sea</i>
6 Porte-t-elle vaisseau ?	<i>Is it navigable ?</i>
Oui ; les vaisseaux arrivent jusqu'au pont de Londres	<i>Yes ; ships proceed as far as London Bridge</i>
7 Avez-vous été à Windsor ?	<i>Have you been to Windsor ?</i>
Oui ; j'ai visité le château royal et les eaux de Virginia	<i>Yes ; I have visited the royal castle and Virginia Water</i>
8 Quelle est la seconde ville de France ?	<i>Which is the second town in France ?</i>
Lyon, célèbre par ses soieries	<i>Lyons, celebrated for its silk-manufactories</i>
9 Quels sont les deux plus grands ports de mer marchands ?	<i>Which are the two greatest sea-ports for commerce ?</i>
Marseille au sud, le Havre au nord	<i>Marseilles to the south and Havre to the north</i>
10 Quel est le principal commerce de Bordeaux ?	<i>What is the principal trade of Bordeaux ?</i>
C'est le commerce des vins	<i>The wine trade</i>
11 Quelle est la capitale actuelle de la Russie ?	<i>What is the present capital of Russia ?</i>
St. Pétersbourg, situé sur la Néva	<i>St. Petersburg, situated on the Neva</i>
12 Qui a fondé St. Pétersbourg ?	<i>Who founded St. Petersburg ?</i>
Il fut fondé par Pierre le-Grand en 1703	<i>It was founded by Peter the Great in 1703</i>
13 Quelle était l'ancienne capitale de la Russie ?	<i>What was the ancient capital of Russia ?</i>
Moscou, pris par les Français, et brûlé par les Russes en 1812	<i>Moscow, taken by the French, and burnt by the Russians in 1812</i>

- 14 **Fait-il froid en Russie ?** *Is it cold in Russia ?*
Oui ; le froid y est excessif *Yes ; the cold is extreme there*

12. Leçon.

- 1 **Avez-vous froid ?** *Are you cold ?*
Je n'ai pas très-chaud *I am not very warm*
- 2 **Voulez-vous un peu de feu ?** *Will you have some fire lighted ?*
Non, merci, ce n'est pas nécessaire *No, thank you, it is not necessary*
- 3 **Que brûle-t-on en France ?** *What do they burn in France ?*
On brûle beaucoup de bois *They burn a great deal of wood*
- 4 **Le bois est-il cher ?** *Is fuel dear ?*
Oui, très-cher, surtout à Paris *Yes, very dear, especially in Paris*
- 5 **Que brûle-t-on en Angleterre ?** *What do they burn in England ?*
On ne brûle que du charbon *They burn coals only*
- 6 **Le charbon est-il cher ?** *Are coals dear ?*
Oui, c'est une grande dépense *Yes, they are a great expense*
- 7 **Aimez-vous le feu de charbon ?** *Do you like a coal fire ?*
Je préfère le feu de bois *I prefer a wood fire*
- 8 **Y a-t-il des houillères en France ?** *Are there any coal-mines in France ?*
Oui, mais moins qu'en Angleterre *Yes, but fewer than in England*
- 9 **Avez-vous un cheval ?** *Have you a horse ?*
Non ; je n'ai que des chiens *No ; I have only dogs*
- 10 **Sont-ce des chiens de chasse ?** *Are they hunting dogs ?*
J'ai trois chiens d'arrêt et deux chiens courants *I have three pointers and two hounds*
- 11 **Avez-vous un bon fusil ?** *Have you a good gun ?*
J'en ai un qui m'a coûté cinq cents francs *I have one which cost me five hundred francs*
- 12 **Y a-t-il du gibier ici ?** *Is there any game here ?*
Il n'y en a pas beaucoup cette année *There is not much this year*
- 13 **Quel gibier avez-vous ?** *What game have you ?*
Des perdrix, des cailles, des faisans, et des lièvres *Partridges, quails, pheasants, and hares*
- 14 **Aimez-vous la chasse au renard ?** *Do you like fox-hunting ?*
Je préfère la chasse au loup *I prefer wolf-hunting*
- 15 **Y a-t-il des loups en France ?** *Are there wolves in France ?*
Il y en a beaucoup dans les forêts et les montagnes *There are many in the forests and the mountains*
- 16 **Sont-ils dangereux ?** *Are they dangerous ?*
Quelquefois, quand ils sont affamés *Sometimes, when they are famished*

15^e Leçon.

1 Quand irez-vous au bord de la mer ?	<i>When shall you go to the sea-side?</i>
J'irai au mois d'août prochain	<i>I shall go next August</i>
2 Prenez-vous des bains de mer ?	<i>Do you take sea-baths ?</i>
J'en prends un tous les jours	<i>I take one every day</i>
3 Savez-vous nager ?	<i>Can you swim ?</i>
Je commence à nager un peu	<i>I begin to swim a little</i>
4 Prenez-vous des leçons de natation tous les jours ?	<i>Do you take swimming lessons every day ?</i>
J'en prends trois par semaine	<i>I take three a week</i>
5 Combien donnez-vous par leçon ?	<i>How much do you give for a lesson ?</i>
Je donne vingt-cinq francs pour dix leçons	<i>I give twenty-five francs for ten lessons</i>
6 Y a-t-il beaucoup de monde cette année ?	<i>Are there many visitors this year ?</i>
Moins que l'année dernière	<i>Fewer than last year</i>
7 Connaissez-vous quelques familles ?	<i>Do you know any families ?</i>
J'en connais deux ou trois	<i>I know two or three</i>
8 Y a-t-il des soirées ?	<i>Are there any evening parties ?</i>
Il y a un bal tous les jeudis	<i>There is a ball every Thursday</i>
9 Aimerez-vous à être marin ?	<i>Should you like to be a sailor ?</i>
Non ; quoique j'aime beaucoup la mer	<i>No ; although I like the sea very much</i>
10 Monsieur votre frère n'est-il pas dans la marine royale ?	<i>Is not your brother in the royal navy ?</i>
Si, et il vient d'être nommé capitaine	<i>Yes, he is, and he has just been made a captain</i>
11 Sur quel vaisseau est-il ?	<i>On board what ship is he ?</i>
Il est sur la <i>Gloire</i>	<i>He is on board the Gloire</i>
12 Où est son vaisseau à présent ?	<i>Where is his ship now ?</i>
Il est en Chine	<i>She is in China</i>
13 Quels sont les principaux ports militaires de la France ?	<i>What are the principal military ports of France ?</i>
Brest, Cherbourg, Toulon, et Rochefort	<i>Brest, Cherbourg, Toulon, and Rochefort</i>
14 Où sont situés ces ports ?	<i>Where are those ports situated ?</i>
Brest, Cherbourg, et Rochefort sont sur l'Océan, et Toulon sur la Méditerranée	<i>Brest, Cherbourg, and Rochefort are on the ocean, and Toulon is on the Mediterranean</i>
15 La marine anglaise est-elle bonne ?	<i>Is the English navy good ?</i>
C'est la meilleure du monde	<i>It is the best in the world</i>
16 Où Napoléon I se distinguait-il d'abord ?	<i>Where did Napoleon I. first distinguish himself ?</i>
Au siège de Toulon	<i>At the siege of Toulon</i>

16^e Leçon.

1 Où Napoléon I naquit-il ? Dans l'île de Corse, en 1769	<i>Where was Napoleon I. born ? In the island of Corsica, in 1769</i>
2 A qui appartient la Corse ? Elle appartient aux Français	<i>To whom does Corsica belong ? It belongs to the French</i>
3 Quand vint-il en France ? Il entra à l'école de Brienne en 1779, à l'âge de dix ans	<i>When did he come to France ? He entered the school at Brienne in 1779, at the age of ten years</i>
4 Quand entra-t-il dans l'armée ? Il fut nommé lieutenant en 1785	<i>When did he enter the army ? He was appointed a lieutenant in 1785</i>
5 Quel âge avait-il alors ? Il n'avait que seize ans	<i>How old was he then ? He was only sixteen years old</i>
6 A quel âge fut-il nommé général ? A vingt-quatre ans	<i>At what age was he made a gene- ral ? At twenty-four years of age</i>
7 Qui était sa première femme ? Joséphine de Beauharnais	<i>Who was his first wife ? Josephine of Beauharnais</i>
8 Qui épousa-t-il ensuite ? Marie-Louise, fille de l'em- pereur d'Autriche	<i>Whom did he afterwards marry ? Marie-Louise, daughter of the Emperor of Austria</i>
9 Napoléon eut-il des enfants ? Il eut un fils, qui mourut jeune	<i>Had Napoleon any children ? He had a son, who died young</i>
10 Comment s'appelait-il ? Il eut le titre de roi de Rome	<i>What was his name ? He had the title of King of Rome</i>
11 A quel âge mourut-il ? A l'âge de dix-huit ans	<i>At what age did he die ? At the age of eighteen</i>
12 Napoléon avait-il des frères ? Il en avait quatre, dont trois furent rois	<i>Had Napoleon any brothers ? He had four, three of whom were kings</i>
13 Dans quelle année mourut- il ? Il mourut à Sainte-Hélène, en 1821	<i>In what year did he die ? He died at St. Helena, in 1821</i>
14 Où sont aujourd'hui ses cen- dres ? Elles furent apportées à Paris en 1840	<i>Where are his ashes now ? They were brought to Paris in 1840</i>
15 L'empereur Napoléon III est- il son parent ? C'est son neveu	<i>Is the Emperor Napoleon III. re- lated to him ? He is his nephew</i>
16 De qui est-il fils ? Il est le fils de Louis, roi de Hollande	<i>Whose son is he ? He is the son of Louis, King of Holland</i>

17^e Leçon.

1 Quel est le roi des animaux ? C'est le lion	<i>Which is the king of animals ? The lion</i>

- 2 Où trouve-t-on les plus beaux lions ?
 Dans les montagnes de l'Afrique
*Where are the finest lions found ?
 In the mountains of Africa*
- 3 N'y en a-t-il pas dans les environs d'Alger ?
 Si ; les plus beaux, dit-on, habitent l'Atlas
*Are there not some in the neighbourhood of Algiers ?
 Yes ; the finest, are said to live in the Atlas*
- 4 A qui appartient l'Algérie ?
 Elle est aux Français
*To whom does Algeria belong ?
 It belongs to the French*
- 5 Depuis quand la possèdent-ils ?
 Ils en firent la conquête en 1830
*How long have they possessed it ?
 They conquered it in 1830*
- 6 Qui gouvernait ce pays avant eux ?
 Un Pacha, nommé Dey
*Who governed that country before them ?
 A Pacha, called the Dey*
- 7 Où est le Nil ?
 C'est un grand fleuve qui traverse l'Egypte
*Where is the Nile ?
 It is a large river which traverses Egypt*
- 8 Quelle est la capitale de l'Egypte ?
 Le Caire, situé près de la rive droite du Nil
*What is the capital of Egypt ?
 Cairo, situated near the right bank of the Nile*
- 9 Ne s'est-il pas donné une grande bataille dans les plaines de l'Egypte ?
 C'est là que se donna la bataille des Pyramides
*Was not a great battle fought in the plains of Egypt ?
 It was there the battle of the Pyramids was fought*
- 10 Par qui fut-elle gagnée ?
 Par les Français, commandés par Bonaparte
*By whom was it gained ?
 By the French, under the command of Bonaparte*
- 11 Quel est le plus utile des animaux en Egypte ?
 C'est le chameau
*Which is the most useful animal in Egypt ?
 The camel*
- 12 Où trouve-t-on les éléphants ?
 Dans les grandes Indes
*Where are elephants found ?
 In the East Indies*
- 13 L'éléphant est-il fort ?
 C'est le plus fort et le plus grand des animaux
*Is the elephant strong ?
 It is the strongest and largest of animals*
- 14 D'où viennent les plus beaux tigres ?
 Ils viennent du Bengal
*Where do the finest tigers come from ?
 They come from Bengal*
- 15 Aimez-vous la peau du tigre ?
 Oui ; elle est magnifique
*Do you like the skin of the tiger ?
 Yes ; it is beautiful*
- 16 Quel est le roi des oiseaux ?
 C'est l'aigle
*Which is the king of birds ?
 The eagle*
- 17 Y a-t-il des aigles en France ?
 Il y en a beaucoup dans les Alpes
*Are there any eagles in France ?
 There are many in the Alps*
- 18 Y a-t-il aussi des ours ?
 Oui ; on en trouve dans les montagnes
*Are there some bears also ?
 Yes ; some are found in the mountains*

- 19 Quels sont les trois animaux
les plus utiles en Europe ?
Le bœuf, le cheval, et le chien
- 20 Quelle espèce de chiens pré-
férez-vous ?
J'aime beaucoup les chiens de
Terre-Neuve

*Which are the three most useful
animals in Europe ?
The ox, the horse, and the dog
What sort of dogs do you prefer ?
I like the Newfoundland dog very
much*

18^e Leçon.

- 1 Quand l'imprimerie fut-elle
inventée ?
Elle fut inventée au XV^e
siècle
- 2 A qui attribue-t-on l'invention
de l'imprimerie ?
A Jean Gutenberg de Mayence
- 3 Qui a inventé la poudre à ca-
non ?
Un moine allemand, nommé
Schwartz
- 4 Quels sont les deux plus
grands poètes français du
dix-septième siècle ?
Le grand Corneille et Racine
- 5 Connaissez-vous les comédies
de Molière ?
J'en ai lu plusieurs
- 6 Qui était La Fontaine ?
C'était un célèbre fabuliste
- 7 Avez-vous lu ses fables ?
Oui, je les ai toutes lues, et j'en
sais plusieurs par cœur
- 8 Lesquelles savez-vous ?
La Cigale et la Fourmi, le
Renard et le Corbeau, le
Chêne et le Roseau, et plu-
sieurs autres
- 9 Quels étaient les trois plus
grands prédicateurs du
siècle de Louis XIV ?
Bossuet, Bourdaloue, et Mas-
sillon
- 10 Qui a écrit le *Télémaque* ?
Fénelon, évêque de Cambrai
- 11 Quel est le plus grand critique
de ce siècle ?
Boileau, auteur de l'*Art Poé-
tique*

When was printing invented ?

*It was invented in the XVth cen-
tury
To whom is the invention of print-
ing attributed ?
To John Gutenberg of Mayence
Who invented gunpowder ?*

A German monk, named Schwartz

*Who were the two greatest French
poets of the seventeenth century ?*

*The great Corneille and Racine
Do you know Molière's comedies ?*

*I have read several of them
Who was La Fontaine ?
A celebrated fable writer
Have you read his fables ?
Yes, I have read them all, and I
know several by heart
Which do you know ?*

*The Grasshopper and the Ant, the
Fox and the Crow, the Oak and
the Reed, and several others*

*Who were the three greatest
preachers of the age of Louis
XIV. ?*

*Bossuet, Bourdaloue, and Massil-
lon*

Who wrote Telemachus ?

*Fénelon, Bishop of Cambray
Who was the greatest critic of
that age ?*

*Boileau, the author of the Art
Poétique*

- 12 Quels sont les quatre principaux écrivains du XVIII^e siècle ?
Voltaire, J.-Jacques Rousseau, Montesquieu, et Buffon
- 13 Voltaire a-t-il écrit en prose ou en vers ?
Il est tout à la fois poète, historien, philosophe, écrivain universel
- 14 Quel est l'ouvrage qui a immortalisé Buffon ?
C'est son histoire naturelle
- 15 Quels sont les deux grands poètes français de notre époque ?
Lamartine et Victor Hugo
- 6 Aimez-vous la poésie ?
Beaucoup, et j'aime surtout celle de Lamartine
- 17 Quels sont nos plus grands historiens ?
Guizot, Thiers, De Barante, Thierry, Sismondi, Michelet, Louis Blanc, &c.
- 18 Connaissez-vous les romans français ?
J'en ai lu quelques-uns
- 19 Lesquels avez-vous lus ?
Corinne, par Mme de Staël ; Atala et René, par Chateaubriand ; les Trois Mousquetaires, et Monte-Christo, d'Alexandre Dumas ; le Juif Errant, d'Eugène Sue ; et Simon et André, par Mme George Sand
- 20 Qui était Scribe ?
C'est le plus célèbre des écrivains dramatiques français
- Who were the four principal writers of the XVIIIth century ?*
Voltaire, Jean-Jacques Rousseau, Montesquieu, and Buffon
- Did Voltaire write in prose or in verse ?*
He is at the same time a poet, an historian, a philosopher, and a universal writer
- What work has immortalised Buffon ?*
His natural history
- Who are the two great French poets of our time ?*
Lamartine and Victor Hugo
- Do you like poetry ?*
Very much, and above all I like that of Lamartine
- Who are our greatest historians ?*
Guizot, Thiers, De Barante, Thierry, Sismondi, Michelet, Louis Blanc, &c.
- Are you acquainted with the French novels ?*
I have read some of them
- Which have you read ?*
Corinne, by Mme de Staël ; Atala and René, by Chateaubriand ; the Three Musketeers, and Monte-Christo, by Alexandre Dumas ; the Wandering Jew, by Eugène Sue ; and Simon and André, by Mme George Sand
- Who was Scribe ?*
He was the most celebrated of the French dramatic writers

ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF ALL THE FRENCH EXERCISES

GIVEN THROUGHOUT THE BOOK ; TO BE RETRANSLATED
INTO FRENCH.

The Article.

Page 20.—The father, the mother, and the children are ill. The uncle, the aunt, and the nieces are here. The swallow is the harbinger of (the) spring. My brother's son and daughters. (The) spring, (the) summer, (the) autumn, and (the) winter are the four seasons of the year. The doors of the church are shut. The steeple of the village is white. The streets of the town are very wide. Man's life is short. He sings from morning to evening. I have spoken to the father, to the mother, and to the sons. He has given his horse to the nephew, and his house to the nieces. Here is some tea, some coffee, some bread, some butter, some meat, and some eggs. My cousin's hat is in the room. The queen's garden (26) is large. My sister has (some) pretty dresses. He has (some) fine horses in his stable. I have a dog, some cows, and some sheep. Have you a pen and a pencil? The crown of a king and of a queen. I have spoken to a friend.

The Substantive.

Page 23.—The house, the roof, the book, the law, the heat, the wood, the son, the progress, the walnut, the gas, the cross, the fire, the hat, the cake, the bolt, the jewel, the general, the hospital, the air-hole, the ball, the sky a blue eye, the knee, a picture, the grandfather, the remorse.

The Adjective.

Page 27.—The garden of the castle is small. The gate of the town is small. The passage is very narrow. The streets of the town are narrow. Here are (some) pretty roses and pretty dahlias. Your sister is very good. This little boy is as good as his sister. The duke is generous, but the duchess is not generous. We were under a stormy sky, and on a stormy sea. My friend's father (26) is very active, and his wife is still more active. My son has a new coat, and my daughter a new dress. They are very pleased. This wine is good, but that beer is not good; the wine is cool, and the beer is not cool. It is my first journey and my first visit. My little friends, be docile and attentive. Give me a white handkerchief, a white cravat, and white gloves. This way is very long. What a long story!

Page 30.—DEGREES OF COMPARISON.—The Crystal Palace is larger than the Palace of Industry at Paris. The tower of the castle is higher than the steeple of the village. My banker is less rich than yours. (The) French steel is not so much prized as the English steel. Napoleon was as ambitious as Alexander. Homer is the greatest Greek poet, and Virgil the greatest Latin poet. I am the youngest of the family. (The) autumn is less varied than (the) spring. (The) Queen Victoria is very much esteemed and very popular. The House of Parliament is one of the finest buildings in London. I am very pleased to have seen the Museum. Edinburgh is a very fine town, but Glasgow is the most important town in Scotland. Your wine is good, but mine is still better. The Zouaves are the best soldiers in the French army. Your room is bad, but mine is still worse. My cousin draws well, but you draw still better.

Page 31.—POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.—I (have) left my hat, my stick, and my gloves in your room. My sister has received a letter from her husband. I regret my old house. Do you know his parents? Your son, your daughter, and your two servants have arrived. They have sold their carriage and (their) horses. Our armies have fought valiantly. Charles has given his watch to his brother, and a bracelet to his sister. I esteem your father, his friendship is precious to me. Good morning, aunt, how do you do (*or* how are you)? Have you seen my friend? No; but I have spoken to her son. My paper, my pen, and my books are in the drawer.

Page 32.—DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.—That baker is very punctual. This hamlet is well situated. That barrister is very elo-

quent. This orange is bitter. That engraving is not dear. I (have) bought these two volumes this morning. I do not like these apricots; these peaches are better. This horse is stronger than that. That house is very damp. That man is not very obliging. This meadow will produce more than that field. These apples are good, but those pears are still better. On that day we were shooting.

Page 33.—INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.—No flowery road leads to glory. I have no anxiety on this affair. I have noticed a certain man in the drawing-room whom I do not like. 'At certain seasons of the year the river overflows the country. Every climate has its useful birds. (The) sovereigns have everywhere the same duties to fulfil. It is the same woman that I saw this morning. Your father is kindness itself. He came himself to thank me. I saw him the very day of his departure. No man is happy, nothing can make him so. Our troops have fought several battles. I do not know what author (has) said that. What o'clock is it? What an extraordinary resolution! What men! A certain line being given. Do you know any person here? I have a few pence in my pocket. Whatever efforts you may make, you will not succeed. Like father, like son. Such conduct is unworthy. All the inhabitants of the town came to meet him. Every man must do his duty. Ask me any other question, and I will answer it.

Page 37.—NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.—This man, who earns 3 shillings a day, has 12 children, 7 boys and 5 girls; the eldest is 18 years old, and the youngest is 6 months old. On the 21st of June the sun rises at 44 minutes past 3 o'clock in the morning, and sets at 18 minutes past 8 in the evening. It is already a quarter to 6 o'clock and I must go at half-past 9. On the 1st of April, 1859, the French army consisted of 568,000 men. France is divided into 89 departments, 373 districts, 2,842 cantons, and 39,381 mayoralties. The army has lost 80 officers and 900 men. I want half a dozen pencils and about 20 pens.

The Pronoun.

Page 39.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—I know that man. Thou studieth thy lesson. He works with application. She is not pretty. We shall go to the play. Have you seen the eclipse of the sun? 'They are all gone. Have they arrived? I saw them yesterday. We will show you the way. You will tell him that I will write to him to-morrow. He gives me a great deal of work. Give me back the money which I lent

you. Do not deceive me, for I should know it. I do not deceive you. If you see him to-morrow, speak to him of me. I will speak to him about it. Do you speak of the war? Yes, we speak of it. He proposes this arrangement to you; do you consent to it? I will never consent to it. We shall go with him. My brother is stronger than I, but I am more learned than he. I am French, but he is an Italian. I wrote to him myself. Go there yourself.

Page 41.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.—It is not your opinion, but it is mine. He has eaten^h his share and mine. It is not my hat, it is thine. Your affairs are mine. I have perceived his sister and thine. This is your bed and that is his. My house and his are new. Show her your jewels, and she will show you hers. Your army is stronger than ours. Your country is more peopled than ours. You have your reasons and we have ours. Our oxen are white, yours are black. Our music is much better than theirs. Is your theatre larger than theirs? My friends are also theirs. I prefer his horse to thine. Do you speak of his father or of mine? I prefer my house to his.

Page 43.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—Is it you who have done that? No, it is not I, it is he. I know what torments him. I will tell you what I have seen, and you shall tell me what you think of it. This is well done, but that is detestable. This dog is not the one I bought. Give me that which is in the room. Your gun is good, but Charles's is better. That of which I speak is very dear. The best lesson is that of example. Of all these pictures, this is the most remarkable. Here are two pretty dresses; which will you have, this or that? These like work, those like pleasure. This is a beautiful clock; where did you buy it? I bought this one in Paris, and that one in London. This is what my dog has found. This is what I think. These horses are less strong than those. Of these two watches, this is the one which is for your son. He to whom I spoke is a distinguished general.

Page 45.—RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.—It is the sun which lights us, and which ripens the fruits of the earth. It is the postman who brought me this news. Do you know the persons who were in the Queen's box? No; who are they? That castle you see on the mountain is very old. The place of which you spoke to me is already taken. To whom have you given that fine nosegay? What are you thinking of to go so late? I do not know to which of these two colours to give the preference. Who invented printing?

From whom do you expect a letter? Whom do you expect this evening? What are you doing there? With what did you open the door of my room? What prevents you from coming to-morrow? For whom do you translate this work? Whom does it belong to?

Page 46.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—These candlesticks cost twenty francs each. Every one takes his pleasure where he finds it. Have you seen my dogs? No, I have not seen any. They say that Sebastopol is taken. People think that we shall have war. There is nobody in the room. Was anybody ever satisfied with his lot? Whoever shall not observe this law will be punished. Has any one ever seriously doubted the existence of God? Do not unto others what you would not they should do unto you. Many think that the moon is inhabited. All perished in the midst of the flames. No one is free from error. These two men fear one another. Both are dead. Neither has come. Neither has succeeded.

The Verb.

Page 53.—THE VERB AVOIR.—I have a large garden. Thou hast a spot on thy coat. She has needles and cotton. We have some news from my brother. You have a fine dog. Your sisters have pretty dresses. I had two pounds six shillings in my purse. He had many friends. We had 20,000 men, and they had 30,000. To-morrow you will have his answer, and I shall have time to write my letter. My mother would have invited you if she had not been unwell. We had a great deal of rain on our journey. If I was richer, I would have a pretty house, well furnished. The general had two horses killed under him. We shall have a beautiful concert next Thursday, and I shall have two places to offer you. My son (has) had two prizes this year, but he would have had more if he had worked well.

Page 56.—THE VERB ÊTRE.—I am very happy to see you. Thou art very amiable to give me this beautiful nosegay. He is always ill. She is a very good musician. We are three, and you are four. They are poor, but honest. I was in Paris when your letter reached me. Mary Stuart was (possessed) of great beauty. We were on the top of the mountain. Thou wilt be punished if thou art not obedient. My aunt will be here at six o'clock in the evening. These gentlemen will be in London before us. I should be much surprised if he did not come. These young ladies would be very glad to go to Paris. You would be happier if you were in the country. I have

been sick on the sea. We should have been more sick if we had been on the other boat. You would be richer if you were more economical. Your parents would have been very pleased if you had had a prize.

Page 60.—**AVOIR AND ÊTRE USED INTERROGATIVELY, ETC.**—Have you any pens and ink? I am not ready. Are you not an Italian? No. Are you a Spaniard? Yes. Have I not a fine blue waistcoat? Had your cousin her pink dress? No; she was not in full dress. Art thou pleased with thy tailor? Will my sister have her new bonnet? Shall you not have some friends this evening? I was not on the boat. Would you have been frightened if you had been on it? We shall have no rain to-day. Shall you be at home at eleven o'clock? No; I shall not be at home. Will not your son have a gun? Would your father be pleased if you were to come with me? Are the ladies in the drawing-room? Will not these gentlemen take their coffee soon? Have they had their tea? No; it is not yet ready.

Page 65.—**FIRST CONJUGATION.**—I work six hours a day. Dost thou blame my conduct? My daughter speaks three languages, French, English, and German. We breakfast at eight o'clock in the morning, and we commence study at half-past eight. Do you dine with us to-day? No. Your two sons draw and sing very well. I admired the happy situation of that great city. Whilst he was thus speaking, Telemachus cast down his eyes. We then lived in the country. The stars shone in the sky. We wandered a long time in the plain. Did these gentlemen arrive in time for the concert? I shall spend a month with my cousin, and we shall go shooting every day. Shall you bring your gun? I should often go shooting if I had time. Would you like to come to Rome with us? These horses would eat all this oats if you were to give it to them. Let us not judge others too severely. We coasted that island, and the next day we arrived opposite seven mountains of ice. The mist began to surround us. What do you call this mountain? It is called Mont Blanc. I should like you to speak French. I do not think we shall arrive before night.

Page 70.—**SECOND CONJUGATION.**—This poor woman keeps (*nourrit*) her children by her work, and all her children cherish her. Tell him that two of his ships were destroyed last night. The army invaded the whole country. When will you assemble your friends to inform them of this news? We build a church for the inhabitants of this parish. Flowers embellish nature and feed the bees. Have you chosen the flowers that you wish to buy? No; I have not chosen

them yet. When will you choose them? I will choose them to-morrow morning, and you shall plant them immediately, for fear they should perish. I must finish my letter before dinner, for if I did not finish it, it would be too late after dinner. Never disobey your parents, God would punish you.

Page 74.—II., III., AND IV. CLASSES.—Do you smell the perfume of these violets? He foresaw his misfortune. Will he consent to this marriage? When shall we set out for the country? Did not these young gentlemen go out too often? We used to sleep till three o'clock, then we went shooting. Our soldiers covered themselves with glory in the Crimea. Open the window, if you please, for I suffer too much from the heat. Shall you come and see us next Sunday? I do not think he will come, for he went out very late. In coming back we discovered a frightful precipice. I always remember with pleasure my journey to Switzerland. The French troops suffered much in the campaign of Egypt, but they served their country with an heroic courage. Does your friend acknowledge his wrongs? Has he obtained the permission which he asked for?

Page 77.—THIRD CONJUGATION.—I perceive the towers of the castle; do you perceive them? You will soon perceive them; they must be in the direction of the setting sun. I understand that one cannot perceive them if he is short sighted. We received a basket of grapes last week, and we shall receive a basket of peaches next week. Does this architect understand your plan? I do not think he understands it well, but perhaps he will understand it better when I shall have explained it to him. They have deceived my dearest hopes. If we were to go up this hill, we should perceive the sea and the ships which sail towards America. I did not know you owed so much money; if I had known it, I should have been very anxious.

Page 81.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Do you hear the noise which is made in the mountain? No; I hear nothing. Have you answered my solicitor's letter? No; I shall answer it presently. We were waiting for the postman with great impatience, but he has lost his bag in crossing the mountain. I lost ten thousand francs at once. The Russians defended Sebastopol with much courage and skill. I shall wait until you have remodelled your work to buy a copy of it. My father will sell his carriage as soon as he has sold his horse. My uncle and cousin will wait for you at the railway station, and there you shall take a carriage that will bring you here. The snow would melt if the sun

appeared. Would you sell this farm if you could find a good price for it?

Page 84.—II, III, and IV. CLASSES.—Do you know this man? No, I do not know him. I was afraid you were ill. The river has swollen (*croître*) considerably since yesterday. Do you fear any danger? The empress looked (*paraître*) very tired; I did not recognise her at first. A fire destroyed the famous library of Alexandria. We reached the summit of Vesuvius at seven o'clock in the morning. Thy father has been obliged to pay the whole sum. Do not pity his fate, for he has well deserved it. To-morrow I shall paint the whole morning, and I will meet you again (*rejoindre*) in the afternoon. Do you paint in water-colours? No; I paint in oil.

Page 96.—REFLECTIVE VERBS.—I generally go to bed at eleven o'clock. We take a walk (*se promener*) every day about three o'clock in the afternoon. You rise too early. How do you do? I am well, thank you. My sister has caught cold (*s'enrhumer*) in walking. They repent of what they have done. What is the name of this town? I do not recollect the name. I complained of a headache. You fatigue yourself too much; rest a little. We intended (*se proposer*) to write to you. They will rejoice at (*de*) your success. Did you wash yourself this morning? No; I rose too late. I shall be angry if that happens (to you) again. Does your brother remember what I told him? Would you not make a mistake in your calculation? They wished that I should conform to the rules of the house. He had used (*se servir de*) your recommendation to obtain the situation. You would have exposed yourselves to the greatest danger, if you had walked (*se promener*) on this road.

Page 101.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.—How many years have you been in England? It will be fifteen years next January. I did not think it was so long. I must answer my father to-day. I want some paper and envelopes. You should have come sooner. Will there be many people at the evening party of the Russian ambassador? There were not more than a hundred persons last time. Is it far from here to the Lake of Geneva? I think it is about two leagues. Is it necessary to ascend to arrive there? No; we shall have (*falloir*) to descend. Do you think it necessary to take a carriage? No; I do not think we want one. What sort of weather is it? It is very windy. It would have been necessary to take an umbrella.

Page 103.—IDIOMATIC TENSES.—I have just seen your sisters in the street. The ambassador has just set out for Vienna. We had just

breakfasted with the general. These gentlemen had just gone out when I received your letter. I am going to speak to his master. Are you going to pay a visit to the duke? We were going to embark when the fire broke out in the ship. You ought not to invite that man to your house; I ought to have told you sooner. You are going to have a holiday to-day. I was to set out this morning for Boulogne, but the bad weather has detained me. Will you not take cold, if you leave the window open? When is your father to publish his new work? Is he going to advertise it in the newspapers? Were you not going to write to your bookseller?

Irregular Verbs.

Page 113.—FIRST CONJUGATION.—Where are you going? I am going to London. Sorrows ascend the throne and seat themselves by the side of the sovereign. If it be true that time goes on unceasingly, it is no less true that we go on unceasingly with it. Shall we soon go to the country? It would be necessary for me to go to Paris next week. Let us suffer with resignation the evils which heaven sends us. Do not trust that charlatan, he will send you to the other world. Send me your servant, and I will send you the book that you ask. The enemy sent us some shells, which were lost in the trenches.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—There is a report that we are going to have war. These children would run the whole day, if they were allowed. When a savage dies in the winter whilst hunting, his body is preserved in the branches of the trees. We shall die as we have lived. Alexander conquered Asia, and Cæsar conquered Gaul. The only solid friends are those which one acquires by solid virtues. Children acquire knowledge without our help. Your sisters and I were gathering (some) flowers in the meadow, when some one came to tell us that he was dead. Every one reaps what he has sown. Louis XIV. received all literary men very kindly. A tempest assailed us on going out of the harbour. His good qualities acquired for him the esteem of everybody. Our happy days fly swiftly. Let us flee bad company, if we wish to remain good. It is by fleeing that one sometimes makes triumph sure. His blood boils in his veins. You shall put these eggs into the water as soon as it boils.

Page 116.—THIRD CONJUGATION.—I do not wish my mother to know that I have seen you. Could you tell me what this house is worth? However little it may be worth, it is well worth what they ask for it. When shall you see the landlord? I must know it, in

order that I may make him my offers. I had not foreseen your arrival; I cannot tell you at present. Sit down for a moment; I am going to see whether we can speak to him. We sat under the shade of a palm tree, and soon we saw some savages come out of the forest. I did not know that you wished to go this evening. It is a spring which moves the whole machine. The fate of his children moved him even to tears, but the sight of punishment could not move him. When shall you know your lessons? I shall know them in half an hour. I should have liked you to know them sooner.

Page 117.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.—What author do you read in your class? Our professor wishes us to learn a passage of Virgil every day. It is said that the Russians have been beaten by the allies; do you believe that the news is true? Tell me what you think of it, and let us drink the health of our brave soldiers who have vanquished the enemy. Do not do to others that which you would not have done to you. Democritus laughed incessantly, Heraclitus always cried. It would be necessary that you should write your letter before I take any steps in the matter. All the children who were born on the same day as Sesostris were brought to the court by order of the king. We are born and we live for society. Do not take your friends at hazard: follow my advice,—it is good. Fontenelle lived a hundred years. We used to drink goat's milk every morning. These young orphans sew two or three hours a day. Have you put my horse in the stable? I shall put him in when he has drunk. We grind a great deal of coffee every day; but we used to grind more (of it) last year. Have you solved this problem? Fire resolves wood into ashes. Frictions reduce swellings.

Adverbs.

Page 122.—When do you go (*partir*)? I shall go to-morrow, or perhaps to-day. Do you often go to Paris? I seldom go; generally once a year. How far have you learnt? You have arrived too late; come sooner another time. How far is it from here to Geneva? I do not know exactly. How long shall you stay here? Why do you ask me that question? Have you ever been to Rome? No, I have never been. How have you done that? I have scarcely had time to see him. Which way shall you take in going to France? We shall go first to London, and then to Dover. How much does the journey from London to Paris cost? Have you already dined? No; I have not

yet breakfasted. He reads very little, and he writes still less. Shall you go far to-day? Why do you not answer?

Prepositions.

Page 123.—I have given a dictionary to your friend. Have you written to your mother? We were speaking of you just now. Do you come from Bordeaux? I shall set out from here after breakfast and I shall arrive in Paris before ten o'clock in the evening. The tomb of Napoleon is in the chapel of the *Invalides*. We walked upon a fiery ground, beneath a fiery sky, between two walls of fire. Towards four o'clock we doubled the point of a peninsula, and we cast anchor in a bay sheltered by rocks. This money is for the poor. We then perceived through the fog the hull and (the) yards of a large ship. I shall go to your house to-morrow. Mirabeau spoke with eloquence. We shall go as far as Brussels, and we shall set out in the evening by the Strasbourg railway. Amongst the French, the fashions succeed each other rapidly. In my opinion, he was wrong to behave in this manner towards you. My father lives in Paris, opposite the Louvre. As for me, I will not undertake anything against him. He spoke to me about this affair. Whilst my companions warmed themselves around a large fire, I went towards the mountain. He already learns to read, write, and sing. Russia is fertile in corn, hemp, and flax.

Conjunctions.

Page 126.—Do not do that, for you would be punished. The wicked die as they have lived. Do you then believe that death is nothing? These songs are sweet, but the sorrows and the joys which they awaken are neither my sorrows nor my joys. Neither gold nor greatness makes us happy. Now, you ought to have known that the thing was not possible. Misery or dishonour always awaits the gambler. He must pay, or he will go to prison. People have asked me, Why do you weep? And when I have replied, no one has wept with me, because they did not understand me. Why do you ask it, since you know it? I think you will gain your lawsuit. If Napoleon had not been so ambitious, he would not have fallen. God places you above others in order that you might be the fathers of the people. Whether you come or not, I shall set out to-morrow. Work with assiduity, in order to deserve a reward.

SYNTAX.

Syntax of the Article.

Page 130.—The lion is the king of animals. The snow whitened the roofs. Man is the king of nature. The olive tree is the emblem of peace. Men are born for society. Honour is dearer to generous minds than life. The father, mother, and children are gone out. The principal productions of Russia are corn, hemp, flax, timber, iron, furs, hides, and tallow. The purest and most correct writer. The most touching and harmonious verses. The best written and best thought books.

Page 131.—The principal countries of Europe are France, England, Russia, Austria, Prussia, Spain, and Italy. Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica are important islands situated in the Mediterranean. The principal rivers of France are the Rhone, the Rhine, the Loire, the Seine, the Meuse, and the Garonne. Napoleon crossed the Alps with his army in 1800. Mont Blanc is the highest mountain in the Alps. The English steel, the Russian leather, the French and Spanish wines are very much prized. I was born in France, but I have travelled in Russia, Italy, Germany, and Scotland. My brother will go to India, and from there to Japan. Do you like Bordeaux wine? I like Burgundy best. The Emperor of Russia, Nicholas, died in 1855, during the Crimean war. Is not the American cotton more valued than that of India?

Page 132.—Prince Louis Napoleon was elected president of the Republic in 1848. Cardinal Wolsey was a celebrated minister of Henry VIII. The Count of Chambord is the legitimate heir to the throne of France. General Pelissier is now marshal, Duke of Malakoff. Good Bordeaux wine is sold at from 250 to 450 francs a half-hogshead. Tea, in France, costs twelve francs a pound. Potatoes are sold by the pound. Our first professor has eight hundred a year. How much do you charge for a lesson? I charge ten guineas per quarter. The dinner is three francs a head. These apples cost me two shillings a dozen. Are you Professor Gellert? No; I am Doctor Muller. Have these poor people bread and meat? He has money, lands, and credit.

Page 134.—London and Paris are the two largest capitals in Europe. Have you ever been to Berlin? Frederick II., King of Prussia, was a great warrior. Alexander, Annibal, Cæsar, and Napoleon were great captains. Correggio and Titian were two great Italian painters. There are very fine trees in the forest of Fontainebleau. There are no houses on this road. How can you feel dull? have you no books? I cannot read, since I have no books. Baker, have you any rolls? A troop of nymphs, crowned with flowers, swam in a crowd behind the car of the goddess. - I have not much time to give you. Did she shed many tears? He has too much sense to act in such a manner. We have traversed a forest of firs. There would not be so many insolent men, if there were not so many stupid ones. There are many curious people in the world. I have tasted the good cheese you bought yesterday.

Page 137.—Men without passions, without virtues, and without vices, have but one feeling—vanity badly disguised. Amongst neighbours, one speaks with frankness. Which do you prefer as an epic poet, Homer or Virgil? Homer, as a creative genius, merits the preference. Never was father happier than you are. This good action will bring you good luck. Paul and Virginia sat under a tree, overwhelmed with fatigue, hunger, and thirst. "Soldiers!" cried Bonaparte, "consider that from the top of these monuments forty ages look upon you!" Temerity is not prudence. Old men, women, children, all wished to see me. Burgundy, a province of France, is fruitful in wine. Minerva, the goddess of wisdom, led Telemachus. Louis XIV. protected literary men. Charles XII. was vanquished at Pultava. His brother is a painter, and his sister is a musician. Her mother is a Frenchwoman, but her father was a German. It was an Italian who made an attempt on the life of Napoleon III. This is the title of the work, "An Essay on the History of France," by Guizot. What a misfortune that he died so young! What a ravishing picture the fields offer!

Syntax of the Substantive.

Page 139.—Victor Hugo's "Notre-Dame de Paris" is an historical novel of the greatest interest. He knows the greater part of La Fontaine's fables by heart. My mother's room has a blue paper. Is Mr. B. at home? Tell him that I shall be at home all the morning. Have you been to the winter garden? She wore silk stockings and satin shoes. How much does a bottle of Burgundy wine cost? I prefer a branch of

illac to a pot of gilliflower.- He had a wind-mill, a water-mill, and a steam-mill built. A four-wheeled carriage pays more tax than a two-wheeled carriage. I like fox-hunting very much. She is a fine girl, with black eyes. Where is my pocket-handkerchief? In the bedroom. Can you tell me where the letter-box is? It is at the corner of the fish-market.

Page 142.—All the people applauded his victory with great cries. The multitude of the stars adds to the beauty of the nights. A troop of Spartans poured a shower of darts on him. A troop of armed men appeared before my eyes. Some ran to throw themselves into the river Nerwa, and a crowd of soldiers were drowned there. Spain is proud of having given birth to the two Senecas. The same king (Louis XIV.) who had the wisdom to employ such men as Condé, Turenne, Luxembourg, Créquî, Catinat, and Villars in his armies, Colbert and Louvois in his cabinet, chose Racine and Boileau to write his history; Bossuet and Fénelon to instruct his children; Fléchier, Bourdaloue, and Massillon to instruct himself. Only a literary king is requisite to produce men like Corneille and Racine. Do you not admire the masterpieces of Racine and Molière? Woman is the masterpiece of nature. In France there is a prefect in all the chief towns of the departments.

Syntax of the Adjective.

Page 144.—Milton was blind and suffered from gout. A straitened and poor life, numerous enemies, the bitter feeling of his deceived illusions, the humiliating weight of public disgrace, sadness of mind and bodily sufferings, everything overwhelmed Milton. Women and children were murdered in the houses. I endeavour to make my wife, my child, and even my dog happy. My mother and sister are gone this morning. He expresses himself with perfect grace and politeness. He will have the contempt or the confidence of the public, according as he behaves well or badly. Diogenes walked barefooted and slept in a cask. The demi-gods of the ancients were only men, remarkable by their valour and virtue. He has been gone half an hour, and he will not return before half-past ten in the evening. The citizens came barefoot to deliver to him the keys of the town. You will receive prepaid all the letters that I shall send you. I herewith send you my correspondent's letter. Does that oil cost dear? I do not like it, it smells strong

Page 146.—Why have you left this happy nest, and your little children, and your old mother, and that charming valley? On the declivity of some charming and well-shaded hill, I would have a little rustic house, a white house with green shutters. There came by a little powdered gentleman, thin, brisk, and to whom Antony addressed his shrieking memento. How many different and touching characters! The venerable face of the soldier, the countenance so kind and so tender of my adoptive mother, and the fresh and charming visage of Angèle smiling at her little child; the sweet melancholy of Mayeux, pressing her lips from time to time on the fair and laughing head of Agricole's eldest son. The difference between an indifferent (*pauvre*) author and a needy (*pauvre*) author is, that the former is without merit and the latter without fortune.

Page 149.—Those who are greedy of praise are prodigal of money. Proud of his nobleness, jealous of his beauty, the swan seems to make a show of all his advantages. After so long an absence are you sorry to see yourself again in your kingdom? I am not angry with you. Our soldiers have returned from Italy covered with glory. Those who are pleased with nobody are the very persons with whom nobody is pleased. This warlike nation, accustomed to conquests, accustomed to work, to labour, and to the contempt of life. Respiration is necessary to life. St. Louis, King of France, was affable to all and kind to every one. Rich people are inclined to think themselves superior to other men. This passage is not easy to understand. It is easy to make a mistake. This young man is assiduous in his duty and very attentive to the prince. Do not be deaf to the voice of religion.

Page 152.—The tower of Strasburg cathedral is 149 metres high. That oak is 90 feet high, by 18 in circumference. The ditches of the town are 45 feet wide, by 10 feet 6 inches deep. The rue de Rivoli, in Paris, is about a mile and a half long, by sixty feet wide. The town is surrounded by a wall, 20 feet high, by 6 feet thick. You are shorter than I by two inches. There were more than 400,000 men engaged at the battle of Solferino. The Empress Eugénie is younger than the Emperor Napoleon by eighteen years. She is older than I thought. She is not happier than she was. Can a man be happier than you are? The more unhappy a people is, the more it is to be feared. He feels this insult so much the more as he deserved it the less. He is only the more to be esteemed for it. What does a month more or less matter? France is the oldest monarchy in Europe.

Page 155.—Bring me my hat, cravat, and gloves. Good morning, ancle, how do you do? I have known your father for a long time. Will your sister come to the ball? Have your brothers returned? The lady who is at the piano^o is the ambassador's wife. In saying these words, tears came into my eyes. Blood came out of his nose and mouth. Admiral Nelson lost his arm at the expedition of Santa-Cruz. His body is too big, and his head too small. Wash your hands before dinner. Epaminondas fell pierced by a javelin, which remained in his chest. They will cut off my head, and perhaps make you a king. These works have their merit and their faults. Time flies, its loss is irreparable.

Page 159.—This field, these sheep, and these cows belong to me. Is not that clock slow? No flowery path leads to glory. There are no exterior vices, and no faults which are not perceived by children. Some writers have treated that subject. Send me the few books I left at your house. Whatever may be your accomplishments, do not be proud of them. Whatever efforts you may make, you will not succeed. However wicked men may be, they would not dare to appear the enemies of virtue. Every condition has its troubles, and sorrows are attached to each state. We breakfast every day at eight o'clock. All the inhabitants of the town were in consternation. All his thoughts, all his glory, were to please God. All Rome knows it. From the top of the hills of Montmartre one can see the whole of Paris. These clothes are quite worn out, but worn out as they are, they may be useful. Feeble as her health is, she does a great deal of good to the poor. Sovereigns have everywhere the same duties to fulfil. Even the most savage animals afford us examples of gratitude. We dined in the very room where he was murdered. Such a woman thinks herself handsome who often is not so. Such a man deserves to be punished.

Syntax of Pronouns.

Page 163.—When you have prayed, do you not feel your heart lighter, and your soul more content? What are you doing on the earth; and have you nothing to ask of Him who placed you there? "Did you hear nothing last night?" he asked him. Joy shone in the eyes of Charles. "That is right," he said; "they are becoming, then, more tractable." May I with my own eyes see the thunderbolt fall there! We were scarcely gone when the thunder burst out and set the roof on fire.

Scarcely had the sun appeared on the horizon, (when) we marched on the enemy. If a man flatters you, do not trust him, he wishes to deceive you. I will show it you to-morrow. He will never forgive me for it. If you have letters for your sister, I will take them to her ; give them to me. Write it, and send it to him. Have you not already sent some to him thither ? Have you not told it him yet ? If you have money, give me some.

Page 165.—Who has broken this glass ? It is not I, it is he. Who will come to the palace ? I. My solicitor and he are of that opinion. If it is not you, it is your brother. She and I shall learn music. He will see me and my servant. People may say what they please against him ; as for me, I am sure of his honesty. Apply to them, and not to him. I betray the God I love ! I depreciate commerce !—I, daughter and wife of manufacturers !—I, who think it is an establishment most useful to the country ! His sisters carried a basket, and he a parcel. He alone disclosed to the eyes of a Jew the design of two traitors quite ready to pierce your bosom. Like they, we travel towards the grave. He loves you as much as they. He goes to London every day ; I rarely go.

Page 167.—Do you paint and draw every day ? We read and translate from ten o'clock till twelve. Take care ; you gain little and you spend a great deal. You and I are not happy. He was loved because he was kind to all. He (Punch) leaps in laughing, he falls, rises again, walks, gambols, jumps, fights, gesticulates, and falls back dislocated against the frame which resounds with his fall. I fear God, dear Abner, and have no other fear. Albert and he agree. He eats and drinks well. Neither my father nor I can do it. An author who flatters and praises us is sure to please us. I wish to see him, to beseech him, to urge him, to importune him, to move him. He will receive me and my servant. He owes that sum to us and (to) our partners.

Page 168.—Are you my gardener's son ? Yes, I am. Are you the porter's daughter ? Yes, I am. Gentlemen, are you the officers of that regiment ? Yes, we are. Gentlemen, are you officers ? We are. Are you the three Romans chosen for the combat ? We are. Are not these children ill ? No, they are not. Are you unwell, Miss ? No, I am not. Young ladies, are you English ? Yes, we are. Ladies, are you the English ladies recommended to me ? We are. Is your brother happier than he was ? Yes ; but he is not so rich as you think.

Is this his son ? Yes, it is. Are these your children ? No, they are not. Are you the mistress of the house ? Yes, I am. In this world no one thinks of any but himself. Whoever refers everything to himself, has not many friends. No one is a prophet in his own country. A good action bears its recompense with itself. Vice is odious in itself. We have often need of some one inferior to ourselves. Frankness is good in itself, but it has its excesses. In fulfilling the wishes of his father, this young man is working for himself.

Page 172.—Your father is for me a true friend ; I shall never forget the services I have received from him. That house is in a ruinous state ; do not go near it. Have you any horses ? No ; I have none. Has your sister a piano ? Yes, she has one. In order to have friends, a man must be capable of making them, and worthy of having them. He who enjoys prosperity should fear to abuse it. How many children have you ? I have two. He is a suspicious man, do not trust him. Earthly things are not worth our attachment. I have received his letter this morning ; I will answer it this evening. This horse is vicious, do not touch him. This affair is important ; give all your attention to it. Have you been to town ? No ; I am going there. Do you think of the poor who suffer ? Yes ; we think of them every day. Although I speak a great deal of you, my daughter, I think of you still more, day and night. Shall you go to Scotland next summer ? Yes, we shall. Would you go to Naples if I were to go with you ? No, I would not. Is this the duke's carriage ? Yes, it is. Are those the horses which cost so dear ? Yes, they are. Are you stronger than you were ? Mary sings, but Albert does not. I have seen the Princess of Wales at the Opera. Have you ? You have seen her with the Prince, have you not ?

Page 175.—This hat is mine, and that great coat is his. It is not your opinion, but it is mine. I am waiting for his decision to take mine. Our house and his touch each other. Whose two canes are these ? This is mine, and that is his. This field is my father's. His father's achievements are effaced by his. Those gloves are mine, where are yours ? Hear my reasons, I will hear yours afterwards. Your interests are ours. I have just heard of the death of a friend of mine. A pupil of mine is very ill. Lamartine is one of our best poets, and Guizot one of our best historians. This young lady is a daughter of one of my partners. This is my room, and that is my sister's. I have seen it with my own eyes. I intend to treat you as my own son. It is a carriage of my own. He lives in a house of his own.

Page 177.—Is it the Dover boat that has just arrived? No; it is the Folkestone boat. Who told you so? My servant. It was he who was driving the horses. You have written a great deal, it is true; but how many errors there are in your works! It is much easier to conquer provinces than (to conquer) a passion. It is difficult to become learned without working much. It is true; it is difficult. What o'clock is it? It is seven o'clock. What o'clock is that? It is three o'clock. That which makes the hero often degrades the man. I know what you mean. What is certain is that the world is wrong. The finest present that has been made to mankind, after wisdom, is friendship. What I like in a young person is modesty. What is true is that agriculture was extremely honoured among the ancient Romans.

Page 178.—It is not I who said so, it is she. Among the ancients it was the old men who governed; with you it is the young men. It was the Phœnicians who invented writing. Our true goods are those of nature; it is heaven, it is the earth, those fields, those plains, those forests, of which it offers us the inexhaustible enjoyment. Which are the three theological virtues? They are faith, hope, and charity. Are those the dogs of which you spoke to me? It was we who were in the carriage, and it was they who were on horseback. He who has ten friends has not one. Woe to those who disturb the foundations of a nation! The French Ambassador and that of England. My mother's room and my sister's are on the first floor. This one dies in the midst of prosperity, that one in misery and in the bitterness of his soul. Heraclitus and Democritus were of a very different character; the latter was always laughing, and the former was incessantly weeping. These look well, those look bad.

Page 181.—Glory to the hand that sows, shame to the hand that injures! Distrust the fine words of people who boast of being virtuous. The book you have lent me is very interesting. Who has treated you so? Whom do you ask for? Whom do you think you are speaking to? What will you do if he does not pay you? There is nothing on which people have disputed so much. Of what is a heart not capable which jealousy blackens and envenoms? To what do you apply yourself during the morning? What is more consoling at the hour of death than having performed good actions? A pleasure of which we are sure to repent can never be a peaceful one. The senate gave kings to Rome of whom she had little to fear. I know what you want to speak to me about. The horse on which the king was mounted came from Spain. Happy is he who, satisfied with his humble fortune, lives in

the condition in which the gods have placed him. Whence comes so much pride in him?

Page 185.—One may be an honest man and make bad verses. Has any one ever wept for having done his duty? We had thought we were friends, and we found ourselves to be rivals. When a woman (*on*) is handsome, she knows it. Whoever has no character is not a man, he is a thing. Passenger, whoever you are, do not envy me this little piece of ground which covers my ashes. Whoever has told you that is mistaken. Every one takes his pleasure where he finds it. Whatever that author may say, I consider he is wrong. Each of us has his troubles. They went off each his own way. What do you do every morning? They brought offerings to the temple, every one according to his means. They have each of them brought their offerings. Do not unto others what you would not they should do unto you. Whoever pities no one, does not deserve to be pitied. I know nobody so amiable as your sister. Would any one dare contradict me? We must always associate with well-bred people. Both helped each other to bear their sorrows. They both arrived at the same time. Neither of them has done his duty. Neither of them has succeeded.

Syntax of Verbs.

Page 188.—We exist without knowing how, and we think without knowing why. Religion is a chain of gold which connects the earth with the throne of the Eternal. Riches often attract friends, and poverty drives them away. The rich and the poor are equal in the law. Narbal and I admired the kindness of the gods. Consider this well, young man,—what are ten, twenty, thirty years for an immortal being? Neighbours, friends, relations, every one prefers his own interest to that of any other. Weakness or inexperience makes us commit many faults. His fury, his rage, has no longer any limits. It is you or he who have said so. Hell, as well as heaven, proves a just and kind God. History, as well as natural philosophy, only began to develop themselves towards the end of the sixteenth century. Health as well as fortune withdraw their favours from those who abuse them.

Page 191.—My uncle has given me four beautiful volumes of Molière. Is it for you or your sister that they were destined? It is to me that he had promised them. It is not of you that we are speaking.

I (have) found a newspaper on your table, and I have taken it. The wicked are detested by everybody. The Romans were vanquished by the Carthaginians at the battle of Cannæ. Printing was invented, they say, by Gutenberg. I think of going next Saturday. Do you prefer waiting till Monday? Religion teaches us to respect our masters, to be kind to our inferiors, and to love all men as ourselves. We were obliged to pass the night in the forest. Warn your friend to be on his guard, for I know some one who is trying to injure him.

6.

Page 195.—Whilst we were wandering through the deserted plain, a thick mist spread itself over the waves and began to surround us. We coasted this island, and the next day we arrived in front of seven mountains of ice. The day began to decline; they embarked for the island. Already the report had spread that the king was coming; many of the inhabitants went to meet him. As he went along the streets of Newport, a young woman advanced towards him, and presented him with a red rose, blown, in spite of the rigour of the season. We went to the governor's house, whom we could not see because he was ill. If I do not recollect his names, it is because he had ten or twelve. The king was very much agitated by this sudden apparition; his head, which was quite weak, was shaken by it.

Page 203.—My father wishes me to learn music and drawing. I am astonished that he does not see the danger he is in. Do not wait to come until I answer you. I was not aware that you had returned. Do you think he says that to tease me? I do not think he says it for that. Do you think your sister can walk so far? It is possible that she may be tired before she arrives. Is it true that the Empress Eugénie is in London, and that she took a cab to go to her hotel? I must go by the seven o'clock A.M. train. The Gospel is the finest present God has made to men. The best use one can make of his intellect is to distrust it. "Athalie" is one of the last tragedies that Racine wrote. Whatever talents you may possess, always be modest. Whoever comes, do not receive him. The lion never attacks man unless he is provoked. Behave in such a manner that everybody may be pleased with you. He behaved in such a manner that everybody was pleased with him. If you should come, and if you could stay two or three days with us, we would go and see the Lake of Geneva. I wish you would come next week. I shall not set out until I have received the order for it. They advised him to go, in order that his presence might contribute to re-establish order. The most moderate asked that they

should arrest him, and that he should be placed in the prison of the Chatelet. We did not know he had been arrested. May you succeed in your projects !

Syntax of Participles.

Page 209.—Persons who love everybody, generally love nobody. The Moors, descending from the mountains, overran and pillaged Africa. Affectionate persons have more enjoyments than others. Eagles, carried away by the current of air, descend, in whirling, to the bottom of the gulf. Surrounded on all sides, the Russians believed themselves lost, and were compelled to surrender. The mountains are covered with flocks, which furnish fine wools, sought for by all nations. The summer heat is there always tempered by refreshing zephyrs. Chateaubriand and Mme. de Staël have enriched our literature with a number of remarkable works. The best harangues are those dictated by the heart. If God has distinguished us from other animals, it is chiefly by the gift of speech. Bossuet created a language which he alone has spoken. More than sixty princes have succeeded each other on the throne of France. These two bodies of troops have met and fought. These are the battles which they have fought.

Printing is one of the most useful inventions that has ever been made. How much time, how many reflections, have been necessary to understand the wants and the resources of nature ! The persons you have heard sing belong to the Opera. The trees that I have seen planted are now more than thirty years old. The kindnesses you have made me to feel give me a right to use so tender a name. The Emperor's generals had allowed themselves to be beaten on the frontiers. The thing was more serious than we had at first thought. The few provisions which they have preserved have sufficed to save the population of the town.

Page 216.—The elect will always enjoy the presence of God. The dogma of the immortality of the soul has always maintained itself on the earth. There is no rampart against slander. Titus did not pass a day without doing a good action. I know nobody in the town. I had not seen my mother for ten years. Speak lower, lest some one should hear you. This language is more difficult than I thought. Paris is more populous than St. Petersburg, but London is still much more so. The city of London is much larger than (that of) Paris, but

It is not so fine. Are you still as busy as you were? Suddenly a dark tempest enveloped the sky and irritated (all) the waves of the sea. This man made his fortune all at once. We expected you sooner. Rather suffer than die, such is the motto of men.

Page 221.—When will Charles go to Florence? In a month. Will he stay long in Italy? He is going there to learn the language. Shall you have time to finish your letter before dinner? No; but I will finish it after tea. Who was king of France before Napoleon III.? Louis-Philippe, whom I saw pass before my door in a cab, on his arrival in England. The soldiers, who had walked for three weeks, had not eaten anything for nearly two days. There are more dead amongst the fugitives than amongst the brave. Man is placed free between vice and virtue. Hatred between great people is seldom appeased. We then perceived through the fog the hull and yards of a large ship. We cut through the enemy's battalions. Children, do not be ungrateful towards your parents. America was discovered towards the end of the 15th century by Christopher Columbus. I will call at your house this evening. When is your father at home? His son works at an architect's. The profession of comedian was infamous among the Romans, and honourable among the Greeks. When my sister has a home, I shall go and see her.

Page 224.—I doubt whether one can be happy when he is guilty of some fault. Of what use to you will be the possession of talent if you do not employ it, and if you do not apply yourself? When a person seeks only to do good to men, and does not offend heaven, he fears nothing, neither during his life nor at his death. Do not go before I tell you. Come here, all of you, that I may distribute to you my orders. How great is the world! how magnificent it is! How many fine days have not fine evenings! How terrible and powerful is religion! Fortune, whether good or bad, whether transient or constant, can have no effect on the mind of the wise man. Whether you do it or not, you will be blamed. Whether you write or not, he will not come.

Page 233.—My father will return from India in three years. We go to France every year. His wife has been ill all the year. We have had a very good year. It has rained the whole day. The days are longer in summer than in winter. I have not seen him for eight days. Our friends went away at six o'clock in the morning. What a fine morning! He comes to see me every morning. The mornings are cold. Are you invited to my uncle's evening party? Yes; but I shall not be able to go, for I set out to-morrow evening. I work every

evening until eleven o'clock. Do you know any one in this town? No; but I know where to go. Do you know if the Paris train has arrived? No, I cannot tell you. Shall you bring your horse? No; but I will bring all my children. Bring some coals, and then you shall take these letters to the post. My father will take us to the play this evening.

Shall you walk or (shall you) drive? I think we shall drive, for we have already walked much to-day. We have walked all the morning in the forest. Will you come and have a sail? I prefer having a ride. The Prince of Wales married a Danish princess. The Queen of England married her eldest daughter to Prince Frederick of Prussia. They were married last week. Who married them? The Bishop of Oxford. Have you seen my new house? Not yet; is it a new house? Yes; it has never been inhabited. Switzerland is a very mountainous region; the country there is very beautiful. Your country is heaven. It is glorious to die for one's country. We generally spend four or five months in the country, and the rest of the year in town. Is your mother at home? No, sir; she is out. Do not lose your time. I saw her yesterday for the first time. Each time he comes he brings me something. We have slept at the Hôtel du Louvre. Did you sleep well? I always sleep well when I am tired. My brother and I sleep in the same room.

FREE EXERCISES.

FAMILIAR CONVERSATIONS.

1 Good morning, sir; *how do you do*? Very well, I thank you; and how are you? *Pretty*² well. Where are you going so early? I am going to the Bank. I thought it was not yet opened. Yes; it is *nearly*³ ten o'clock. I did not think it was so late. I am going to fetch some money for my journey. What journey? *Did I not tell you*⁴ that I was going *to*⁵ France? When do you start? To-morrow morning, by the half-past eight o'clock train. *Would you oblige me by taking*⁶ a small parcel to my brother, who lives in the *rue de Rivoli*? Certainly, with pleasure. When shall I send it to you? Send it this evening before nine o'clock. By what boat do you *leave*⁷? By the boat that *sails*⁸ from Folkestone to Boulogne. *How long*⁹ shall you be at sea? If the wind is favourable, we shall only be two hours.

2 Do you go by the express train from Boulogne? Yes, if we arrive soon enough to *catch*¹⁰ it. I do not like the *slow*¹¹ trains, I am always so tired. Have you a *return-ticket*¹²? Yes, my ticket is *available*¹³ for a month; and I have sent my luggage by a *goods*¹⁴ train. At what hotel do you *stop*¹⁵ in Paris? I think I shall take apartments *this time*¹⁶. Have you any apartments to let? Yes, sir, I *have*¹⁷ several. What apartments *do you wish to have*¹⁸? I want a *furnished*¹⁹ apartment. I have a first and a second floor, that I can let, (either) together or separate. One of them will be enough for me. Let us see the first floor; is it furnished? No, *not*²⁰ at present; but I can have

¹ comment vous portez-vous? ² Assez ³ près de ⁴ Est-ce que je ne vous ai pas dit ⁵ en ⁶ Voudriez-vous avoir l'obligeance de porter ⁷ partir ⁸ fait le service ⁹ Combien de temps ¹⁰ attraper ¹¹ de petite vitesse ¹² billet de retour ¹³ valable ¹⁴ train de marchandises ¹⁵ descendre ¹⁶ fois f. ¹⁷ j'en ai ¹⁸ désirez-vous ¹⁹ meublé ²⁰ pas

it furnished in a few hours. What is the rent? A hundred and twenty-francs *a month*²¹. It is very dear. How much do you ask for the second floor? I cannot let it *under*²² ninety francs a month. I will give you eighty. Very well. When do you wish to take possession *of it*²³? I intend to come (and) *sleep*²⁴ here to-night.

3 Can you recommend me a good tailor? Yes; go *to*²⁵ my tailor, *he will please you*²⁶. I *want*²⁷ a coat, a waistcoat, and a pair of trousers; show me your patterns. I have all sorts of colours, and of the finest cloth. I like this *light blue*²⁸, but that colour soon fades. It is a colour which is much *in*²⁹ fashion. What do you think of this green? I like black best. What will you charge for a coat of this cloth? Ninety-francs, *lined with*³⁰ silk. Take my measure, but remember that I will not have the coat too long. When will it be ready? You shall have it, at latest, next Saturday. Do not disappoint me, *for*³¹ I am invited to a dinner (on) *that day*³² at the English ambassador's. You may rely on it. At what o'clock *do you want it*³³? I must have it, at latest, at six o'clock. I will be *at your house*³⁴ at five o'clock.

4 Will you stay and dine with us to-day? You are very kind, madam, I accept with pleasure; but I shall be obliged to *leave*³⁵ you early, as I promised to be *back*³⁶ before ten o'clock. You may *go*³⁷ when you *please*³⁸. At what o'clock do you dine? We dine at seven o'clock. Will you allow me, then, to go (and) *wash my*³⁹ hands? The servant will show you the room. John, *take*⁴⁰ this gentleman *to*⁴¹ the *spare*⁴² bedroom. Will you have some hot water? If you please, and some soap too; I do not see *any*⁴³ on the washstand. What is that bell? It is the dinner-bell; but it is only *the first bell*⁴⁴, you have a quarter of an hour *to*⁴⁵ prepare yourself. The dinner is always served at seven o'clock precisely. Shall I show you the dining-room? It is the first door to the left.

5 Do you learn French? Yes, I have been studying it the last six months. Do you find it difficult? Yes, *rather*⁴⁶ difficult, especially the grammar. Is your pronunciation good? My master says it is good; but I had much *trouble*⁴⁷ in the beginning. It is a very useful language, especially *to people*⁴⁸ who travel much; it is now spoken in every country in Europe. Yes, *I know it*⁴⁹. How many lessons *a*

21 par mois 22 à moins de 23 en 24 coucher 25 chez 26 vous en serez content 27 Il me faut 28 bleu clair 29 à la 30 doublé de 31 car 32 ce jour-là 33 vous le faut-il 34 chez vous 35 quitter 36 de retour 37 vous en aller 38 voudrez 39 me laver les 40 conduire 41 dans 42 d'ami 43 en 44 le premier coup 45 pour 46 un peu 47 peine 48 pour les gens 49 je le sais

*week*¹ do you take? I have a lesson every day, and I go three or four times a week to the theatre, in order to hear good pronunciation. *I have no doubt*² that you *will soon speak*³ French fluently and elegantly. When do you think of *going*⁴ to England? *Not*⁵ before the month of May. I hope you will often come (and) see us, and talk French with me; *it*⁶ will be a very good lesson for you. I am very much obliged to you. I can now read and understand all the French works, *whether*⁷ in prose or⁸ poetry.

6 Do you like *shooting*⁹? Yes; but I prefer fox-hunting. Do you often follow the hunt? *I generally go*¹⁰ once a¹¹ week, and I would go oftener if I had time. Has not your brother-in-law a pack of hounds? He *had*¹² one, but he (has) sold it. Has he any dogs now? I think he has (*en a*) three or four. How many horses has he? He has four, two grey horses for his carriage, a saddle-horse for himself, and a pony for his son. Have you seen his stables? Yes; I saw them last year, and they are really beautiful. *Whose*¹³ house is this, that we see on the top of the hill? It is a rich merchant of London who (has) built it for his family. Do you *know*¹⁴ him? No; I only know him *by*¹⁵ sight. I see him every morning going to the railway station. *Are there*¹⁶ many good families in this neighbourhood? We have about half a dozen of them (*en*) that we know.

7 Have you travelled much? Yes; I have travelled *in many*¹⁷ countries. I have been to France, *Germany*¹⁸, *Switzerland*¹⁹, Italy, and even to Turkey. *I am very fond of*²⁰ travelling. Do you like travelling by sea? I should like it very much, if I were not so sick; but I *must confess*²¹ I prefer travelling by railway. I suppose you have seen the celebrated cathedral of Strasburg, with its marvellous steeple? Yes; and I have seen many other things well worthy of *notice*²²: such as Westminster Abbey, proud of the tombs of its kings; the cathedral of Rheims, with stones transparent like lace; and the church of St. Peter, at Rome, with its wonderful dome. Have you ever seen the banks of the Rhine? They are magnificent. I think *everything*²³ is *very cheap*²⁴ in Germany. We stayed a *fortnight*²⁵ at Hamburg, in one of the best hotels, and we found the *charges*²⁶ very moderate. You can live well for five francs a day.

¹ par semaine ² Je ne doute pas ³ ne parlez bientôt ⁴ aller ⁵ Pas ⁶ ce ⁷ soit ⁸ soit
⁹ en ¹⁰ chasse au fusil ¹¹ J'y vais ¹² par ¹³ en avait ¹⁴ A qui ¹⁵ connaitre ¹⁶ de
¹⁷ Y a-t-il ¹⁸ dans beaucoup de ¹⁹ Allemagne ²⁰ Suisse ²¹ J'aime beaucoup
²² je dois avouer ²³ de remarque ²⁴ tout ²⁵ à très-bon marché ²⁶ quinze jours
²⁷ prix

8 When shall you go back²⁶ to England? I do not think I shall return before next summer; *I want*²⁷ to know German well before I leave the country. I think you speak it very well for the *short*²⁸ time you have been here. Shall you leave your children in school, or shall you *take*²⁹ them with you? *They must*³⁰ stay twelve months *more*³¹ where they are, in order to know the language well, and to speak it correctly. My eldest son is a very good linguist; he speaks three languages fluently. *How long*³² has he been in Germany? *It will be*³³ two years next January. *How*³⁴ time passes! I should never have thought that *it was*³⁵ so long. The best *way*³⁶ to learn a language well and quickly is to go (and) live in the country. What town would you recommend in Germany? I think *Dresden*³⁷ is one of the best; there are some very good schools, and the people speak a very good German.

I will now give you a few biographical sketches of the most eminent French writers, *from*³⁸ the age of Louis XIV. to the present day³⁹.

BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES.

9 **Pierre Corneille**, born in 1606, died in 1684.—This great poet, born at Rouen in the beginning of the seventeenth century, was the first dramatic author of eminence among the French. To many defects, he joins beauties of the highest order⁴⁰; and although he does not possess the pure and delicate taste of Racine, and is inferior to him⁴¹ in the art of painting the tender passions, he has more fire and majesty. *The flights*⁴² of his imagination are sublime; the heroes whose characters he delineates are truly great, and his masterpiece, the "Cid," will ever remain on the French stage⁴³ as a fine monument of his genius.

10 **Jean Racine**, born in 1639, died in 1699.—Racine studied early, and with care, the Greek tragic poets, and perfected his taste after that reading. This poet is remarkable for the elegance of his style, and for the art with which he delineates⁴⁴ the tender passions. His poetry is highly harmonious, correct, and graceful. *He is reproached with*⁴⁵ too much sameness in the plot⁴⁶ of his plays, and in the character of his heroes; but the beauties he displays are so far⁴⁷ superior to his defects, that he is allowed⁴⁸ the first rank amongst the French

²⁶ retourner ²⁷ je veux ²⁸ le peu de ²⁹ emmener ³⁰ Il faut qu'ils ³¹ encore
³² Combien de temps ³³ Il y aura ³⁴ Comme ³⁵ il y avait ³⁶ moyen ³⁷ Dresde
³⁸ depuis ³⁹ jusqu'à nos jours ⁴⁰ de premier ordre ⁴¹ qu'il lui soit inférieur ⁴² élan
⁴³ scène f. ⁴⁴ peint ⁴⁵ On lui reproche ⁴⁶ intrigue ⁴⁷ si ⁴⁸ on lui accorde

tragic poets, which is, however, contested by Voltaire. Racine's son has supported the glory of his father. His poem on religion contains passages of the greatest beauty. His odes are much esteemed, and some of them worthy of Jean-Baptiste Rousseau.

11 Jean-Baptiste Poquelin de Molière was born in Paris in 1622, and died there in 1673. He early began to play comedies, and travelled in the provinces for twelve years before he began to play in Paris, where he became so celebrated. *It is*⁹ a received opinion that his comedies surpass the best performances of that kind amongst the ancients; and Voltaire calls him the best comic poet that ever existed. The fertility of his genius was astonishing: he spent the greater part of his time in writing comedies (both) in prose and in verse, which were much applauded. His last comedy was the "Malade Imaginaire" (the Hypochondriac). Whilst Molière was performing the principal *character*¹⁰ of that play, and *pretending to be dead*¹, he was seized with an illness, of which he died the next day.

12 Jean de la Fontaine, who is, perhaps, the most *genuine*² of all our writers, was born, 1621, at Château-Thierry, in Champagne, a year before Molière. As (a) fabulist, he has surpassed every other author, and the name of "The inimitable La Fontaine" has been given to him *by*³ common consent. His fables are perfectly natural, without the least affectation, and replete with wit. He was a man of extreme simplicity of *manners*⁴, full of candour and probity; but in society he was always absent and thoughtful, *so much so*⁵ that he often spoke to his friends without knowing them. Mme. de Sévigné used to say that La Fontaine's fables resembled a *pottle*⁶ of strawberries, of which we begin by *picking out*⁷ the best, and finish by eating them all. He died in 1695.

13 Boileau Despréaux, born in 1636, died March 13th, 1711, is one of the most celebrated poets of the age of Louis XIV. He is the Juvenal of the French, and in his satires he is *far*⁸ superior to the Roman writer in point of delicacy and chasteness of style. His productions *gained him*⁹ great reputation, particularly his "Art of Poetry," his "Epistles," and his "Lutrin." No French poet has been so correct in his style, and few equal him in strength and harmony. *It has been said*¹⁰ of him, that his verses will be read even when the language is obsolete, and will be the last ruins of it.

⁹ C'est ¹⁰ rôle m. ¹ contrefaisait le mort ² naturel ³ d'un ⁴ mœurs ⁵ à un tel point
⁶ panier ⁷ choisir ⁸ bien ⁹ lui acquirent ¹⁰ On a dit

14 Bossuet and Bourdaloue.—Bossuet was born with much more genius than Bourdaloue; however, the sermons of the latter are better written, better finished, and more methodical; *which*¹¹ ought not to surprise us, since they were the only object of his literary labours. If we compare one sermon with another, Bourdaloue will have the advantage; but, if we compare passages, he will lose greatly by the comparison. Bossuet is more luminous, original, and rapid; his style is elevated and strong, his familiarity is noble, the *soarings*¹² of his imagination are sublime, his descriptions lofty and striking, his transitions sudden, and yet *always* natural. He reveals profound truths, *which are only found by*¹³ diving deeply into our heart; the majesty of his thoughts, and his strength of expression, are truly *his own*¹⁴. He frightens the sinner, and gives him over to remorse to complete his conversion. Bossuet was born at Dijon, in 1627; and Bourdaloue at Bourges, in 1632. They both died in the year 1704.

15 Fénelon (François de Salignac de la Mothe) was born in 1651, at the castle of Fénelon, in Périgord, and died at Cambray in 1715, the same year as Louis XIV., whose grandson he had educated. He preached with success *from*¹⁵ the age of nineteen, and wrote many works which are admired for their beauty of style; but that *which has gained him*¹⁶ the greatest reputation is his “Télémaque,” in which he has displayed all the riches of the French language. No work had ever a greater reputation; it is written in a lively, simple, natural, and elegant manner; its features are well imagined, the moral sublime, and the political maxims it contains all tend to the happiness of mankind.

16 Massillon (Jean-Baptiste), born in 1663, at Hyère, in Provence, died in 1742. This divine is justly considered one of the best and most eloquent of French preachers. Louis XIV. once said of him, “When I hear other orators, I am *pleased with them*¹⁷”; but after having heard you, I am *displeased with*¹⁸ myself.” It is impossible to read his sermons without becoming better. His style is mild and elegant, and the effect of his declamation was irresistible.

17 Voltaire (François-Marie AROUET DE), born in 1694, died in Paris in 1778. This author is considered the most extraordinary genius that France ever produced; he has written (both) in verse and prose, on almost every subject, and generally with great success.

¹ ce qui ¹² élans ¹³ qu'on ne trouve qu'en ¹⁴ à lui ¹⁵ dès ¹⁶ lui s acquies ¹⁷ content d'eux ¹⁸ mécontent de

*From*¹⁹ his earliest youth he *showed*²⁰ proofs of the acuteness of his wit and brilliant imagination; such was the precocity of his genius, that *at twelve years of age*²¹ his poetical essays *would have done*²² honour to his *riper age*²³. His tragedies are masterpieces: although below Molière in the *comic style*²⁴, his comedies are replete with wit. His histories of Charles XII. and Peter the Great are models of historical composition. His "*Henriade*" is a fine epic poem, in which all the characters are well *supported*²⁵, the passions skilfully *laid open*²⁶, the descriptions striking, and accompanied *with*²⁷ all the enthusiasm of fine poetry: the subject, however, was ill-chosen, being *too near*²⁸ our age; it *shackled*²⁹ his creative imagination, and destroyed the illusion *we indulge in when*³⁰ reading *Tasso, Ariosto, Homer, and Virgil*³¹. The most perfect of his writings³² is his fugitive *poetry*³³, in which he has no rival.

18 Rousseau (Jean-Jacques), the son of a poor watchmaker, was born in 1712, at Geneva, and died in 1778, a few weeks after Voltaire. The life of this strange man and eccentric genius offers an astonishing series of vicissitudes, caused by his disordered imagination. He was of a proud and *fretful*³⁴ disposition³⁵, imagining that there was a conspiracy of men of letters against him, and that all men were his enemies. No Frenchman, perhaps, equalled him in the eloquence of style. All the secret *recesses*³⁶ of his heart are *laid open*³⁷ in his "*Confessions*;" *he casts aside*³⁸ the veil which covers hypocrisy, pride, and self-love, and appears a strange mixture of good and evil. *There never was a*³⁹ more paradoxical writer: he declaimed against theatres, and wrote plays; he expressed his contempt for French music, and *composed some*⁴⁰ which is *considered*⁴¹ very good. In his writings sublimity is joined to littleness; deep penetration to childish simplicity; *the height*⁴² of reason to folly. Rousseau attacks the Christian religion, praises the Gospel, and *draws a*⁴³ most beautiful picture of its Divine Author.

19 Montesquieu, born in 1689, died in 1755. His first literary production is entitled "*Persian Letters*," and gave proofs of a fine genius. His greatest work, the "*Spirit of Laws*," was much criticised, but has placed its author in the first rank among political writers. Montesquieu has examined his subject with so much clearness and judgment, that his book ought rather to have been named the Code of

¹⁹ Dès ²⁰ donna ²¹ à l'âge de douze ans ²² auraient fait ²³ Àge mûr ²⁴ genre *m.*
²⁵ soutenus ²⁶ développées ²⁷ de ²⁸ trop près de ²⁹ enchaîna ³⁰ à laquelle on
s'abandonne en ³¹ le Tasse, l'Arioste, Homère, et Virgile ³² ouvrages ³³ poésies *f. pl.*
³⁴ inquiet ³⁵ caractère ³⁶ replia *m. pl.* ³⁷ mis à découvert ³⁸ il déchire ³⁹ Il n'y
a jamais eu ⁴⁰ il en a composé ⁴¹ passe pour ⁴² le comble ⁴³ fait le

the *Laws of Nations*. His "*Considerations on the Causes of the Rise and Fall of the Romans*" is an excellent work.

20 Buffon, the greatest naturalist of modern times, was born in 1707, at Monthar, in Burgundy, and died in Paris in 1788. This writer has sometimes erred in his opinions, particularly in his epochs of nature, *which*⁴⁴ he freely confessed, and saw without displeasure the refutations which appeared. His "*Natural History*" is written in the most chaste and elegant style, and with surprising eloquence; it presents a mass, or *rather*⁴⁵ an invaluable treasure of facts and observations. He is, perhaps, the most astonishing interpreter of nature that *ever existed*⁴⁶.

21 Chateaubriand (François-René-Auguste, vicomte de), a statesman, and one of our finest writers, *was born*⁴⁷ at St. Malo in 1768. His father intended him *for*⁴⁸ the navy; but he showed an invincible repugnance for that branch of the service. His *early*⁴⁹ years were passed in solitude and ardent study, from which the attractions of the capital could not *divert him*⁵⁰. In 1791, whilst the French revolution *was raging*¹, he set out for America, where he remained (for) some time, and *paid*² his respects to General Washington. But having read in an English journal (of) the flight of the royal family of France, and their arrest, he returned with his genius *awakened*³ by the contemplation of nature, *as seen*⁴ in the wild magnificence of American Savannahs, lakes, rivers, and forests. During the Reign of Terror, the young viscount came to *live in*⁵ London, where he suffered *such*⁶ extreme poverty, that he declares himself to have passed three days without food. It was soon after this that he published his "*Génie du Christianisme*," a work which produced a prodigious effect. In 1800 he ventured to return to France; and his fame becoming more spread by "*Atala*" and "*René*," the first consul, Bonaparte, *sent for him*⁷ and appointed him, in 1803, secretary *to*⁸ the legation at Rome, and then minister to Switzerland. The publication of his "*Martyrs*," a sort of *prose epic*⁹, confirmed his reputation. In 1806 he *paid*¹⁰ that pilgrimage to Jerusalem which produced his finest work, under the title of "*Itinéraire de Paris à Jérusalem*." When Bonaparte was sent to Elba, Chateaubriand, in order to confirm the new zeal of the country towards the Bourbons, published his "*Bonaparte et les Bourbons*." Louis XVIII. *pronounced it worth an army*¹¹, and appointed the author ambas-

" ce que " plutôt " qui ait jamais existé " naquit " à " premières " le distraire " sévissait " présenta " exalté " telle qu'il l'avait vue " demeurer à " si " le fit appeler " de " poème épique en prose " fit " déclare qu'il lui avait valu une armée.

sador to Sweden. He successively represented France at Berlin, London, Verona, and Rome. Besides the works already mentioned, he published several others, "Les Natchez," "Études Historiques," &c. Whatever opinion may be pronounced on his writings, it is certain that they produced great influence on his age¹². He was idolised by the youth of France. He died July 10th, 1848, a few months after the proclamation of the republic he had predicted.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES.

A Lesson.

22 A friend of Dean Swift one day sent him a turbot, as a present, by a servant who had *frequently been on similar errands*¹³, but who had never received the most trifling mark of the dean's generosity. *Having gained admission*¹⁴, he opened the door of the study, and abruptly putting down the fish, cried very rudely, "*Master*¹⁵ has sent you a turbot." "Young man," said the dean, rising from his easy chair, "*is that the way*¹⁶ you deliver your message? Let me teach you better manners. Sit down in my chair; we will change situations, and I will show you how to behave in future." The boy sat down, and the dean, going to the door, *came up to*¹⁷ the table *with a*¹⁸ respectful pace, and making a *low bow*¹⁹, said, "Sir, my master presents his kind compliments, hopes you are well, and *requests your acceptance of*²⁰ a small present." "*Does he*²¹" replied the boy; "return him my best thanks, and there's half-a-crown for yourself." The dean, thus drawn into an act of generosity, laughed heartily, and gave the boy a crown for his wit.

Napoleon and the British Sailor.

23 Whilst the French troops were encamped at Boulogne, public attention was much excited by the daring attempt *at escape*²² made by an English sailor. This person having escaped from the dépôt, and gained the borders of the sea, *the woods near which*²³ served him for concealment, constructed, *with no other*²⁴ instrument than a knife, a

¹² siècle m. ¹³ souvent fait de pareilles commissions ¹⁴ Ayant été introduit ¹⁵ Mon maître ¹⁶ est-ce ainsi que ¹⁷ s'avança vers ¹⁸ d'un ¹⁹ un profond salut ²⁰ vous prie d'accepter ²¹ Vraiment! ²² d'évasion ²³ dont les bois voisins ²⁴ sans autre

boat entirely of the bark of trees. When the weather was fair, he mounted a tree and looked out for the English flag; and having at last *observed*²⁵ a British cruiser, he ran to the shore with his boat on his back, and *was about to*²⁶ trust himself in his frail vessel to the waves, when he was pursued, arrested, and loaded with chains. Everybody in the army *was anxious to*²⁷ see the boat, and Napoleon, having at length heard of the affair, *sent for*²⁸ the sailor and interrogated him. "You must," said Napoleon, "have had a great desire to see your country again, since you could resolve to trust yourself on the open sea in so frail a bark. I suppose you have left a sweetheart there?" "No," said the sailor, "but a poor infirm mother, whom *I was anxious to*²⁹ see." "And you shall see her," said Napoleon, giving at the same time orders to set him at liberty, and to bestow upon him a considerable sum of money for his mother, observing that "she must be a good mother who had so good a son."

The Old Man and his Ass.

24 An old man and a little boy were driving an ass to the next market to sell. "*What a fool is this fellow*³⁰!" says a man upon the road³¹, "*to be trudging it on foot*³² with his son, *that*³³ this ass may go light³⁴." The old man hearing this, set his boy upon the ass, and went whistling by the side of him. "*Why, sirrah*³⁵!" cried a second man to the boy, "is it fit for you to be riding, while your poor old father is walking on foot?" The father, upon this rebuke, took down his boy from the ass, and mounted himself. "Do you see," says a third, "*how the lazy old knave*³⁶ *rides along*³⁷ upon his beast, while his poor little boy is almost crippled with walking³⁸?" The old man no sooner heard this, than he took up his son *behind him*³⁹. "*Pray, honest friend*⁴⁰," says a fourth, "is that ass your own?" "Yes," says the man. "One would not have thought so," replied the other, "*by your loading him*⁴¹ so unmercifully. You and your son are better able to carry the poor beast than he you." "*Anything to please*⁴²," says the owner; and alighting with his son, they tied the legs of the ass together, and by the help of a pole endeavoured to carry him upon their shoulders over the bridge that led to the town. This was so entertaining a sight, that the people

²⁵ découvert ²⁶ était sur le point de ²⁷ curieux de ²⁸ fit venir ²⁹ désirais ³⁰ Quel imbécille! ³¹ passant m. ³² d'aller ainsi péniblement à pied ³³ afin que ³⁴ marcher à son aise ³⁵ Comment maraud! ³⁶ ce vieux fainéant ³⁷ chemine ³⁸ n'en peut plus à force de marcher ³⁹ en croupe ⁴⁰ Dites-moi, mon ami ⁴¹ en vous voyant le charger ⁴² Tout à votre service, monsieur

ran in crowds to laugh at it, till the ass, conceiving a dislike to the over-complaisance of his master, burst asunder the cords that tied him, slipped from the pole, and tumbled into the river. The poor old man made the best of his way home⁴³, ashamed and vexed that⁴⁴, by endeavouring to please everybody, he had pleased nobody, and lost his ass into⁴⁵ the bargain. — (World.)

Anecdote of Frederic II.

25 This great king, being one day very busy in his study, rang the bell several times, and nobody came. He opened the door, and found his page asleep in an arm-chair. He advanced towards⁴⁶ him, and was going to⁴⁷ awake him, when he perceived the corner of a note peeping out of⁴⁸ his pocket. Feeling curious to⁴⁹ know its contents, he took¹ and read it. It was a letter from the young man's mother, who thanked him for sending her² part of his salary to relieve her in her poverty. She concluded by telling him that God would bless him for such conduct. The king, after reading³ the note, returned softly to his room, took a purse full of ducats, and slipped it with the note into the pocket of the page: then going back to⁴ his room, he rang so hard that the page awoke, and went in⁵. "You have slept well," said the king to him. The page wished to excuse himself. In his confusion, he put his hand into his pocket, and felt the purse with astonishment. He drew it out, turned pale⁶, and looked at the king, shedding a flood of tears, without being able to⁷ utter a word. "What is it?" said the king; "what is the matter with you?" "Ah! sire," said the young man, falling on his knees, "somebody wishes to ruin me. I do not know what money this is which I find in my pocket." "My friend," said Frederic, "God often sends us blessings⁹ when we are asleep. Send the money to your mother, salute her on my part, and tell her that I will take care both of her and you."

Rural Life in England.

26 The stranger who would form¹⁰ a correct opinion of the English character, must not confine his observations to the metropolis. He

⁴³ s'en retourna chez lui au plus vite ⁴⁴ de ce que ⁴⁵ pardessus ⁴⁶ s'approcha de
⁴⁷ allait ⁴⁸ qui sortait de ⁴⁹ Curieux de ¹ il le prit ² de lui avoir envoyé ³ après
 l'avoir lu ⁴ étant retourné ⁵ entra ⁶ pâlit ⁷ sans pouvoir ⁸ qu'avez-vous? ⁹ bien-faits
¹⁰ voudrait se former

must go forth into the country ; he must sojourn in the villages and hamlets ; he must visit castles, villas, farm-houses, cottages ; he must wander through parks and gardens ; along hedges and green lanes ; he must loiter about country churches ; attend *wakes*¹¹ and fairs, and other rural festivals ; and cope with the people in all *their*¹² conditions, and all their habits and *humours*¹³.

In some countries the large cities absorb the wealth and fashion of the nation : they are the only fixed abodes of elegant and intelligent society, and the country is inhabited almost entirely by boorish peasantry. In England, on the contrary, the metropolis is a mere *gathering place*¹⁴, or general rendezvous of the *polite*¹⁵ classes, where they devote a small portion of the year to a *hurry*¹⁶ of gaiety and dissipation, and *having indulged this*¹⁷ carnival, return again to the apparently more congenial habits of rural life. The various orders of society are therefore diffused over the whole surface of the kingdom, and the most retired *neighbourhoods*¹⁸ afford specimens of the different ranks.

The English, in fact, are *strongly gifted with the rural feeling*¹⁹. They possess a *quick sensibility to the*²⁰ beauties of nature, and a *keen relish for*²¹ the pleasures and enjoyments of the country. This passion seems inherent in them. Even the inhabitants of cities, born and brought up among brick walls and *bustling streets*²², enter with facility into rural habits, and evince a *turn*²³ for rural occupation. The merchant has his snug retreat in the vicinity of the metropolis, where he often displays as much pride and zeal in the cultivation of his flower-garden, and the maturing of his fruits, as (he does) in the conduct of his business and the success of his commercial enterprises. Even those less fortunate individuals, who are doomed to pass their lives in the midst of din and traffic, contrive to have something that shall remind them of the green aspect of nature. In the most dark and dingy quarters of the city, the drawing-room window resembles frequently a *bank of flowers*²⁴ ; every spot *capable*²⁵ of vegetation has its grass-plot and flower-bed ; and every square its *quintic*²⁶ park, laid out with picturesque taste and gleaming with refreshing verdure.

Those who see the Englishman only in town, are apt to form an unfavourable opinion of his social character. He is either absorbed in business or distracted by the thousand engagements that dissipate time,

¹¹ fêtes de village ¹² ses ¹³ caractère *m.* ¹⁴ lieu de réunion ¹⁵ élevées ¹⁶ au tourbillon ¹⁷ après avoir joui des plaisirs de cette espèce de ¹⁸ lieux ¹⁹ ont un profond sentiment des charmes de la campagne ²⁰ ils sont extrêmement sensibles aux ²¹ ils aiment passionnément ²² dans le fracas des rues ²³ un goût prononcé ²⁴ un parterre ²⁵ susceptible ²⁶ artificiel

thought, and feeling, in this huge metropolis: he has, therefore, too commonly a *look of hurry and abstraction*²⁷. Wherever he happens to be, he is on the point of going somewhere else; at the moment he is talking on one subject, his mind is wandering to another; and *while paying a friendly visit*²⁸ he is calculating how he shall economise time so as to pay the other visits *allotted to the morning*²⁹. An immense metropolis like London is calculated to make men selfish and uninteresting. In their casual and transient meetings, *they can but deal briefly in commonplaces*³⁰. They present but the cold superficies of character—its rich and genial qualities have no time *to be warmed into a glow*³¹.

It is in the country that the Englishman gives scope to his natural feelings. He *breaks loose*³² gladly from the cold formalities and negative civilities of town; throws off his habits of shy reserve, and becomes joyous and free-hearted. He manages to collect around him all the conveniences and elegancies of polite life, and to banish its restraint. His country seat abounds with every requisite, either for studious retirement, tasteful gratification, or rural exercise. Books, paintings, music, horses, dogs, and sporting implements of all kinds, are at hand. He puts no constraint either upon his guests or himself, but in the true spirit of hospitality provides the means of enjoyment, and leaves every one to partake according to his inclination.—WASHINGTON IRVING.

Louis XI., King of France, and Philippe de Commines.

27 *Louis XI.* They say that you have written my history.—*Commines.* It is true, sire; and I have spoken of you as a good subject ought to do.—*Louis.* It is said that you have related many things which *cannot but*³³ displease me.—*Com.* *That may be*³⁴: but, after all, I have *drawn*³⁵ a very favourable picture of you. Was I to be a flatterer instead of an historian?—*Louis.* You ought to have spoken of me as a faithful subject, who loves his king and has his glory at heart.—*Com.* *We seek for*³⁶ truth in history, and not fine compliments.—*Louis.* Why *must there be people*³⁷ who have an itch for writing? The dead should be left in peace, and their memory should not be stained.—*Com.* The good and bad qualities of kings, their virtues and their vices, ought

²⁷ un air inquiet et rêveur ²⁸ pendant qu'il est chez un ami ²⁹ qu'il doit rendre dans la matinée ³⁰ ils ne peuvent que débiter à la hâte quelques phrases banales ³¹ de se montrer dans tout leur éclat ³² s'affranchit ³³ ne peuvent que ³⁴ C'est possible
³⁵ fait ³⁶ Nous cherchons la ³⁷ faut-il qu'il y ait des gens

faithfully to be transmitted to posterity, in order to serve as lessons and examples.—*Louis*. What! ought not history to³⁸ respect kings?—*Com*. Let kings³⁹ respect themselves, and they will escape censure. They⁴⁰ who wish to be praised after their death, have but⁴¹ one resource, which is, to do good while they live.—FÉNELON.

The Burning of Moscow (1812).

28 On the 14th September, 1812, while the rear-guard of the Russians were in the act of evacuating Moscow, Napoleon reached the hill called the Mount of Salvation, because it is there that the natives kneel and cross themselves⁴² at first sight of the Holy City.

Moscow seemed lordly and striking as ever, with the steeples of its thirty churches, and its copper domes glittering in the sun; its palaces of eastern architecture mingled with trees and surrounded with gardens; and its Kremlin, a huge triangular mass of towers, something between⁴³ a palace and a castle, which rose like a citadel out of the general mass of groves and buildings. But not⁴⁴ a chimney sent up smoke⁴⁵, not a man appeared on the battlements or at the gates. Napoleon gazed, every moment expecting to see a train of bearded⁴⁶ boyards arriving to fling themselves at his feet, and place their wealth at his disposal. His first exclamation was, "Behold at last⁴⁷ that celebrated city!" His next⁴⁸, "It was full time." His army, less regardful of the past or the future, fixed their eyes on the goal of their wishes, and a shout of "Moscow! Moscow!" passed from rank to⁴⁹ rank. . . .

When he entered the gates of Moscow, Bonaparte, as if unwilling to encounter the sight of the empty streets, stopped immediately on entering the⁵⁰ first suburb. His troops were quartered in the desolate city. During the first (few) hours after their arrival, an obscure¹ rumour, which could not be traced², but one of those which are sometimes found to get abroad before the approach of some awful certainty, announced that the city would be endangered by fire in the course of the night. The report seemed to arise from those evident circumstances which rendered the event probable; but no one took any notice of it, until at midnight, when the soldiers were startled from their quarters by the report that the town was in flames. The memorable conflagration

³⁸ l'histoire ne doit-elle pas ³⁹ Que les rois ⁴⁰ Ceux ⁴¹ n'ont que ⁴² font le signe de la croix ⁴³ tenant le milieu entre ⁴⁴ pas ⁴⁵ ne fumait ⁴⁶ à longue barbe ⁴⁷ La voilà donc enfin ⁴⁸ la seconde ⁴⁹ en ⁵⁰ à l'entrée du ¹ sourd ² à l'origine duquel on ne put remonter

began amongst the coachmakers' warehouses and workshops in the Bazaar, or general market, which was the most rich district of the city. It was imputed to accident, and the progress of the flames was subdued by the exertions of the French soldiers. Napoleon, who had been roused by the tumult, hurried to the spot, and when the alarm seemed at an end, he retired, not to his former quarters in the suburbs, but to the Kremlin, the hereditary palace of the only sovereign whom he had ever treated *as an*³ equal, and over whom his *successful*⁴ arms had now attained such an apparently immense superiority. Yet he did not suffer himself to be dazzled by the advantage he had obtained, but availed himself of the light of the *blazing*⁵ Bazaar to write to the Emperor proposals of peace with his own hand. They were despatched by a Russian officer *of rank*⁶, who had been disabled by indisposition from following the army. But no answer was ever returned.

Next day the flames had disappeared, and the French officers employed themselves in selecting out of the deserted palaces of Moscow that which best pleased the fancy of each for residence. At night the flames again arose in the north and west quarters of the city. As the greater part of the houses were built of wood, the conflagration spread with the most dreadful rapidity. This was at first imputed to the blazing brands and sparkles which were carried by the wind; but at length it was observed that *as often as*⁷ the wind changed—and it changed three times in that terrible night—new flames *broke always forth*⁸ in that direction *where the existing gale was calculated to*⁹ direct them on the Kremlin. These horrors were increased by the chance of explosion. There was, though as yet unknown to the French, a magazine of powder in the Kremlin; besides that, a park of artillery, with its ammunition, was drawn up under the Emperor's window. Morning came, and with it a dreadful scene. During the whole night, the metropolis had glared with an *untimely and unnatural*¹⁰ light. It was now covered with a thick and suffocating atmosphere of almost palpable smoke. The flames defied the efforts of the French soldiery; and it *is* said that the fountains of the city, had been rendered inaccessible, the water-pipes cut, and the fire-engines destroyed or carried off.

Then came the reports *of fire-balls having been found*¹¹ burning on deserted houses; of men and women that, like demons, had been seen openly spreading flames, and *who were said*¹² to be furnished with combustibles for rendering their dreadful work more secure. Several

³ en ⁴ victorieuses ⁵ en flammes ⁶ distingué ⁷ toutes les fois que ⁸ éclataient toujours ⁹ d'où le vent pouvait ¹⁰ lugubre et surnaturelle ¹¹ qu'on avait trouvé des globes enflammés ¹² qu'on disait

wretches against whom such acts had been charged were seized upon, and, probably without much inquiry, were shot on the spot. While it was almost impossible to *keep*¹³ the roof of the Kremlin clear of the burning brands which the wind showered down, Napoleon watched from the windows the course of the fire which devoured his fair conquest, and the exclamation burst from him¹⁴, "*These are indeed Scythians*"¹⁵."

The equinoctial gales rose *higher and higher upon the*¹⁶ third night, and extended the flames, with which *there was no longer any human power of*¹⁷ contending. At (the dead hour of) midnight, the Kremlin itself was found to be on fire. A soldier of the Russian police, charged with being the incendiary, was *turned over to the summary vengeance*¹⁸ of the Imperial Guard. Bonaparte was then, at length, persuaded by the entreaties of all around him¹⁹ to relinquish his quarters in the Kremlin, to which, as the visible mark of his conquest, he had seemed to cling with the tenacity of a lion holding a fragment of his prey. He encountered both difficulty and danger in retiring from the palace, and before he could gain the city-gate, he had to traverse with his suite streets *arched with fire*²⁰, and in which the very air they breathed was suffocating. At length he gained the open country, and took up his abode in a palace of the Czar's, called Petrowsky, about a French league from the city. As he looked back on the fire, which, under the influence of the autumnal wind, *swelled and surged round the*²¹ Kremlin, like an infernal ocean around a sable Pandemonium, he could not suppress the ominous expression, "This bodes us great misfortune."

The fire continued to triumph unopposed, and consumed in a few days what it had cost centuries to raise. "Palaces and temples," says a Russian author, "monuments of art, and miracles of luxury, the remains of ages which had passed away, and those which had been the creation of yesterday; the tombs of ancestors, and the *nursery-cradles*²² of the present generation, were *indiscriminately*²³ destroyed. Nothing was left of Moscow save the remembrance of the city, and the deep resolution to *avenge its fall*²⁴."—WALTER SCOTT.

¹³ (*keep clear*) débarrasser ¹⁴ et il lui échappa cette exclamation ¹⁵ ce sont des Scythes ¹⁶ de plus en plus la ¹⁷ aucune force humaine ne pouvait plus ¹⁸ livré à la vengeance ¹⁹ de tout ce qui l'entoure ²⁰ recouvertes par les flammes ²¹ s'élevaient en tourbillons des toits du ²² berceau ²³ tout fut ²⁴ d'en venger la chute

The Normans.

29 The Normans were then the foremost race of Christendom. Their valour and ferocity *had made them conspicuous*²⁸ among the rovers whom Scandinavia had sent forth to ravage Western Europe. Their sails were long the terror of both coasts of the *channel*²⁹. Their arms were *repeatedly*³⁰ carried far into the heart of the Carlovingian empire, and were victorious under the walls of Maestricht and Paris. At length one of the feeble heirs of Charlemagne ceded to the strangers a fertile province, watered by a noble river, and contiguous to the sea, which was their favourite element. In that province they founded a mighty state, which gradually extended its influence over the neighbouring principalities of Brittany and Maine. Without *laying aside*³¹ that dauntless valour which had been the terror of *every land*³², from the Elbe to the Pyrenees, the Normans rapidly acquired all, and more than all, *the knowledge*³³ and refinement which they found in the country where they *had settled*³⁴. Their courage secured their territory against foreign invasion. They established internal order, *such as had been long unknown*³⁵ in the Frank empire. They embraced Christianity, and with Christianity they learned a great part of what the clergy had to teach. They abandoned their *native speech*³⁶ and adopted the French tongue, in which the Latin was the predominant element. They speedily raised their new language to a dignity and importance which it had never before possessed. They found it a barbarous jargon; they fixed it in writing, and they employed it in legislation, in poetry, and in *romance*³⁷. They renounced that brutal intemperance to which all the other branches of the great German family were too much inclined. The *polite luxury*³⁸ of the Norman presented a striking contrast *to*³⁹ the coarse voracity and drunkenness of his Saxon and Danish neighbours. He loved to display his magnificence, not *in huge piles*⁴⁰ of food and *hogsheads*⁴¹ of strong drink, but in large and stately edifices, rich armour, gallant horses, choice falcons, well-ordered tournaments, banquets delicate rather than abundant, and wines remarkable rather for their exquisite flavour than for their intoxicating power. That chivalrous spirit which has exercised so powerful an influence on the politics, morals, and manners of all European nations, *was found in the highest exaltation*⁴² among the Norman nobles. Those nobles *were dis-*

²⁸ les avaient rendus célèbres ²⁹ Manche. f. ³⁰ à plusieurs reprises ³¹ se dépouiller de
³² tout le pays ³³ les connaissances ³⁴ ils s'étaient établis ³⁵ qui avait depuis long-
temps été inconnu ³⁶ langue maternelle ³⁷ les romans ³⁸ le luxe raffiné ³⁹ avec
⁴⁰ dans des monceaux ⁴¹ tonneau ⁴² se trouvait au plus haut degré

*tinguished*³⁰ by their graceful bearing and insinuating *address*⁴¹. They were *distinguished*⁴² also by their skill in negotiation, and by a natural eloquence which they assiduously cultivated. It was the boast of one of their historians that the Norman gentlemen were orators from the cradle. But their chief fame *was derived*⁴³ from their military exploits. Every country, from the Atlantic Ocean to the Dead Sea, *witnessed the*⁴⁴ prodigies of their discipline and valour. One Norman knight, at the head of a handful of warriors, scattered the Celts of Connaught. Another founded the monarchy of the Two Sicilies, and saw the emperors, (both) of the East and of the West, fly before his arms. A third, the Ulysses of the first Crusade, was invested by his fellow-soldiers with the sovereignty of Antioch; and a fourth, the Tancred whose name lives in the great poem of Tasso, was celebrated *through*⁴⁵ Christendom as the bravest and most generous of the champions of the Holy Sepulchre.

The vicinity of so remarkable a people early began to produce an effect on the public mind of England. Before the Conquest, English princes received their education in Normandy. English sees and English estates were bestowed on Normans. Norman-French was familiarly spoken in the palace of Westminster. The court of Rouen seems to have been to the court of Edward the Confessor what the court of Versailles long afterwards was to the court of Charles II.—
LORD MACAULAY, *History of England*.

Execution of Mary Stuart.

Mary Stuart, the Queen Dowager of France, and the hereditary Queen of Scotland, was, without any exception, the most beautiful and accomplished woman of her time. Her countenance was lovely; she was tall, well-formed, elegant in all her motions, skilled in the exercises of riding and dancing, and possessed of all the female accomplishments which were fashionable at that period. She was beheaded in 1587, by order of her cousin Elizabeth, the Queen of England, after a captivity of nineteen years.

30 The two Earls of Shrewsbury and Kent came to Fotheringay Castle, and, being introduced to Mary, informed her of their commission, and desired her to prepare for death next morning at eight o'clock. She seemed *nowise* terrified, though somewhat surprised *with the intelligence*⁴⁶. She said, with a cheerful and even a smiling *countenance*⁴⁷,

³⁰ se distinguaient ⁴¹ manières ⁴² remarquable ⁴³ venait de ⁴⁴ furent témoins de
⁴⁵ dans toute la ⁴⁶ de cette nouvelle ⁴⁷ air

that she did not think the queen, her sister, would have consented to her death, or have executed the sentence against a person not subject to the laws and jurisdiction of England. "But as such is her will," said she, "death, which puts an end to all my miseries, *will be to me most welcome*⁴⁸; nor can I esteem that soul worthy the felicities of heaven which cannot support the body under the horrors of the last passage to these blissful *mansions*⁴⁹. When the earls had left her she ordered supper to be hastened, that she might have *the more*⁵⁰ leisure after (it) to finish the few affairs which remained to her in this world, and to prepare for her passage to another. She supped sparingly, *as her manner usually was*¹, and her wonted cheerfulness did not even desert her on this occasion. She comforted her servants under the affliction which overwhelmed them, and which was too violent for them to conceal it from her. Towards morning she arose and dressed herself in a rich habit of silk velvet, the only one she had reserved to herself. Having passed into the hall, where was erected the scaffold, covered with black, she saw, with an undismayed countenance, the executioners and all the preparations of death. Here her old *servant*², Sir Andrew Melvil, *took an affecting leave of her*³. The warrant for her execution was then read to her; and during the ceremony she was silent, but showed in her behaviour an indifference and unconcern, as if the business had nowise regarded her. Before the executioners performed their office, the Dean of Peterborough *stepped forth*⁴; and though the queen frequently told him that he needed not concern himself about her, that she was settled in the ancient Catholic and Roman religion, and that she meant *to lay down her life in*⁵ defence of that faith, he still thought it his duty to persist in his lectures and exhortations. She now began, with the aid of her two women, to disrobe herself; and the executioner also lent his hand to assist them. She smiled, and said that she was not accustomed to undress herself before so large a company, nor to be served by such valets. Her servants seeing her in this condition, ready to lay her head upon the block, burst into tears and lamentations. She turned about to them, put her finger upon her lips *as a sign of imposing silence upon them*⁶, and having given them her blessing, desired them to pray for her. One of her maids, whom she had appointed for that purpose, covered her eyes with a handkerchief; she laid herself down without any sign of fear or trepidation, and her head was severed from her body *at two strokes*⁷ by the executioner. He instantly held it up to the spectators, streaming with blood and

⁴⁸ me sera des plus agréables ⁴⁹ demeure *f.* ⁵⁰ plus de ¹ selon sa coutume ² serviteur ³ lui fit des adieux touchants ⁴ se présenta ⁵ de donner sa vie pour ⁶ comme pour leur imposer silence ⁷ au second coup

agitated with the convulsions of death. The Dean of Peterborough alone exclaimed, "So perish all Queen Elizabeth's enemies!" The Earl of Kent alone replied, "Amen!" The attention of all the other spectators was fixed on the melancholy scene before them, and zeal and flattery alike gave place to present pity and admiration of the expiring princess. Thus perished, in the forty-fifth year of her age, and nineteenth of her captivity in England, Mary, Queen of Scots; a woman of great accomplishments both of body and mind, natural as well as acquired. -- HUME.

The Family of Wakefield before the Loss of their Fortune.

31 I was ever of opinion that the honest man, who married and brought up a large family, did more service than he who *continued single*⁸, and *only talked*⁹ of population. From this motive, *I had scarce taken orders a year before*¹⁰ I began to think seriously of matrimony, and chose my wife as she *did*¹¹ her wedding-gown — not for a fine glossy surface, but such qualities as would wear well. To do her justice, she was a good-natured, notable woman, and as for education, there were few country ladies who could show more. She could read any English book *without much spelling*¹²; but *for pickling, preserving*¹³, and cookery, none could excel her. She prided herself also *upon being*¹⁴ an excellent *contriver in housekeeping*¹⁵; though I could never find that we grew richer with all her contrivances.

However, we loved each other tenderly, and our fondness increased as we grew old. There was, in fact, nothing that could make us angry with the world or each other. We had an elegant house, situate in a fine country and a good neighbourhood. The year *was spent*¹⁶ in moral or rural amusements, in visiting our rich neighbours, and relieving *such as were*¹⁷ poor. We had no revolutions to fear, nor fatigues to undergo; all our adventures were by the fireside, and all our migrations from the blue bed to the brown.

As we lived near the road, we often had the traveller or stranger to visit us, to taste our gooseberry-wine, for which we had great reputation; and I profess, with the veracity of an historian, that I never

⁸ restait garçon ⁹ ne parlait que ¹⁰ il y avait à peine un an que j'avais pris les ordres
que ¹¹ choisit ¹² sans avoir beaucoup à épeler ¹³ pour les conserves au vinaigre,
les confitures ¹⁴ d'être ¹⁵ ménagère ¹⁶ se passait ¹⁷ ceux qui étaient

knew one of them *find fault with it*¹⁸. Our cousins, too, even to the fortieth remove¹⁹, all remembered their affinity, without any help from the herald's office, and came very frequently to see us. Some of them did us no great honour by these claims of kindred ; as we had *the blind, the maimed, and the halt*²⁰ amongst the number. However, my wife always insisted that, as they were the same *flesh and blood*, they should sit with us at the same table ; so that, if we had not very rich, we generally had very happy friends about us ; for this remark *will hold good through life*²¹, that *the poorer the guest*²² (297), the better pleased he ever is with being treated ; and as some men gaze with admiration at the colours of a tulip or the wing of a butterfly, so I was by nature an admirer of *happy human faces*²³. However, when any one of our relations was found to be a person of a very bad *character*²⁴, a troublesome guest, or one we desired to get rid of, upon his leaving my house, I ever took care to lend him a riding-coat, or a pair of boots, or sometimes a horse of small value, and I always had the satisfaction to find that he never came back to return them. By this the house *was cleared of such as*²⁵ we did not like ; but never was the family of Wakefield known to turn the traveller or the poor dependant out of doors.

Thus we lived several years in a state of much happiness ; not but that we sometimes had those *little rubs*²⁶ which Providence sends to enhance the value of its favours. My orchard was often robbed by schoolboys, and my wife's custards plundered by the cats or the children. The squire would sometimes fall asleep in the most pathetic parts of my sermon, or his lady return my wife's civilities at church with a mutilated courtesy. But *we soon got over*²⁷ the uneasiness caused by such accidents, and usually in three or four days began to wonder how they vexed us.

My children, the offspring of temperance, as they were educated without softness, so they were at once well-formed and healthy ; my sons hardy and active, my daughters beautiful and blooming. Our eldest son was named George, after his uncle, who left us ten thousand pounds. Our second child, a girl, I intended to call after her aunt Grissel ; but my wife, who had lately been reading romances, *insisted upon her being called*²⁸ Olivia. In less than another year we had another daughter, and now I was determined that Grissel should be her name ; but a rich relation taking a fancy to stand godmother, the

¹⁸ y trouver à redire ¹⁹ degré m. ²⁰ des aveugles, des estropiés, et des boiteux ²¹ est vrai en tout temps ²² plus l'hôte est pauvre ²³ de joyeux visages ²⁴ réputation f. ²⁵ était débarrassée de ceux que ²⁶ petites misères ²⁷ nous surmontions bientôt ²⁸ voulut qu'elle s'appelât

girl was by her directions called Sophia : so that we had two romantic names in the family ; but I solemnly protest *I had no hand in it*²⁹. Moses was our next, and, after an interval of twelve years, we had two sons more.

It would be fruitless to deny my exultation when I saw my little ones about me ; but the vanity and satisfaction of my wife were even greater than mine. When our visitors would say, " Well, upon my word, Mrs. Primrose, you have the finest children in the whole country ! " " Ay, neighbour," she would answer, " they are as Heaven made them—handsome enough, if they be good enough ; *for handsome is that handsome does*³⁰." And then she would bid the girls hold up their heads, who, to conceal nothing, were certainly very handsome. Mere outside is so very trifling a circumstance *with me*³¹, that I should scarce have remembered to mention it, had it not been a general topic of conversation in the country. Olivia, now about eighteen, had that luxuriancy of beauty, with which painters generally draw Hebe—open, sprightly, and *commanding*³². Sophia's features were not so striking at first, but often did more certain execution ; for they were soft, modest, and alluring. The one vanquished by a single blow, the other by efforts successively repeated.

My eldest son, George, was bred at Oxford, as I intended him for one of the learned professions. My second boy, Moses, whom I designed for business, received a sort of miscellaneous education at home. But it is needless to attempt describing the particular characters of *young people that had seen but very little of the world*³³. In short, a family likeness prevailed through all ; and, properly speaking, they had but one character—that of being all equally generous, credulous, simple, and inoffensive.—GOLDSMITH.

The Family of Wakefield after the Loss of their Fortune.

•

32 The place of our retreat was in a little neighbourhood, consisting of farmers who tilled their own grounds, and were equal strangers to opulence and poverty. As they had almost all the conveniences of life within themselves, they seldom visited towns or cities *in search of*³⁴

²⁹ que je n'y fus pour rien ³⁰ car celui-là est toujours beau qui fait bien ³¹ pour moi
³² imposante ³³ jeunes gens qui n'avaient vu le monde que fort peu ³⁴ pour y chercher

superfluities. *Remote from the polite*³⁵, they still retained the primeval simplicity of manners; and frugal by habit, they scarce knew that temperance was a virtue. They wrought with cheerfulness on days of labour, but observed festivals as intervals of idleness and pleasure. They *kept up the Christmas carol*³⁶, sent *true-love-knots on Valentine morning*³⁷, eat pancakes on *Shrove-tide*³⁸, showed their wit on the first of April, and religiously cracked nuts on Michaelmas eve. Being apprised of our approach, the whole neighbourhood came out to meet their minister, dressed in their fine clothes, and preceded by a pipe and tabor: a feast also was provided for our reception, at which we sat cheerfully down; and what the conversation wanted in wit, *was made up in laughter*³⁹.

Our little habitation was situated at the foot of a sloping hill, sheltered with a beautiful underwood behind, and a prattling river before; on one side a meadow, on the other a green. My farm consisted of about twenty acres of excellent land, having given a hundred pounds for my predecessor's goodwill. Nothing could exceed the neatness of my little enclosures, the elms and hedge-rows appearing with inexpressible beauty. My house consisted of but one story⁴⁰, and was covered with thatch, which gave it an air of great snugness; the walls on the inside were nicely whitewashed, and my daughters undertook to adorn them with pictures of their own designing. Though the same room served us for parlour and kitchen, *that only made it the warmer*⁴¹. Besides, as it was kept with the utmost neatness, the dishes, plates, and coppers being well scoured and all disposed in bright rows on the shelves, the eye was agreeably relieved, and did not want richer furniture. There were three other apartments: one for my wife and me; another for our two daughters within our own; and the third, with two beds, for the rest of the children.

The little republic to which I gave laws was regulated in the following manner: by sunrise we all assembled in our common apartment, the fire being previously kindled by the servant. After we had saluted each other with proper ceremony, (for I always thought fit to keep up some mechanical forms of good-breeding, without which freedom ever destroys friendship,) *we all bent in gratitude to that Being*⁴² who gave us another day. This duty being performed, my son and I went to pursue our usual industry abroad, while my wife and daughters employed themselves in providing breakfast, which was always ready at a certain

³⁵ Loin du monde poli ³⁶ célébraient Noël ³⁷ des lacs d'amour le jour de Saint Valentin ³⁸ pendant le carnaval ³⁹ le rire le suppléa ⁴⁰ n'avait qu'un étage ⁴¹ elle n'en était que plus chaude ⁴² nous nous agenouillions tous pour remercier l'Être

time. I allowed half an hour for this meal, and an hour for dinner; which time was taken up in innocent mirth between my wife and daughters, and in philosophical arguments between my son and me.

As we rose with the sun, so we never pursued our labour after it was gone down, *but returned home to the expecting family*⁴³, where smiling looks, a neat hearth, and pleasant fire were prepared for our reception. Nor were we without guests: sometimes Farmer Flam-borough, our talkative neighbour, and often the blind piper, would pay us a visit, and taste our gooseberry wine; for *the making of which*⁴⁴ we had lost neither the receipt nor the reputation. These harmless people had several ways of being good company; while one played, the other would sing some soothing ballad, "Johnny Armstrong's Last Good-night," or "The Cruelty of Barbara Allen." The night was concluded in the manner we began the morning, my youngest boys being appointed to read the lessons of the day, and he that read loudest, distinctest, and best, was to have a halfpenny on Sunday to put into the poor's box.

When Sunday came, it was indeed a day of finery, which all my sumptuary edicts could not restrain. *How well soever I fancied my lectures*⁴⁵ against pride had conquered the vanity of my daughters, yet I still found them secretly attached to all their former finery; they still loved laces, ribands, *bugles*⁴⁶, and *catgut*⁴⁷; my wife herself retained a passion for her crimson paduasoy, because *I formerly happened to say it became her*⁴⁸.

The first Sunday in particular their behaviour served to mortify me. I had desired my girls the preceding night to be dressed early the next day, for I always loved to be at church a good while before the rest of the congregation. They punctually obeyed my directions; but when we were to assemble in the morning at breakfast, down came my wife and daughters, dressed out in all their former splendour, their hair plastered up with pomatum, their faces *patched to taste*⁴⁹, their trains bundled up into a heap behind, and rustling at every motion. I could not help smiling at their vanity, particularly that of my wife, from whom I expected more discretion. In this exigence, therefore, my only resource was to order my son, with an important air, *to call*⁵⁰ our coach. The girls were amazed at the command; but I repeated it with more solemnity than before. "*Surely, my dear, you jest*⁵¹!" cried

⁴³ mais nous retournions au milieu de la famille qui nous attendait ⁴⁴ la fabrication duquel ⁴⁵ Quoique je m'imaginasse que mes sermons ⁴⁶ perles de Venise ⁴⁷ marli (a kind of gauze) ⁴⁸ il m'était jadis arrivé de lui dire qu'il lui allait bien ⁴⁹ tchété de mouches ⁵⁰ de faire venir ⁵¹ Assurément, mon ami, vous plaisantez

my wife, "we can walk (it) perfectly well; we want no coach to carry us now." "You mistake, child," returned I, "we do want a coach; for if *we walk*⁵⁰ to church in this trim, the very children in the parish will hoot after us." "Indeed," replied my wife, "*I always imagined*¹ that my Charles *was fond of seeing*² his children neat and handsome about him." "You may be as neat as you please," interrupted I, "and I shall love you the better for it; but all this is not neatness, but frippery. These ruffings, and pinkings, and patchings, *will only make us hated by*³ all the wives of our neighbours. No, my children," continued I, more gravely, "those gowns may be altered into something of a plainer cut, for finery is *very unbecoming in us*⁴, who want the means of decency. I do not know whether such flouncing and shredding is becoming even in the rich, if we consider, *upon a moderate calculation*⁵, that the nakedness of the indigent world may be clothed from the trimmings of the vain."

This remonstrance had *the proper effect*⁶; they went with great composure, that very instant, to change their dress; and the next day I had the satisfaction of finding my daughters, at their own request, employed in cutting up their trains into Sunday waists for Ted and Bill, the two little ones; and, what was still more satisfactory, the gowns seemed improved by this curtailng.—GOLDSMITH.

⁵⁰ nous allons à pied ¹ je m'étais toujours figuré ² aimait à voir ³ ne serviront qu'à nous faire détester de ⁴ très-déplacée en nous ⁵ d'après un calcul modéré ⁶ l'effet que j'en attendais.

N.B.—Students who have already acquired some knowledge of French, and who want more difficult exercises, will find in the "*Guide to French Translation*" a selection of instructive and entertaining pieces, which, it is hoped, will help them in their progress.

GRAMMATICAL QUESTIONS

REFERRING TO THE RULES IN THE GRAMMAR, AND TO BE USED AT EACH LESSON, IN ORDER TO FAMILIARISE THE PUPIL WITH THE QUESTIONS GIVEN IN THE VARIOUS FRENCH EXAMINATIONS.

Des Signes Orthographiques.

Quelles sont les lettres de l'alphabet (1*) ?
Quelles sont les voyelles et les consonnes (2 et 3) ?
Quel est l'usage des accents, et quels sont-ils (4 *et seq.*) ?
Quel est l'usage de l'apostrophe (10) ?
Quel est l'usage de la cédille (11) ?
Quel est l'usage du tréma (12) ?
A quoi sert le trait d'union (13) ?
Quelles sont les voyelles nasales (15) ?
Qu'est-ce qu'une diphthongue (16) ?
Quels sont les signes de ponctuation (20) ?
Combien y a-t-il de parties du discours, et quelles sont-elles (22) ?
Quelles sont les espèces de mots variables, et quelles sont les espèces invariables ?

De l'Article.

Qu'est-ce que l'article défini ? Déclinez-le (23).
Qu'est-ce que l'élision, et quand a-t-elle lieu (24) ?
Quelle différence y a-t-il entre l'emploi de l'article en français et l'emploi de l'article en anglais—*my brother's book* (26) ?
Comment se traduisent en français les expressions suivantes :—*a gold watch*—*a steel pen* (27) ?
Quand met-on *du, de la, des*, devant les substantifs (28) ?
Dans quel cas met-on la préposition *de* (29) ?
Qu'est-ce que l'article indéfini (30) ?

•

Du Substantif.

Qu'est-ce que le substantif, et combien y en a-t-il de sortes (31) ?
Qu'est-ce qu'un nom collectif ?
Qu'est-ce que le genre, et combien y en a-t-il (32) ?
Combien y a-t-il de nombres, et quels sont-ils (33) ?

* The figures between parentheses refer to the Rules in the Grammar applicable to the Questions.

Comment forme-t-on généralement le pluriel d'un substantif (34)?

Quand le singulier est terminé par *s, x, z*, comment s'en forme le pluriel (35)?

Comment forme-t-on le pluriel des substantifs en *au, eu* et *ou*. (36 et 37)?

Comment se forme le pluriel des substantifs en *al* et en *ail* (38)?

Quel est le pluriel des mots *ciel, œil* et *ateul*?

Citez quelques substantifs qui n'ont pas de pluriel et d'autres qui n'ont pas de singulier.

De l'Adjectif.

Comment l'adjectif s'accorde-t-il avec son substantif (42)?

Comment se forme généralement le féminin d'un adjectif (43)?

Quand le masculin d'un adjectif est terminé en *e* muet, comment s'en forme le féminin (44)?

Quel est le féminin des adjectifs en *x* et en *f* (45 et 46)?

Comment se forme le féminin des adjectifs en *el, eil, ien, on, et, as* (47)?

Quels sont les adjectifs en *et* qui ne doublent pas le *t* pour le féminin?

Quel est le féminin des adjectifs en *eur* (49 et seq.)?

Quel est le masculin devant une voyelle ou un *h* muet des adjectifs *beau, fou, mou, nouveau* et *vieux* (54)?

Quelle est généralement la place des adjectifs (56)?

Combien y a-t-il de sortes de comparatifs, et comment se forment-ils (61 et seq.)?

Combien y a-t-il de sortes de superlatifs, et comment se forment-ils (66 et 67)?

Quel est le comparatif et le superlatif des adjectifs *bon, mauvais, petit*, et de leurs adverbes correspondants, *bien, mal, peu* (68 et 69)?

Quels sont les adjectifs possessifs (70)?

Comment s'accordent-ils avec le nom qui suit (71)?

Qu'arrive-t-il quand ils sont placés devant un nom féminin qui commence par une voyelle ou un *h* muet (72)?

Quels sont les adjectifs démonstratifs (74), indéfinis (76), numéraux (77)?

Du Pronom.

Quels sont les pronoms personnels, et comment les divise-t-on (86)?

Qu'est-ce que le pronom *conjonctif* (87)?

Le pronom *sujet* se place-t-il devant ou après le verbe (88)?

Le pronom *complément (object)* se place-t-il devant ou après le verbe qui le régit (89)?

Dans quel cas emploie-t-on les pronoms *tu, toi, te, ton, le tien, etc.*, au lieu de *vous, votre, le vôtre* (91)?

Qu'est-ce que le pronom *disjonctif*, et quand l'emploie-t-on (93 et 94)?

Quels sont les pronoms possessifs (95), démonstratifs (96), relatifs (103), indéfinis (110)?

Peut-on omettre le pronom relatif devant un verbe, comme en anglais :—*the man I saw* (109)?

Du Verbe.

- Qu'est-ce que le *sujet* ou *nominatif* d'un verbe (112)?
 Quel est le *régime* ou *complément* (object or government) d'un verbe, et combien y en a-t-il de sortes (113 et seq.)?
 Qu'est-ce que le verbe substantif (117)?
 Comment appelle-t-on tous les verbes excepté *être*?
 Qu'appelle-t-on verbe *actif* ou *transitif* (118)?
 Qu'est-ce qu'un verbe *passif* (119)?
 Qu'appelle-t-on verbe *neutre* ou *intransitif* (120)?
 Comment connaît-on qu'un verbe est *actif* ou *neutre*?
 Qu'est-ce qu'un verbe *réfléchi* (121)?
 Qu'est-ce qu'un verbe *impersonnel* (122)?
 Que veut dire *mode*, et combien y en a-t-il (123)?
 Qu'est-ce que l'*infinitif*, l'*indicatif*, le *conditionnel*, l'*impératif*, le *subjonctif*?
 Qu'appelle-t-on *temps*, combien y en a-t-il, et comment se divisent-ils (124 et seq.)?
 Combien y a-t-il de nombres et de personnes (127 et 128)?
 Qu'est-ce que conjuguer un verbe?
 Combien y a-t-il de conjugaisons, et comment les distingue-t-on (129)?
 Quand un verbe est-il *régulier* (131), *irrégulier* (132), *défectueux* (133)?
 Quels sont les verbes dont les temps composés se conjuguent avec l'*auxiliaire avoir* (136), avec l'*auxiliaire être* (137)?
 Comment exprime-t-on la négation en français (138)?
 Comment exprime-t-on l'interrogation (139)?
 Que fait-on quand la troisième personne du singulier d'un verbe employé interrogativement se termine par un *e* muet (140)?
 Que fait-on quand le nominatif du verbe est un nom (141)?
 Emploie-t-on *de* ou l'article *du*, *de la*, *des* devant un nom, complément directe d'un verbe actif employé négativement:—*I have no bread* (142)?
 Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur les verbes dont l'*infinitif* se termine en
 Dans quel cas les verbes en *cer*, comme *placer*, *menacer*, prennent-ils une cédille sous le *c* (146)?
 Quand les verbes en *eler*, *eter*, doublent-ils la consonne *l* et *t* (147)?
 Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur les verbes en *ayer*, *oyer*, *uyer* (149)?
 Dans quel cas les verbes terminés en *ier*, comme *prier*, prennent-ils deux *i* (150)?
 Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur les verbes terminés à l'*infinitif* en *éter*, comme *créer* (151)?
 Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur le verbe *bénir* (153) et le verbe *fleurir* (154)?
 Comment traduit-on en français les expressions *do*, *does*, *did*, etc., employées en anglais dans les interrogations, comme—*Do you sing* (175)?
 Pourquoi écrit-on *aimé-je?* *parlé-je?* etc., avec un accent aigu sur l'*e* (176)?
 Dans quel cas doit-on se servir de l'expression *est-ce que* au lieu de la forme ordinaire dans les interrogations (177)?

Comment forme-t-on généralement le pluriel d'un substantif (34)?

Quand le singulier est terminé par *s, x, z*, comment s'en forme le pluriel (35)?

Comment forme-t-on le pluriel des substantifs en *au, eu* et *ou* (36 et 37)?

Comment se forme le pluriel des substantifs en *al* et en *ail* (38)?

Quel est le pluriel des mots *ciel, œil* et *âneul*?

Citez quelques substantifs qui n'ont pas de pluriel et d'autres qui n'ont pas de singulier.

De l'Adjectif.

Comment l'adjectif s'accorde-t-il avec son substantif (42)?

Comment se forme généralement le féminin d'un adjectif (43)?

Quand le masculin d'un adjectif est terminé en *e* muet, comment s'en forme le féminin (44)?

Quel est le féminin des adjectifs en *x* et en *f* (45 et 46)?

Comment se forme le féminin des adjectifs en *el, eil, ien, on, et, as* (47)?

Quels sont les adjectifs en *et* qui ne doublent pas le *t* pour le féminin?

Quel est le féminin des adjectifs en *eur* (49 et seq.)?

Quel est le masculin devant une voyelle ou un *h* muet des adjectifs *beau, fou, mou, nouveau* et *vieux* (54)?

Quelle est généralement la place des adjectifs (56)?

Combien y a-t-il de sortes de comparatifs, et comment se forment-ils (61 et seq.)?

Combien y a-t-il de sortes de superlatifs, et comment se forment-ils (66 et 67)?

Quel est le comparatif et le superlatif des adjectifs *bon, mauvais, petit*, et de leurs adverbes correspondants, *bien, mal, peu* (68 et 69)?

Quels sont les adjectifs possessifs (70)?

Comment s'accordent-ils avec le nom qui suit (71)?

Qu'arrive-t-il quand ils sont placés devant un nom féminin qui commence par une voyelle ou un *h* muet (72)?

Quels sont les adjectifs démonstratifs (74), indéfinis (76), numéraux (77)?

Du Pronom.

Quels sont les pronoms personnels, et comment les divise-t-on (86)?

Qu'est-ce que le pronom *conjonctif* (87)?

Le pronom *sujet* se place-t-il devant ou après le verbe (88)?

Le pronom *complément (object)* se place-t-il devant ou après le verbe qui le régit (89)?

Dans quel cas emploie-t-on les pronoms *tu, toi, te, ton, le tien, etc.*, au lieu de *vous, votre, le vôtre* (91)?

Qu'est-ce que le pronom *disjonctif*, et quand l'emploie-t-on (93 et 94)?

Quels sont les pronoms possessifs (95), démonstratifs (96), relatifs (103), indéfinis (110)?

Peut-on omettre le pronom relatif devant un verbe, comme en anglais :—*the man I saw* (109)?

Du Verbe.

- Qu'est-ce que le *sujet* ou *nominatif* d'un verbe (112)?
 Quel est le *régime* ou *complément* (object or government) d'un verbe, et combien y en a-t-il de sortes (113 *et seq.*)?
 Qu'est-ce que le verbe substantif (117)?
 Comment appelle-t-on tous les verbes excepté *être*?
 Qu'appelle-t-on verbe *actif* ou *transitif* (118)?
 Qu'est-ce qu'un verbe *passif* (119)?
 Qu'appelle-t-on verbe *neutre* ou *intransitif* (120)?
 Comment connaît-on qu'un verbe est *actif* ou *neutre*?
 Qu'est-ce qu'un verbe *réfléchi* (121)?
 Qu'est-ce qu'un verbe *impersonnel* (122)?
 Que veut dire *mode*, et combien y en a-t-il (123)?
 Qu'est-ce que l'*infinitif*, l'*indicatif*, le *conditionnel*, l'*impératif*, le *subjonctif*?
 Qu'appelle-t-on *temps*, combien y en a-t-il, et comment se divisent-ils (124 *et seq.*)?
 Combien y a-t-il de nombres et de personnes (127 et 128)?
 Qu'est-ce que conjuguer un verbe?
 Combien y a-t-il de conjugaisons, et comment les distingue-t-on (129)?
 Quand un verbe est-il *régulier* (131), *irrégulier* (132), *défectueux* (133)?
 Quels sont les verbes dont les temps composés se conjuguent avec l'*auxiliaire avoir* (136), avec l'*auxiliaire être* (137)?
 Comment exprime-t-on la négation en français (138)?
 Comment exprime-t-on l'interrogation (139)?
 Que fait-on quand la troisième personne du singulier d'un verbe employé interrogativement se termine par un *e* muet (140)?
 Que fait-on quand le nominatif du verbe est un nom (141)?
 Emploie-t-on *de* ou l'article *du*, *de la*, *des* devant un nom, complément directe d'un verbe actif employé négativement:—*I have no bread* (142)?
 Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur les verbes dont l'*infinitif* se termine en *ger* (145)?
 Dans quel cas les verbes en *cer*, comme *placer*, *menacer*, prennent-ils une cédille sous le *c* (146)?
 Quand les verbes en *eler*, *eter*, doublent-ils la consonne *l* et *t* (147)?
 Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur les verbes en *ayer*, *oyer*, *uyer* (149)?
 Dans quel cas les verbes terminés en *ier*, comme *prier*, prennent-ils deux *i* (150)?
 Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur les verbes terminés à l'*infinitif* en *éer*, comme *créer* (151)?
 Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur le verbe *bénir* (153) et le verbe *fleurir* (154)?
 Comment traduit-on en français les expressions *do*, *does*, *did*, etc., employés en anglais dans les interrogations, comme—*Do you sing* (175)?
 Pourquoi écrit-on *aimé-je?* *parlé-je?* etc., avec un accent aigu sur l'*e* (176)?
 Dans quel cas doit-on se servir de l'expression *est-ce que* au lieu de la forme ordinaire dans les interrogations (177)?

Qu'est-ce que les temps primitifs (180)?

Quels sont les temps formés des temps primitifs, et comment en sont-ils formés (181 et seq.)?

Avec quel auxiliaire, *avoir* ou *être*, les temps composés des verbes neutres se conjuguent-ils (187)?

Comment se conjuguent les verbes *réfléchis* (189)?

Dans quel cas le verbe *faire* s'emploie-t-il impersonnellement (202)?

Qu'est-ce qu'un *participe*, et combien y en a-t-il de sortes (211)?

Qu'est-ce qu'un *adverbe*, et où se place-t-il (212)?

Comment forme-t-on généralement les adverbes (213)?

Les adjectifs ne s'emploient-ils pas quelquefois adverbialement (214)?

Qu'est-ce qu'une *préposition*, et où se place-t-elle (218)?

Doit-on répéter les prépositions devant chaque mot qu'elles gouvernent (219)?

Qu'est-ce que la *conjonction*?

Quels modes du verbe les conjonctions gouvernent-elles (221)?

Qu'est-ce que l'*interjection* (226)?

Syntaxe de l'Article.

L'article *le, la, les*, s'emploie-t-il devant tous les substantifs (227)?

Doit-on répéter l'article devant chaque substantif sujet ou complément d'une phrase, quand il est employé devant le premier (228)?

Emploie-t-on l'article devant les noms de *pays*, de *montagnes*, de *rivières*, etc. (230)?

Quelles sont les exceptions à la règle précédente (231)?

Emploie-t-on l'article devant les noms de *titre*, de *dignité*, de *profession*, etc. (233)?

Se sert-on de l'article *le, la, les*, ou de *un, une*, comme en anglais, avec les noms de *mesure*, de *poids* et de *nombre* (235)?

Quelle différence de construction y a-t-il entre le français et l'anglais dans les phrases comme les suivantes :—*ten pounds a year—two lessons a week* (236)?

Emploie-t-on l'article *du, de, la, des* devant les substantifs partitifs (237)?

L'article s'emploie-t-il devant les noms de *personnes* et de *villes* (238)?

Emploie-t-on l'article devant les noms partitifs précédés d'un adjectif (242)?

Expliquez la différence qu'il y a entre :—*N'avez-vous pas des livres?* et *N'avez-vous point de livres* (243)?

Emploie-t-on l'article après les substantifs collectifs ou les adverbes de quantité (244)?

L'article se met-il devant les noms communs précédés des mots *sans, avec, entre, de, par*, etc. (246)?

Emploie-t-on l'article devant les substantifs communs, quand ils n'expriment qu'une seule idée avec le verbe qui les précède (247)?

Emploie-t-on l'article dans les phrases proverbiales, les énumérations, et les exclamations (248)?

Met-on l'article devant un substantif employé adjectivement (249)?

Met-on l'article devant tout nombre employé après un substantif pour indiquer le rang ou l'ordre (250)?

Emploie-t-on l'article indéfini *un, une*, comme en anglais, dans les phrases suivantes:—*he is a professor—Mozart was a musician—his father is a Frenchman—what a fine horse!* (251 et seq.)?

Met-on un article devant les mots *plus* ou *moins* répétés dans une phrase, comme dans l'anglais:—*the more we read, the more we know* (255)?

Syntaxe des Substantifs.

Quelle est la différence de construction entre le français et l'anglais dans ces sortes de phrases:—*he is at his uncle's—go to my banker's* (256)?

Quand met-on *de*, et quand met-on *à* ou *au*, entre deux substantifs ayant rapport entre eux, comme dans ces phrases:—*a silk dress—a steam-boat—the flower-market* (257 et seq.)?

Qu'entend-on par *collectif général* et *collectif partitif* (260 et 261)?

Quelle est la règle de l'accord du verbe avec les noms collectifs et les noms partitifs (260 et 261)?

Les noms propres de personne prennent-ils la marque du pluriel (262 et seq.)?

Quelle est la règle pour la formation du pluriel dans les noms composés (266 à 270)?

Syntaxe des Adjectifs.

A quel nombre se met l'adjectif qui se rapporte à plusieurs substantifs singuliers (272)?

A quel genre se met l'adjectif qui se rapporte à plusieurs substantifs de différents genres (272).

Citez les exceptions à la règle précédente (273)?

Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur les adjectifs *nu, demi, feu, franc*, sur les participes *supposé, excepté*, et sur les mots composés *ci-joint, ci-inclus* (274 et seq.)?

L'adjectif employé adverbialement s'accorde-t-il avec le nom auquel il se rapporte (277)?

Dans quel cas doit-on répéter l'adjectif devant chaque substantif d'une phrase (278)?

Quelle est la place des adjectifs qui expriment la *forme*, la *couleur*, le *goût*, la *nationalité* (279), et citez les exceptions à la règle (280)?

Quand plusieurs adjectifs se rapportent au même substantif, où les place-t-on (281 et 282)?

Quelle est la place des participes passés employés adjectivement (283)?

Qu'y a-t-il à observer sur la place des adjectifs quant à leur signification (284)?

Qu'est-ce que le complément (*government*) d'un adjectif (285)?

Tous les adjectifs ont-ils un complément (286 et 287)?

Quels sont les adjectifs qui régissent la préposition *de* (288)?

Quels sont les adjectifs qui régissent la préposition *à* (289)?

N'y a-t-il pas des adjectifs qui régissent tantôt une préposition, tantôt une autre (290)?

Expliquez la différence de construction entre le français et l'anglais avec les adjectifs de dimension :—*a house sixty feet high* (291).

Comment rend-on en français *by* ou *and* employés pour désigner une dimension comparative :—*ten feet long by six wide* (292)?

Comment rend-on le mot *by* après un comparatif et devant un nom de mesure, de poids, ou de nombre (293)?

Expliquez la différence de construction dans les phrases comme la suivante :—*I have more than ten pounds* (294).

Comment rend-on en français les mots *the more, the less*, répétés dans une phrase (297)?

Montrez la différence de construction dans les phrases suivantes : — *he is so much the more happy* (298)—*he is only the more happy for it* (299)—*a shilling more or less* (300)—*the most commercial city in Europe* (301 et 302).

Les adjectifs possessifs *mon, ton, son, etc.*, doivent-ils se répéter devant chaque nom auquel ils se rapportent (303)?

Qu'y a-t-il à observer dans l'usage de ces adjectifs en s'adressant à des parents, ou en s'informant de quelqu'un (204 et 205)?

Quand emploie-t-on l'article *le, la, les*, au lieu de *mon, ton, son, etc.* (306 et seq.)?

Quand doit-on exprimer les pronoms anglais *its, their*, par *son, sa, ses*, ou par *en* avec le pronom *le, la, les* (311 et 312)?

Les adjectifs démonstratifs *ce, cet, cette, ces*, se répètent-ils devant chaque substantif d'une phrase (313)?

Expliquez la différence entre *ce* adjectif et *ce* pronom démonstratif.

Qu'y a-t-il à observer sur les adjectifs indéfinis *aucun* et *nul* (314 et 315)?

Quelles sont les trois manières d'écrire *quelque* (317 et seq.)?

Quand *tout* est-il adjectif, et quand est-il adverbe (221 et seq.)?

Quand *même* est-il adjectif, et quand est-il adverbe (226 et seq.)?

Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur l'adjectif *tel* comparé avec l'anglais *such* (328)?

Quand *vingt* et *cent* prennent-ils la marque du pluriel (329 et 330)?

Quelles sont les différentes manières d'écrire le mot *mille* (331 et 332)?

Se sert-on des nombres cardinaux ou ordinaux en parlant du quantième du mois ou des souverains (333)?

Syntaxe des Pronoms.

Quelle est la place des pronoms personnels employés comme *sujets*, ou comme *compléments* (334)?

Quand un verbe est précédé de deux pronoms, lequel place-t-on le premier (335 et 336)?

Expliquez la règle des pronoms employés avec l'impératif (337 et 338).

Citez les cas où l'on doit employer les pronoms personnels *disjonctifs*, soit comme *sujets*, soit comme *compléments* (340 et seq.).

Dans quel cas répète-t-on les pronoms personnels employés comme *sujets* (346 et seq.)?

Répète-t-on les pronoms personnels employés comme *compléments* (349 et 350)?

Dans quel cas le pronom *le* est-il variable ou invariable (351 et 352)?

Comment s'emploie le pronom *soi* (353)?

Quand emploie-t-on les pronoms *en* et *y* au lieu de *lui, elle, leur, eux, elles* (354 et seq.)?

Quelles observations y a-t-il à faire sur les pronoms *le, la, les, en, y* (357 et seq.)?

Comment exprime-t-on en français les auxiliaires anglais *do, does, did, shall, will, should, would*, employés dans une interrogation (364 et seq.)?

Quand exprime-t-on les pronoms anglais *mine, thine, his, etc.*, par *à moi, à toi, à lui, etc.*, ou par *le mien, le tien, le sien, etc.* (367 et 368)?

Expliquez la différence de construction dans les phrases suivantes :—*this horse is my brother's—an uncle of mine—that friend of yours—a house of my own* (369 et seq.).

Quand emploie-t-on *ce* ou *il, elle, ils, elles*, devant le verbe *être* (373 et seq.)?

A quel nombre met-on le verbe *être* quand il est précédé du pronom *ce* (379)?

Comment exprime-t-on en français les pronoms *he, she, they*, suivis d'un pronom relatif *who, etc.* (380)?

Expliquez la différence entre *celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, et celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là* (381).

Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur les pronoms relatifs *qui, que, etc.* (382)?

Quand emploie-t-on *dont, de qui* ou *duquel, à qui, ou auquel* (389 et seq.)?

A quel nombre et à quelle personne le pronom indéfini *on* veut-il le verbe qui le suit (393 et 394)?

Quand se sert-on de *l'on* au lieu de *on* (395)?

Quand *chacun* prend-il *son, sa, ses*, ou *leur*, après lui (400)?

Quelle différence y a-t-il entre *personne*, pronom indéfini, et *personne* substantif (403 et seq.)?

Quelle différence y a-t-il entre *l'un et l'autre* et *l'un l'autre* (406)?

A quel nombre met-on le verbe après *ni l'un ni l'autre* (307)?

Syntaxe des Verbes.

De quelle manière se fait l'accord du verbe avec son sujet quand ce sujet se compose de plusieurs substantifs ou de plusieurs pronoms?

Citez les exceptions à la règle précédente (411 et seq.).

Un verbe peut-il avoir deux régimes *directs* ou deux régimes *indirects* (419 et 420)?

Dans quel cas deux verbes peuvent-ils avoir ou ne pas avoir le même régime (421)?

Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur la place que doivent occuper les régimes d'un verbe (422 et 423)?

Quand exprime-t-on le régime des verbes passifs par *de* ou par *par* (424)?

L'infinitif d'un verbe peut-il être le régime d'un autre verbe (426 et 427)?

Avec quel auxiliaire, *avoir* ou *être*, les verbes neutres se conjuguent-ils (430)?

Peut-on employer le *présent* au lieu du *passé* et du *futur* (433 et 434)?

Expliquez la différence, dans leur emploi, entre *l'imparfait* et le *passé défini* (435 et seq.)?

Quels sont les cas où l'on emploie le subjonctif (352 *et seq.*) ?

Expliquez l'accord des temps du subjonctif avec le verbe qui précède (465 *et seq.*).

Quelle est la terminaison unique du participe présent (470) ?

Quelle différence y a-t-il entre le participe présent et l'adjectif verbale en *ant* (471 *et seq.*).

Montrez la différence de construction, en anglais et en français, de certains participes présents (475 *et seq.*).

Avec quoi s'accorde le participe passé, avec ou sans l'auxiliaire *être* (478 et 479) ?

Quelle est la règle du participe passé accompagné de l'auxiliaire *avoir* (480 *et seq.*) ?

Le participe passé des verbes réfléchis s'accorde-t-il avec son régime *direct* (483) ?

Le participe passé des verbes impersonnels est-il variable (484) ?

Le participe passé suivi d'un infinitif s'accorde-t-il avec son régime (486) ?

Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur le participe *fait* suivi d'un infinitif, et sur le *peu* accompagné d'un participe passé (487 et 491) ?

Syntaxe des Adverbes.

Dans quel cas doit-on omettre *pas* ou *point* dans les phrases négatives (498 *et seq.*) ?

Quelle est la différence entre *plus* et *davantage*—*si*, *aussi* et *tant*, *autant*—*plus tôt* et *plutôt*—*tout à coup* et *tout d'un coup* (510 *et seq.*) ?

Syntaxe des Prépositions.

Qu'y a-t-il à remarquer sur les prépositions (414 *et seq.*) ?

Quelles sont les différentes manières de rendre en anglais la préposition *chez* (530) ?

Quand doit-on exprimer la préposition anglaise *to* par *de*, ou par *pour* (516 et 517) ?

Quelle est la différence entre *avant* et *devant*—*dans* et *en*—*entre* et *parmi*—*au travers* et *à travers*—*envers* et *vers*, etc. (519 *et seq.*) ?

Qu'y a-t-il à observer sur le genre des noms (543 *et seq.*) ?

Quelle différence y a-t-il entre *an* et *année*—*connaître* et *savoir*—*amener* et *apporter*—*marcher* et *se promener*—*mariage*, *épouser* et *se marier*—*neuf* et *nouveau*—*pays*, *campagne* et *patrie*—*dormir* et *coucher* (544 *et seq.*) ?

ELEMENTARY FRENCH WORKS

FORMING A COMPLETE COURSE OF MODERN FRENCH
FOR STUDENTS IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES;
And carefully adapted for use in Young Ladies' Schools.

BY

LÉON CONTANSEAU,

PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE LATE ROYAL
INDIAN MILITARY COLLEGE, ADDISCOMBE; MANY YEARS FRENCH
EXAMINER FOR MILITARY AND CIVIL APPOINTMENTS.

Adopted in the Government Colleges, and very generally in Schools
and Colleges throughout the United Kingdom.

A NEW PRACTICAL DICTIONARY

OF THE

FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES.

IN TWO PARTS:

FRENCH AND ENGLISH—ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

Containing the following Improvements:

1. New Words in general use in each Language not to be found in other Dictionaries.—2. Compound Words not translated literally.—3. Prepositions annexed to the French Verbs and Adjectives, showing what case they govern.—4. Acceptations of the Words separated by Figures, with *directions* as to the proper Word.—5. Examples of the most familiar Idioms and Phrases.—6. The principal Tenses of all Irregular Verbs.

Latest Edition, in 1 vol. post 8vo. pp. 970, price 3s. 6d. cloth.

London, LONGMANS & CO.

SPECIMENS FOR COMPARISON

CONTANSEAU'S DICTIONARY.

MATCH, s. 1. (lucifer) *allumette*, f.; 2. (artil.) *mèche*, f.; 3. (marriage) *mariage*, m., *alliance*, f.; 4. (person to be married) *parti*, m.; 5. (equal) *égal*, *pareil*, m.; *partie égale*, f.; 6. (suit) *assortiment*, m.; 7. (contest) *lutte*, f., *concours*, m.; 8. (at play) *partie*, f.; 9. (in fighting) *combat*, m.; 10. (in sailing) *cOURSE*, *jouée*, f.; 11. (with swords, etc.) *assaut*, m.; 12. (in wrestling) *lutte*, *jouée*, f.

Lucifer—*allumette chimique*. **Phosphorus**—*allumette phosphorique*. **Good**—*riche parti*, *riche mariage*. **To be a—**for, *être de la taille de or de la force de*. **To be a bad or a good—**, *aller mal or bien ensemble*.

—BOX, s. *porte-allumette*, m. **—LOCK**, s. *fusil à mèche*, m. **—MAKER**, s. 1. *fabricant d'allumettes*, *allumettier*, m.; 2. (of marriage) *mariEUR*, m., *cous*, f., *faisEUR de mariages*, *courtier de mariage*, m.

SINK, v. n. [**SANK**, **SUNK**; **SUNK**] 1. *s'enfoncer*; 2. (to go to the bottom) *aller au fond*; 3. (to fall, fail) *tomber*, *baisser*, *diminuer*; 4. (penetrate) *entrer*, *pénétrer*; 5. (to lose height) *s'abaisser*, *descendre*; 6. (pers.) *se laisser tomber*; 7. (to be overwhelmed) *succomber*; 8. (to decay) *périr*; 9. (to be depressed) *être abattu*, *être dans l'abattement*; 10. (to decline) *décliner*; 11. (to be reduced to) *dégénérer* (en); 12. (of ships) *couler bas*, or *à fond*; 13. (of buildings) *se tasser*, *tasser*.

To—away, *tomber*. **To—down** 1. *s'enfoncer*, *aller au fond*; 2. (to fall prostrate) *s'affaisser*; 3. (to lower) *s'abaisser*; 4. (of the sun, etc.) *descendre*, *se coucher*; 5. (pers.) *se laisser tomber*; *tomber*. **To—under**, *succomber*.

AND OTHER DICTIONARIES.

MATCH, s. *mèche*, *allumette*, *partie*, f., *jeu*, m., *jouée*, f., *mariage*, *parti*, *pareil*, *sem-*

To SINK, *pret. sunk, part. sunk, or sunken, v. n. couler ou aller à fond, couler bas, s'enfoncer, déchoir, décliner, s'abattre, diminuer, baisser, s'affaisser, dégénérer, succomber, se perdre.*

OPINION OF VICE-CHANCELLOR SIR W. P. WOOD.

(Judgment given in favour of *M. Contanseau* in *Spiers* versus *Brown*.)

The learned judge, after having put aside Dr. Spiers' School Dictionary as not to be compared with *M. Contanseau's Practical French Dictionary*, says: "M. Contanseau has produced an entirely different work from that of the plaintiff, and unquestionably a most valuable and ingenious practical work."

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"A close examination of this volume leads us to prefer it for all practical purposes to any similar work we have ever met with.... We can conscientiously recommend this volume as the best for practical tuition, and for purposes of general reference, that has ever fallen under our notice. We do not doubt that the care and intelligence bestowed by Mr. Contanseau on its preparation will be amply repaid by the standard reputation it must attain." **PRESS.**

"We have no school dictionary of the French and English languages at all approaching to Mr. Contanseau's in fullness, correctness, and the assistance which it affords to the pupil." **LEEDS MERCURY.**

"This useful work requires only to be known to supersede our old torments of the school-room. The carefulness of the whole is worthy of high recommendation." **GLOBE.**

"Very portable as to its form, and very complete as to its matter. it includes fully the French and English of the present day." **EXAMINER.**

"It is now the best French dictionary." **JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.**

"The plan is admirable, and the execution worthy of the plan."

A NEW POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES;

Being a careful abridgement of the *Practical French and English Dictionary*, preserving all the most useful features of the original work, condensed into a compactly-printed pocket volume, for the convenience of Tourists, Travellers, and English Readers or Students, to whom portability of size is a requisite.

Latest Edition, carefully revised, square 18mo. price 8s. 6d. cloth.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"There can be no question of the excellence of the work now offered by Mr. Contanseau." MORNING POST.

"Being of a small and convenient size, and printed in a type singularly clear and legible, it is likely to become widely popular. It is assuredly the most lucid of our French pocket dictionaries." READER.

"There are valuable features in Mr. Contanseau's *Pocket Dictionary* which cannot fail to render it popular in schools." EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

"We have carefully compared it with others, and have no hesitation in pronouncing this the best pocket dictionary extant of the French and English languages." JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.

THE FIRST STEP IN FRENCH;

BEING

AN EASY METHOD OF LEARNING THE ELEMENTS OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, AND

CONTAINING

1. A Vocabulary of Useful Words intended for Exercises in Pronunciation.—2. A few simple Rules of Grammar.—3. Easy Exercises both in French and English.—4. Familiar Conversations on ordinary topics.—5. A selection of easy and entertaining Pieces in French for reading and translation.

Latest Edition, carefully revised and corrected, 12mo. price 2s. 6d. cloth.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"As a judicious First Book, or Introduction to the French Grammar, we have no hesitation in recommending it to our readers. The vocabulary is well selected; the grammatical rules are concise, clear, and set forth in a manner to become impressed on the mind of the student; the series of exercises are admirably graduated; and the extracts chosen for practice and commitment to memory are of the most suitable kind." CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

"There exists no better Elementary Guide within our knowledge." SPECTATOR.

"The clear and logical arrangement, and the eminently practical character of the work, are apparent on every page." EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

"It is a long time since we have seen such an encouraging introduction to a foreign tongue." JOHN BULL.

"The whole arranged and executed in masterly style."

ATHENÆUM.

A MODERN FRENCH GRAMMAR

IN TWO PARTS:

I. ACCIDENCE.

II. SYNTAX.

With *Vocabularies, Conversational Lessons, and copious Exercises with Foot-notes, newly compiled from the Standard Authors of the Present Day.*

Latest Edition, remodelled and enlarged, 12mo. price 4s. cloth.

. The ACCIDENCE may be had separately, price 2s. 6d.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

From a careful inspection of the rules, examples, and mode of explaining the idioms, peculiarities, and difficulties of the language, we feel confident in recommending this Modern French Grammar to all learners. We know no other book of the kind which conveys the instruction required so concisely, so emphatically, and so judiciously."

CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

"The number of Modern French Grammars is legion, and their character is—very few good, most of them bad, and a considerable portion indifferent. Mr. Contanseau's must be reckoned as amongst the very best of the first category, since it is not only elaborate, but also simple, the Author's aim being not to puzzle and bewilder, but to make the road to the acquirement of a most difficult foreign language as easy as possible. The exercises are alone sufficient to render this French manual an invaluable means of instruction."

BELL'S WEEKLY MESSENGER.

KEY TO FIRST STEP AND FRENCH GRAMMAR.

New Edition, 12mo. price 3s. bound.

PREMIÈRES LECTURES;

OR,

SELECTIONS OF INSTRUCTIVE AND ENTERTAINING STORIES
FROM THE BEST FRENCH AUTHORS WHO HAVE
WRITTEN FOR THE YOUNG.

FOLLOWED BY

EASY FRENCH POETRY FOR MEMORY.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES.

Latest Edition, 12mo. price 2s. 6d. cloth.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"Of the merit of this reading-book there cannot be two opinions. The pieces selected are just those that will enchain the attention of youth, and the notes to help the young student are so carefully fitted to the real points of difficulty, that a very elementary knowledge of the French language will suffice for the pupil to commence reading with."

"It would be difficult, we think, to place a more entertaining little volume into the hands of the young boy or girl who had just mastered the rudiments of the French language."

PROSATEURS ET POÈTES FRANÇAIS;

OR

SELECTIONS FROM THE BEST FRENCH AUTHORS; WITH
AN INTRODUCTION OF EASY PIECES.

Arranged in Chronological Order, from the Age of Louis XIV. to the
Present Day. With Biographical Sketches.

Latest Edition, 12mo. pp. 552, price 5s. cloth.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

Vingt et un morceaux faciles et amusants extraits de divers auteurs modernes, et arrangés pour les classes inférieures.

SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

Bossuet, Condé à la Bataille de Rocroi; Les Romains.—**Fénelon**, La Ville de Tyr et les Phéniciens; Télémaque visite les Champs Elysées.—**Massillon**, De l'Existence de Dieu; Destinée de l'Homme; De la Vie humaine.

EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

Voltaire, Bataille de Narva; Défaite de Charles XII. à Pultava; Charles XII. à Bender; Guillaume III. et Louis XIV.—**Buffon**, Le Chien; Le Cygne.—**J. J. Rousseau**, Le Duel; Bonheur de J. J. dans la Solitude.—**Barthélemy**, Epaminondas; Combat des Thermopyles.—**Marmontel**, Bélisaire dans un Château de la Trace.—**Thomas**, Destinée des grands Hommes.—**B. de St. Pierre**, La Solitude; Un Naufrage à l'Île-de-France; Consolations adressées à Paul après la Perte de Virginie; La Vie d'un Paria dans l'Inde.—**Florian**, Guillaume Tell; Rome guerrière.

NINETEENTH CENTURY.

Madame de Staël, Saint Pierre de Rome; La Terre de Naples; Venise; La Gloire de l'Italie.—**J. de Maistre**, Une Nuit d'Été à St. Pétersbourg.—**Volney**, Les Ruines de Palmyre.—**X. de Maistre**, La Mort d'un Ami; Méditation.—**Michaud**, Pierre l'Ermite prêchant la première Croisade; Prise de Jérusalem par les Croisés.—**Bonaparte**, Proclamation à l'Armée.—**Chateaubriand**, Le Meschacébé; La Tempête; Aspect de Jérusalem au 5^e Siècle; Aspect de Rome Ancienne; Les Francs marchant au Combat; La Mer et la Terre; Cimetière de Campagne; Ruines des Monuments Chrétiens.—**Morvins**, Jeunesse de Napoléon; Bataille des Pyramides; Passage des Alpes par Bonaparte; Les derniers Jours de Napoléon.—**Jouy**, La Cour des Messageries à Paris; Les Catacombes de Paris.—**Madame Guizot**, La Vie et l'Argent.—**Ségur**, Moscou avant son Incendie; Incendie de Moscou.—**Barante**, Démence de Charles VI.—**Lamennais**, Les Deux Voisins; La Prière; L'Exilé; Le Règne de la Terreur en France.—**Modier**, Le Loch Lomond.—**Guizot**, Fuite de Charles I^{er} à l'Île de Wight; Charles I^{er} au Château de Hurst; Charles I^{er} au Château de Windsor; Procès de Charles I^{er}; Exécution de Charles I^{er}.—**Villemain**, Le Siècle de Louis XIV; Milton composant le Paradis Perdu.—**Lamartine**, Ruines du Parthénon; Le Liban; Portrait de Louis XVI; Portrait de Marie-Antoinette; Abdication de Louis-Philippe.—**Thierry**, Débarquement de l'Armée normande en Angleterre; Bataille de Hastings; Meurtre de Thomas Becket; Robin Hood.—**Salvandi**, Napoléon Bonaparte.—**Mignet**, Prise de la Bastille; Déchéance de la Royauté en France.—**Thiers**, Les derniers Jours de Louis XVI; Les Contrebandiers Espagnols.—**Soulié**, Les Marchands de

NINETEENTH CENTURY (*continued*).

Nouveautés, Les Quatre Henri.—**Victor Hugo**, Paris au XV^e Siècle.—**Merrimée**, Siège de la Rochelle sous Charles IX.—**Vermond**, Le Provincial à Paris.—**Gérando**, Voyage sur la Theiss.—**Sue**, Une Métairie de la Sologne; Une Vallée de Désolation.—**Marmier**, Le Spitzberg.—**Dumas**, Le Pont du Gard; Auberge italienne; Bataille de Monteraeu; Napoléon et Lucien; Souvenirs d'un Voyage à Messine.—**Janin**, Florence; Le Mont-Cénis; Versailles.—**Gozlan**, Alger.—**Gautier**, Une Jonque chinoise à Londres.—**Molière**, Comédies, L'Avare; Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme.

CHOIX DE POÉSIE.

SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

Racine, Athalie (tragédie).—**La Fontaine**, Le Chêne et le Roseau; Le Corbeau et le Renard; La Cigale et la Fourmi; Le Renard et la Cigogne; Le Chat et le vieux Rat.—**Boileau**, Passage du Rhin par Louis XIV.; Les Embarras de Paris.—**Mme. Deshoulières**, Allégorie à ses Enfants.

EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

Louis Racine, Dieu dans la Nature.—**Voltaire**, Mort de Colligny.—**Delille**, La Ferme; Les Catacombes de Rome.

NINETEENTH CENTURY.

Chénedollé, Isabe.—**Andrieux**, Le Meunier de Sans-Souci.—**Esménard**, La Prière du Soir.—**Millevoye**, L'Anniversaire.—**Guiraud**, Le Petit Savoyard.—**Béranger**, La sainte Alliance des Peuples.—**Delavigne**, Mort de Jeanne d'Arc; Christophe Colomb.—**Soumet**, La Pauvre Fille.—**Lamartine**, Le Combat; Hymne de l'Enfant à son Réveil; Une Larme, ou Consolation.—**Reboul**, L'Ange et l'Enfant.—**Victor Hugo**, Pour les Pauvres; Lui.—**Mme. E. de Girardin**, Cléopâtre.—**Ponsard**, Lucrèce.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"Le recueil que M. Léon Contanseau, professeur de littérature française au Collège Militaire d'Addiscombe, vient d'offrir au public, sous le titre de *Prosateurs et Poètes français*, est, nous n'hésitons pas à le dire, ce qui a été publié de mieux. Le choix des morceaux, dont le plus grand nombre appartient à nos auteurs modernes, est des plus heureux, et nous ne pouvons que recommander cet excellent volume à la jeunesse des écoles d'Angleterre."

COURRIER DE L'EUROPE.

"Mr. Contanseau's *Prosateurs et Poètes français* is, in our opinion, the best and most attractive compilation that has ever made its appearance in this country."

MORNING ADVERTISER.

"Professor Contanseau's works are eminently practical, and adapted to their purpose. . . . The admirable and well-known 'Practical Dictionary,' the 'Abrégé d'Histoire de France,' the 'Précis de la Littérature française,' the 'French Grammar,' the *Prosateurs et Poètes français*, and other works published by M. Contanseau, strikingly demonstrate judgement, combined with knowledge, and the art of smoothing down difficulties in the acquisition of language, without impairing the solidity of the information thus acquired."

CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

"M. Contanseau is already well known as having written several French school-books of considerable excellence; the present volume is quite worthy of its predecessors."

CRITIC.

A GUIDE TO FRENCH TRANSLATION:

BEING A SELECTION OF

INSTRUCTIVE AND ENTERTAINING PIECES.

With Notes to assist in the Translation, and to exhibit a Comparison of French and English Idioms.

Latest Edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

Great Britain.—France.—Tours and its Castle.—Pau.—Geneva and its Lake.—Russia.—Austria.—Napoleon I.—Prussia.—Dover Castle.—Mozart.—Christiania.—Jerusalem.—Reding's Speech to his Soldiers.—Ruins of Palmyra.—Battle of Lodi.—The Convent of the Great St. Bernard.—Gustavus the Great.—Constantinople.—Alfred the Great.—Ruins of Troy.—Last Moments of Charles I.—Napoleon crossing the Great St. Bernard.—Voltaire.—Athena.—Jeanne d'Arc.—Description of the Horse.—The Hunting of the Chamois.—Battle of the Pyramids.—On Glory and Ambition.—The Rhine.—Elizabeth, Queen of England.—Cologne.—Charlemagne.—Nelson.

PART II.

Charles XII.—Military Education among the Romans.—Nelson at the Battle of Copenhagen.—Ferdinand and Isabella.—Portrait of a true Christian.—Admiral Lord Exmouth.—Bombardment of Algiers.—Peter the Great.—Napoleon at Austerlitz.—Frederic II.—Turenne.—Henry IV.—Greatness.—Ruins of Carthage.—Constantine, captured.—Algiers.—History of Fort l'Empereur.—Capture of Ghuznee.—The Fountain of Vaucluse.—Remarks on the utility of Languages.—Benjamin Franklin.—Letter of Lord Chesterfield.—St. Petersburg.—Dialogue between the King of Prussia and Gellert.

PART III.

Mount Albula, in the Alps.—William Tell and Gesler.—Motion of our Globe.—Abd-el-Kader.—Tunis.—The last Days of the Grand Army.—Pascal.—The Taking of Constantinople by the Turks.—Ancient Customs of the Gauls.—Louis XIV. and his Age.—Newton.—Washington.—Battle of Sobraon.—Letter of Lord Chesterfield.—On Education.—William Pitt.—Influence of the French Language.—A Family in Distress.—The Spell of Wealth.—A Military Sight before Sebastopol.—Scenes from the "School for Scandal."—Scenes from a "Trip to Scarborough."

POETRY.

The Country Curate.—The Lady of the Lake.—On Life, Death, and Immortality.—Ode on Solitude.—Cardinal Wolsey's Speech to Cromwell.—Satan's Address to the Sun.—The Storm.—The Destruction of Sennacherib.—St. Agnes.

KEY TO THE GUIDE TO FRENCH TRANSLATION.

Adapted to the Latest Edition, 12mo. price 3s. 6d. cloth.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS ON THE GUIDE AND KEY.

"These are two exceedingly valuable manuals on the art of French translation, which cannot fail to have an extensive and permanent circulation. . . . The various exercises are judiciously divided into chapters, each chapter containing a complete subject in history, biography, or travel, which is a great advantage, as it does not weary the beginner by a long-sustained narrative, nor tax his powers of endurance for too long a period."

SCOTTISH PRESS.

"Professor Contanseau's *Guide to French Translation* is one of the most useful little books we know of for learners, consisting of a judicious selection from the most eloquent Authors, with the necessary notes and instructions for translation. For those who study with a master, and for those who study without a master, these books are most excellent."

CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

"This is one of the very best books of the class to which it belongs that we have ever met with."

BELL'S WEEKLY MESSENGER.

PRÉCIS DE LA LITTÉRATURE FRANÇAISE,

DEPUIS SON ORIGINE JUSQU'À NOS JOURS.

Compiled expressly for the use of Schools, as a Reading-Book, and of Students graduating for **Examinations.***Latest Edition, 12mo. price 3s. 6d. cloth.***ABRÉGÉ DE L'HISTOIRE DE FRANCE.**

From the Earliest Times to the Year 1860.

Compiled from the Works of Guizot, Sismondi, De Barante, Thiers, Michelet, &c. expressly for the use of Schools, as a Reading-Book, and of Students graduating for **Examinations.***New Edition, 12mo. price 3s. 6d. cloth.***NEW SERIES OF ELEMENTARY FRENCH SCHOOL-BOOKS EXPRESSLY ADAPTED FOR MIDDLE-CLASS SCHOOLS.****I. SMALLER or ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR,**

In Two Parts:—

PART I. FRENCH ACCIDENCE, price 8d.**PART II. FRENCH SYNTAX,** price 8d.**II. FOUR FRENCH EXERCISE-BOOKS.**

Adapted to the same, and each provided with a VOCABULARY.

1. FRENCH CONVERSATION-BOOK, price 8d.
2. FIRST FRENCH EXERCISE-BOOK, price 8d.
3. SECOND FRENCH EXERCISE-BOOK, price 8d.
4. FRENCH TRANSLATION-BOOK, price 8d.

*for translating English into French, increasing progressively in difficulty and corresponding with***III. THREE FRENCH CONSTRUING-BOOKS.**

Adapted to the same, and each provided with a VOCABULARY.

1. EASY FRENCH DELECTUS, price 8d.
2. FIRST FRENCH READER, price 8d.
3. SECOND FRENCH READER, price 8d.

*consisting of easy but interesting short Stories.***IV. FRENCH AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES.**

Containing the most useful Phrases in Every-day Talk, and in Railway and Steamboat Travelling, price 8d.

~~~~~  
London, LONGMANS & CO.

